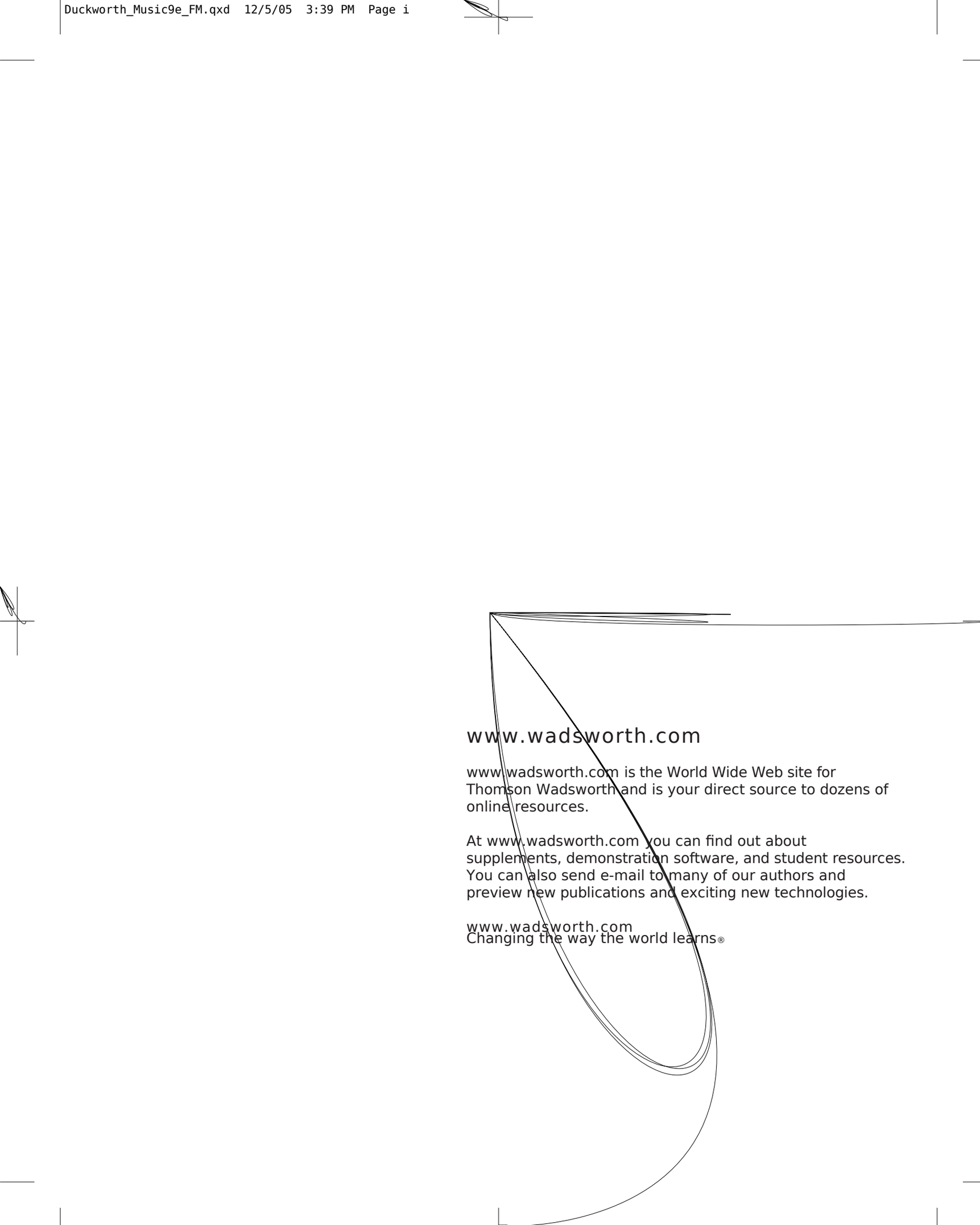
Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page i



www.wadsworth.com

www.wadsworth.com is the World Wide Web site for Thomson Wadsworth and is your direct source to dozens of online resources.

At www.wadsworth.com you can find out about supplements, demonstration software, and student resources. You can also send e-mail to many of our authors and preview new publications and exciting new technologies.

www.wadsworth.com
Changing the way the world learns®

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page ii

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page iii

A CREATIVE APPROACH TO

`

âá|v

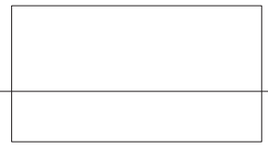
THOMSON
SCHIRMER

NINTH EDITION

William Duckworth
Bucknell University

Australia • Brazil • Canada • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page iv



A Creative Approach to Music Fundamentals
Ninth Edition
William Duckworth

Publisher: Clark Baxter
Associate Development Editor: Julie Yardley
Editorial Assistant: Emily Perkins
Executive Technology Project Manager: Matt Dorsey
Executive Marketing Manager: Diane Wenckebach
Marketing Assistant: Marla Nasser
Marketing Communications Manager: Patrick Rooney
Project Manager, Editorial Production: Trudy Brown

Creative Director: Rob Hugel
Executive Art Director: Maria Epes
Print Buyer: Judy Inouye
Permissions Editor: Kiely Sisk
Production Service: GGS Book Services
Text Designer: Brian Molloy
Copy Editor: Emily Autumn
Cover Designer: Ark Stein
Compositor: GGS Book Services
Text and Cover Printer: Edwards Brothers, Incorporated

© 2007 Thomson Schirmer, a part of The Thomson Corporation. Thomson, the Star logo, and Schirmer are trademarks used herein under license.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, web distribution, information storage and retrieval systems, or in any other manner—without the written permission of the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 1 0 0 9 0 8 0 7 0 6

Library of Congress Control Number: 2005928009

ISBN 0-495-09093-X

Thomson Higher Education
10 Davis Drive
Belmont, CA 94002-3098
USA

For more information about our products, contact us at:
Thomson Learning Academic Resource Center
1-800-423-0563

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit a request online at http://www.thomsonrights.com.
Any additional questions about permissions can be submitted by e-mail to thomsonrights@thomson.com

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page v

For Will, Katherine, and Alison,
who grew up with many
of the songs in this book

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page vi

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page vii

U Ü|xy VÉÇàxÇàá

Preface xv

Introduction xix

CHAPTER 1 The Basics of Music 1

CHAPTER 2 Rhythm I: Simple Meter 31

Focus on Skills I 43

CHAPTER 3 Rhythm II: Compound Meter 47

CHAPTER 4 Pitch 61

Focus on Skills II 79

CHAPTER 5 Major Scales 83

CHAPTER 6 Major Key Signatures 105

CHAPTER 7 Intervals 117

Focus on Skills III 147

CHAPTER 8 Minor Key Signatures 151

CHAPTER 9 Minor Scales 165

CHAPTER 10 Pentatonic and Blues Scales 201

Focus on Skills IV 213

CHAPTER 11 Triads 217

CHAPTER 12 Triads in a Musical Context 239

CHAPTER 13 Chord Progressions 261

Focus on Skills V 279

CHAPTER 14 Writing a Song 283

Appendixes 297

Glossary 347

Subject Index 352

Index to Musical Examples 356

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page viii

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page ix

Preface xv

Introduction xix

The Elements of Music xix
The Characteristics of Musical Sound xx
Musical Talent, Musical Knowledge xxi
A Theory of Music xxii
How to Practice xxii

CHAPTER 1 The Basics of Music 1

Rhythm 1
Pulse 2
Meter 3
Measures 4
Note Values 4
Rests 8
Pitch 9
The Staff 9
Noteheads 9
Clefs 11
The Keyboard 15
The White Keys 16
The Black Keys 17
Musical Distances 18
Accidentals 19
Practicing Revisited 20
Focus 21
Practice Materials 23

CHAPTER 2 Rhythm I: Simple Meter 31

Dotted Notes 31
Time Signatures 32
Simple Meter 32

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page x

A Counting Method for Simple Meters 33
The Basic Pulse 33
Divisions of the Pulse 34
Common Time and Alla Breve 36
Tempo 36
Focus 38
Practice Materials 39

Focus on Skills I 43

CHAPTER 3 Rhythm II: Compound Meter 47

Compound Meter 47
A Counting Method for Compound Meters 50
The Primary Pulse 50
Divisions of the Pulse 50
Ties 53
Syncopation 54
Repeat Signs 54
Focus 57
Practice Materials 59

CHAPTER 4 Pitch 61

Enharmonic Pitches 62
Ledger Lines 63
The Octave Sign 64
Octave Identification 65
Stems 66
Dynamics 67
How to Read a Musical Map 68
Rhythm Revisited: Pulse and Beat 70
Focus 71
Practice Materials 73

Focus on Skills II 79

CHAPTER 5 Major Scales 83

Scales as Interval Patterns 83
Elements of the Major Scale 84
Naming Scale Degrees 90
Ear Training 91

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xi

Rhythm Revisited: Beams 92
Focus 95
Practice Materials 97

CHAPTER 6 Major Key Signatures 105

The Key Signature 105
Sharp Keys 106
Flat Keys 107
Enharmonic Keys 109
The Circle of Fifths: Major Keys 109
Rhythm Revisited: Triplets and Duplets 110
A Counting Method for Triplets and Duplets 110
Focus 111
Practice Materials 113

CHAPTER 7 Intervals 117

Interval Identification 117
Interval Size 118
Interval Quality 120
Perfect Intervals 121
Major and Minor Intervals 123
Compound Intervals 128
Harmonic Inversion of Intervals 128
Focus 130
Practice Materials 133

Focus on Skills III 147

CHAPTER 8 Minor Key Signatures 151

Related Keys 151
Minor Key Signatures 152
Parallel Keys 155
The Circle of Fifths: Minor Keys 156
Rhythm Revisited: Conducting Patterns 157
Focus 160
Practice Materials 161

CHAPTER 9 Minor Scales 165

Natural Minor Scale 167
Harmonic Minor Scale 171

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xii

Melodic Minor Scale 174
Minor Scales in Actual Music 176
How to Sing Minor Scales 177
Focus 181
Practice Materials 183

CHAPTER 10 Pentatonic and Blues Scales 201
The Pentatonic Scale 201

Minor Pentatonic 206
The Blues Scale 206
Rhythm Revisited: Keeping the Beat 208
Focus 208
Practice Materials 209

Focus on Skills IV 213

CHAPTER 11
Triads 217

Basic Structure of Triads 218

Close and Open Positions 220
Augmented and Diminished Triads 221
Triads and Scales 224
Inversions of Triads 225
Labeling Inversions 226
Focus 228
Practice Materials 231

CHAPTER 12 Triads in a Musical Context 239

Labeling Triads 239

Chord Symbols 242
Guitar Tablature 243
Seventh Chords 244
Dominant Seventh Chords 245
Diatonic Seventh Chords 246
Inversions of Seventh Chords 246
Recognizing Triads in Actual Music 247
Block Chords 247
Arpeggiations 248
Focus 252
Practice Materials 255

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xiii

CHAPTER 13 Chord Progressions 261
Tendency Tones 261

Cadences 264
The Authentic Cadence 265
The Plagal Cadence 266
The Half Cadence 267
The Deceptive Cadence 267
Simple Chord Progressions 270
Two-Chord Progression 270
Three-Chord Progression 272
12-Bar Blues Progression 273
Focus 275
Practice Materials 277

Focus on Skills V 279

CHAPTER 14
Writing a Song 283
Primary and Secondary Chords 283

Musical Form 289
Strophic Form (12-Bar Blues) 290
Binary Form (AB) 290
Ternary Form (ABA) 291
32-Bar Song Form (AABA) 293
Focus 295

Appendixes

APPENDIX A Graded Rhythms for Counting and Performing 297

APPENDIX B Graded World Rhythms in Two and Three Parts 302

APPENDIX C Syllables for Sight-Singing Scales and Modes 307

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xiv

APPENDIX D Graded Melodies for Sight-Singing and Playing 309

APPENDIX E Chromatic Scale and Major Scale Fingerings for Keyboard Instruments 314

APPENDIX F The C Clef 317

APPENDIX G Other Scales and Modes 321

APPENDIX H Transposing the Modes 328

APPENDIX I A Brief Introduction to Timbre 333

APPENDIX J A Brief Discussion of Acoustics 337

APPENDIX K Basic Guitar Chords 339

APPENDIX L Focus on Fundamentals: Installing and Using the CD-ROM 341

Glossary 347
Subject Index 352
Index to Musical Examples 356

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xv

cÜxytvx

To Students

As you begin your work with music, it might be helpful to keep in mind that there are multiple paths through the material you plan to learn. There is no one right way to pursue music that will ensure success. Instead, there are many parallel paths, all of which require about the same amount of work. So if one method of practicing doesn't yield results, try another. In addition to the text, you also have access to a website and a CD-ROM. In fact, in this ninth edition of A Creative Approach to Music Fundamentals, you have a package of materials that will not only enable your teacher to focus class attention on the topics that are most significant, but will also allow you to customize your own individual learning experience beyond the classroom. What you need to learn may be fixed, i.e., the fundamentals of music, but how you set about acquiring this knowledge is now, more than ever, in your hands. And while regular practice and study are still absolutely necessary—no musician ever gets any better otherwise—the variety of musical experiences and practice materials in this package will make the work easier, less repetitive, and, perhaps go a little faster as well.

We will begin our work in music by learning how to practice. It is, after all, the most important thing a musician does. The good ones do it every day. So regular practice, with specific techniques for how to practice, are stressed and encouraged throughout the text. Here, you will find plenty of practice exercises to help you grow and improve, plus skill assessment materials to help you gauge your progress along the way. It is equally important that you experience the more creative aspects of music fundamentals—the listening, performing, and composing activities—as quick ly as possible. This, after all, is the fun side of music, the part that makes all the studying and practicing worthwhile. And in the Music in Action exercises found in the text, a variety of activities are available that will encourage and enable you to become musically engaged, both individually and as a class. As you go forward, keep in mind that music isn't something that begins to happen after you take your final exam. It can, should, and must happen all along the way.

The primary focus of your work in this book will be the basic set of musical build ing blocks, or elements, or fundamentals, that informs all music, no matter what the style. These fundamentals always stay the same. It is the many different ways that composers use and combine them that change. To put it more succinctly, musical styles change, the fundamentals of music do not. No matter what kind of music you are interested in, and want to write and play, the way to begin is to learn the fun damentals, because you will always be able to apply them to any style of music, including ones that haven't even been imagined yet.

The Package

That is where this book, and the material packaged with it, can help you. It is about the fundamentals of music, and it is designed to help you get off to a good start. In addition to the text, which includes written examples to test your musical intelli gence, aural examples to help you practice your musical skills, and periodic quizzes

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xvi

to measure your progress, there is a fold-out keyboard at the back of the book to help you learn the notes, and a CD-ROM, called Focus on Fundamentals, containing both practice materials and sound files of some of the examples in the book. There is even a website that you can visit. To order the text with the Focus on Fundamentals CD-ROM, at no additional cost, use ISBN 0-495-09093-X. If you prefer to order the text without the CD-ROM, use ISBN 0-495-09513-3.

The Schirmer Music Resource Center

http://music.wadsworth.com, is a companion site to this textbook that offers a vari ety of tools for learning music fundamentals. The Schirmer Audio Dictionary of Music, for example, contains over 600 terms and definitions that include interactive audio, images and links to related terms.

The reason for offering these additional exercises and interactivities is to give you the opportunity to learn the fundamentals of music in an individualized way that bet ter matches your own unique set of skills and abilities. Because no two people ever learn music in the same way or at the same speed you will find that you may need more work on some skills and less on others. Those needs are different for each mem ber of the class. So this additional material can help you individualize your work. Now you can supplement your class work with as much individual practice as you need.

To Instructors

This ninth edition of A Creative Approach to Music Fundamentals has been designed to give each teacher as much flexibility as possible in choosing and customizing top ics and activities for their class. The combination of chapter topics and appendixes makes the book usable for a variety of classroom needs and situations. In addition, the text gets students involved in the creative side of music fundamentals from the beginning with exercises that students, no matter what their skill level, can partic ipate in and enjoy. This new edition also includes an expanded reference to the gui tar and popular music, and now contains a discussion of tablature and an Appendix on Basic Guitar Chords. The final chapter ends with a comprehensive creative assignment—to write a song and play or sing it for the class.

One of the first changes you will notice in this edition is that all of the out-of-class practice materials are now grouped at the end of each chapter. This has been done to allow students to remove and hand these pages in without destroying any of the text. Another change is the treatment of rhythm, which has been expanded to two chapters, giving the topics of simple meter and compound meter, always a confusing distinction, their own individual chapters. Also, a new Focus on Skills assessment sec tion has been added between these two rhythm chapters to make sure that the con cept of simple meter is understood before work with compound meter is begun. Furthermore, various rhythmic topics, complete with their own practice materials, are now spread throughout the book to help insure that rhythmic practice and devel opment will be ongoing throughout the semester. Similarly, the information on triads has been separated into two chapters—one that focuses on learning to recognize and write triads, and a second that explains various labeling systems, introduces seventh chords, and discusses how to recognize triads in actual music.

The chapter formerly titled Other Scales has been replaced in this edition by one titled Pentatonic and Blues Scales, and the information on modes, the wholetone scale, and the octatonic scale (a new addition) has been moved to an appendix, making it eas ier for instructors who don't have sufficient class time, or don't want to include this material, to omit it. Additionally, a new section on musical form has been included that

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xvii

examines basic binary and ternary structures, as well as the 32-bar song form and 12-bar blues.

Teaching Package

An eBank Instructor's Manual is available for instructors that includes answers to the exercises in the text, including the Focus on Skills sections; suggested classroom activ ities; discussions on using popular music in class, using the Focus on Fundamentals CD-ROM and more.

Acknowledgments

I would like to thank the following reviewers for their input in revising the text. As they will find in what follows, their ideas and suggestions have played a big role in making this ninth edition the strongest and most useful edition yet.

Cynthia Carr, University of Delaware
Anne Marie de Zeeuw, University of Louisville
Jeff Donovick, St. Petersburg Junior College—Clearwater
Laurdella Foulkes-Levy, University of Mississippi
Douglas Bruce Johnson, Trinity College
Lura Johnson, Loyola College
Brian T Kilp, Indiana State University
Elisa Koehler, Goucher College
Mark Pottinger, Manhattan College
Carla Reisch, Irvine Valley College
George Ruckert, MIT
Margaret R Simmons, Southern Illinois University
Stephen Stanziano, Cleveland State University
Ron Wheeler, Oral Roberts University
Richard Wright, Suffolk County Community College
Robert E. Wright, University of Montevallo

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xviii

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xix

\ÇàÜÉwâvà|ÉÇ

The purpose of this book is to help you to become a better musician. I am assuming, as you should, that you are already musical to some degree; most people are. Almost everyone, for instance, sang and danced as a child, and many of us now play a musical instrument, some by ear, others by reading notes from a printed score. And although you may never have performed on stage, you have probably amassed a good deal of knowledge about the music you know and love, and perhaps have acquired some skill at performing it, as well. So regardless of how far you may or may not have come in your pursuit of music, begin to consider yourself a musician, and think of this book as a means to becoming a better one.

But what exactly do we need to learn that will make us more musical? Are there elements of music that are so basic and fundamental that all musicians—regardless of the style of music they play—will profit from a deeper understanding of them? Fortunately the answer is yes, and it involves an exploration and greater knowledge of the six basic elements of music and the four characteristics of musical sound. For no matter what style of music may interest you—from metal, rap, electronica, and hiphop, to Broadway show tunes, church music, Tin Pan Alley, and pop, all the way to classical composers such as Bach, Mozart, Chopin, and Mahler—all styles of music utilize the same six basic elements, and all musical sound has the same four char acteristics. Anything that we can learn about these basic building blocks of music (this musical DNA, if you will) will help to better inform our performances and help us to become better musicians.

The Elements of Music

The six basic elements of music are:

- Rhythm
- Melody
- Harmony
- Timbre
- Texture
- Form

Both rhythm and form deal with music in time. Rhythm concerns the sequencing and ordering of the moment-to-moment events, from the steady pulse underlying the music to the unlimited array of rhythmic patterns riding above it that help to add both unity and variety. It may be useful to think of rhythm as the engine that moves the music forward and gives it the feeling of always going somewhere. We will begin our exploration of music fundamentals here. Form, on the other hand, is about how an entire piece of music unfolds in time, that is, how the various parts or sections go together to create a musical shape that is both recognizable and pleasing to the ear. The 12-bar blues is one such example of musical form that we will explore.

Melody and harmony are also related; they deal with pitch and its musical manip ulation. Melody is the horizontal unfolding of pitch over time. It creates the shapes

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xx

that we identify as songs. Harmony, on the other hand, involves the vertical aspect of pitch, and how various sounds (or chords) go together to create pleasing and interesting combinations (or progressions). Because this book deals with tonal music, we will spend a great deal of time working with these two elements.

The elements of timbre and texture are related to the sounds of instruments and voices. Timbre refers both to the sounds of individual instruments and voices, such as the trumpet, piano, tenor voice, or guitar, as well as to various combinations of instruments, such as the early rock 'n' roll band, the string quartet, or the church choir. All of these individual instruments and ensembles have their own unique timbre. To learn more about timbre, including a discussion of instrumental families and the ranges of individual instruments, see Appendix I, A Brief Introduction to Timbre. Texture, on the other hand, refers to the number of individual voices, or instrumental lines, a piece of music may contain. When discussing musical texture we speak of a thick or a thin texture, and whether it is monophonic (a single melody line), homophonic (a melody with accompaniment), or polyphonic (two or more equally important melodies, as in a fugue or a round).

This book will focus primarily on rhythm, melody, and harmony, but will also deal with all six of these elements to one degree or another. You will find that each style of music has developed its own way of defining, weighing, and combining these elements, and that if you can identify these differences, your understanding of music, as well as your ability to perform some of it, will increase dramatically.

The Characteristics of Musical Sound

In addition to the six elements of music, there are four characteristics of musical sound that are also important building blocks of music. These are:

- Pitch
- Duration
- Volume
- Timbre

The word pitch is more a musical term than a scientific one. Pitch results from the movement of air molecules and the vibratory pattern thus created, and is called frequency by scientists and acousticians. And although some musicians may think that an understanding of acoustics is beyond their field of study, this is becoming less true each year, as synthesizers, music software, and computers enable us to deal with music on a somewhat more scientific basis.

Musical duration, on the other hand, concerns the length of a sound in time. Durations consist of three distinct parts: the initial attack, the period of time the sound is sustained, and the decay, or dying away of the sound. Musical sounds express these three aspects of duration in a variety of ways, and this variety is a major factor in the uniqueness of each sound.

Volume is a term that musicians use to identify the degree of loudness of a sound. It is called amplitude by scientists, who measure it in decibels. Most musicians, however, find the term *volume* more suitable, and refer to musical loudness with less precise terms such as forte (loud) and piano (soft).

Timbre, as you will recall from the discussion of the elements of music, involves the color of the sound. It is what allows us to identify a particular sound as made by a guitar, flute, or violin, even though they may all be playing the same pitch. Although we will not spend a great deal of time discussing timbre, it is important that musicians be able to identify instruments by sound, and you should begin to develop this ability on your own or with your teacher's help. After all, next to practicing, listening is one of the most important things a musician can do.

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xxi

These four characteristics of sound, and their traditional manipulation by voices and instruments, and more recently by synthesizers, samplers, and computers, identify and create the sonic characteristics of music. As musicians, we often take these characteristics for granted, but as you will learn, the elements of music and the characteristics of musical sound are so fundamental that they inform all music. The more we understand and make use of this basic information, the more musical we will become. You can learn more about the characteristics of musical sound in Appendix J, A Brief Discussion of Acoustics.

Musical Talent, Musical Knowledge

The distinction between musical talent and musical knowledge can be confusing at first. Some people think there really isn't much of a difference. But there is, and it is important to understand it because that is the first step toward becoming a better musician.

All of us know people who can play or sing extremely well, but who have a hard time explaining in words how they do what they do. Often these people are able to play pieces of music that they have heard only a few times or to write music of great charm and subtlety with seeming ease. Yet these same people sometimes find it very difficult to talk about their obvious natural abilities. On the other hand, some people can easily put into words what they think about a piece of music, or what they hear happening in it technically, but they may not be able to perform particularly well, or to compose. For some reason the ability to "understand" music does not seem to make them better at performing or composing.

Why is this? What is the basic difference between these two types of musical people? Each has a unique skill that the other sometimes desires. And, surely, both wish to know as much as possible about the music they love. The answer is that the first type of person relates to music primarily on the basis of innate musical talent, whereas the second type relies on a learned knowledge of music that has been acquired through study. Both kinds of musicianship are necessary to becoming a complete musician, and you should nurture and develop both as much as you can. It is not a reasonable option to develop one talent or skill and discard the rest as boring or unnecessary. You will need them all if you really want to make it in the complex world of music today.

Everyone reading this book has some musical talent. All of us do. But the extent to which this talent has been developed probably varies greatly from person to person. Some of you may be just learning to play an instrument, or planning to learn to play, or hoping to write a song some day. Others may already play and sing, and some may even write songs "by ear." But no matter what your current range of musicianship, it's fairly safe to assume that you have not yet explored the full range of your musical talent.

This book, however, is less about developing your talent than about building on your musical knowledge. It will help you to learn the facts about music. Fundamentally, this is a book about musical skills that are shared in varying degrees and combinations by all successful musicians. For some, this book will help you learn concepts and terms for the music you can already perform. For others, working with this material will help you to develop faster as a performer or composer than you otherwise might. For all of you this book will, at times, be hard work requiring considerable time and effort. The work may even become frustrating, since developing new skills in any area always requires a great deal of practice and repetition. Keep in mind that becoming more musical requires your active and continued commitment and participation. You can't do it by merely reading the book. You must physically clap and play the rhythms, sing the melodies, and listen to the examples. You also need to go through all the Class Work and complete the Practice Materials and Music in

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xxii

Action experiences as they occur. It may take a bit longer this way, but you will see the results more quickly.

This book is also designed to go beyond a mere set of drills and exercises. As we all know, there is more to music than that! If you study the book carefully and sys tematically, and do the exercises thoughtfully, over time you will gain the knowledge and vocabulary you need to enhance your basic understanding and enjoyment of music. These new skills will encourage you to listen to music rather than just hear it, and enable you to discuss music objectively rather than simply to describe your emotional responses. These skills will also open the door to how music works—knowledge that will, in turn, contribute both to better performances and to a greater musical understanding.

A Theory of Music

What is music theory, and why is it necessary? How do "facts" about music some times make us better musicians? These questions are not easy to answer. Like the person who plays by ear, the music theorist sometimes understands the answers to these questions in ways that cannot be easily or completely expressed in words.

On one level, music theory is the planned and systematic study of how a particu lar type of music works, in our case, tonal music. But this is equally true whether we are talking about Western European art music, American popular music, various styles of electronic music, or music from cultures such as Bali, Morocco, or Japan. As mentioned earlier, no matter what type of music is being studied, basic music theory examines the various parts, or elements, of the music—rhythm, melody, harmony, timbre, texture, form—and the ways in which these individual elements combine and interact to create a piece of music within a particular style. Many of you may have had the experience of wanting to learn more about the music you listen to but not knowing where to begin, or of wanting to explain something about music you can per form, but not knowing what to say. These kinds of frustrations illustrate the value of a theory of music and the need for a book such as this.

The question of how factual information about music makes us better musicians is more difficult to answer. Although theoretical knowledge will undoubtedly help you become a "better" musician, it does not automatically mean that you will be able to write, play, or sing any better. It will probably happen that way; it does for most people. But don't assume that it will happen magically. The best approach is to set goals for yourself. What do you want to be able to do musically by the end of this course? By the time you graduate? In ten years? Throughout your life? Goals will give you a standard against which to measure your progress. As you proceed from exercise to exercise and chapter to chapter, keep your goals in mind and try to see how each topic relates to helping you carry out your plan.

How to Practice

Musicians must practice; it's a fact of life. They do it every day. Almost no one is sufficiently talented to be able to skip this step. For you, just beginning the formal study of music, your growth will depend upon how successful you are at learning to connect the study of fundamentals with practicing them. It is not enough to put knowledge about music in your head, you must put the sound and "feel" of it into your body as well. And that can be done only with practice. Because with music, the old adage "we learn by doing" is certainly true.

Those of you with years of experience on a particular instrument or voice, per haps coming from teachers who provided you with great technical training, may understand the need for practice on your instrument, but question why you should spend time practicing fundamentals. And if you play by ear you may even question

Duckworth_Music9e_FM.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page xxiii

the need to learn to "read" music at all, rightly pointing out that there are many well-respected and successful musicians who do not possess, or seem to need, these skills. At times when frustration arises over the difficulties of learning to read pitch and rhythm on the staff, you may even be tempted to question why it is necessary for you to go through steps they didn't take.

Please resist the urge. All musicians are a composite of musical skills and under standings, some of which they are good at, others not. The process of creating your musical personality is one of learning to emphasize the skills you have, and to work around those you don't. Musicians who don't read music—whether Western rock and jazz musicians, or those from cultures who work in oral traditions—have developed other sets of skills, particularly in the areas of memory and aural recognition. If they are successful, it is because they are so proficient in these areas that they can work around their lack of knowledge in others. But for most of us, our skills in any one area are not sufficiently advanced to allow us to ignore other fundamental aspects of music. In order to be successful, we will need to develop all of our skills as much as we possibly can. It may help to think of your composite musical skills as a box of crayons. You can draw a far more subtle and elaborate picture with a box of 32 crayons than you can with a box of 8. And just because some people can succeed without one or more basic skills, it is shortsighted, and probably unrealistic, for you to believe that you can too.

But how do we go about learning to practice musical fundamentals? What is involved? Is there a right way and a wrong way? While there may not be a "wrong" way, there are certainly ways that are better, and produce success faster, than oth ers. These center on setting realistic goals, frequency of practice, and a variety of materials. The first step to successful practicing is to set both short- and long-term goals. What do you want to learn today, tomorrow, next week? You will always be better off if you work toward specific goals rather than nebulous ones.

The second step of successful practice involves frequency of repetition. We learn by doing, over and over if necessary. Think about learning to ride a bicycle, speak a foreign language, or play a new video game: Our skills improve with focused, con sistent practice. The same is true in learning the fundamentals of music. With music, just as with other skills, it is important to remember that improvement doesn't develop in a straight line. Instead, we get better in plateaus. Along with your com mitment to regular practice you must realize that success comes in stages. Don't let your commitment to practice be undermined by frustration over a seeming lack of progress. Success will come, but not at the same rate every day.

The third step toward mastering music fundamentals is to practice a variety of materials from day to day rather than repeating the same exercises over and over. It is less boring to have variety, and it helps you learn faster because you approach the same material from different points of view. This is where this book comes in. I have tried to give you a sequence of topics to practice along with a variety of ways to approach each one, particularly in the areas of notation, common meters and rhythmic patterns, interval recognition, key signatures, scales, and chords. But this material, no matter how well organized, is of little value if you don't practice it regularly. Remember, you must make the commitment and stick with it. There really is no other way.

Finally, remember that all fine musicians, no matter what style of music they play, are a unique blend of musical talent and musical knowledge. No two are alike. As you grow and learn, you too will develop a musical personality that is distinctly your own. So as you begin, keep in mind that musical talent and music knowledge are two distinctly different things. You must encourage and develop both, through hard, con sistent work. As you proceed, use your innate musicianship to make the information in this book less difficult and more musical. Let your musical knowledge grow and accumulate. Before long, this new information will begin to influence and inform your talent. You can't be sure exactly how or when this will happen, but you'll know it when it begins. And when it starts, it never stops. Becoming a good musician is a lifelong journey. There is always more to learn, no matter how accomplished you are.

Duckworth_Music9e_Sub_Ind.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page 352

fâu}xvà \Çwxå

This index includes topics discussed in text. See Glossary for specific terms, and Index to Musical Examples for names of composers and titles.

Symbols
( ) accent mark, 3
F double flats, 19
S double sharps, 19
f flats, 17–18, 19
n natural, 19
s sharps, 17–18, 19

A flat major scale, 99, 317
A harmonic minor scale, 171–172
A major guitar chords, 344
A major scale, 86, 97, 316
A melodic minor scale, 174
A minor guitar chords, 344
A natural minor scale, 167, 171
A pentatonic scale, 201, 204
Accelerando (accel.), 37
Accent mark, 3
Accidentals, 19–20
  See also Key signature
Acoustics, 341–342
  amplitude, 342
  duration, 342
  frequency, 341–342
  timbre, 342
Adagio, 36
Alla breve, 36
  See also Cut time
Allegro, 36–37
Alto C clef position, 319
Alto clef, 319
Amplitude, 342
Andante, 36–37
Arpeggiations, 246–250
Ascending C melodic minor scale, 174
Ascending chromatic scale, 83–84, 307
Ascending melodic minor scale, 307
Augmented fourth interval, 122
Augmented intervals, 120, 122, 124
Augmented triads, 219–222
Authentic cadence, 263–264

B flat major scale, 99, 317
B major scale, 98, 316
B natural minor scale, 168
Bar lines, 4
Basic pulse, 33–36
Bass clefs, 13–14, 24, 43
  See also F clefs
Bassoon, 338
Beams, 5–6
  rhythm and, 92–94
Beat, 70–71
  See also Pulse
Black keys of keyboard, 17–18
Block chords, 245–246
Borrowed division, 110
Broken chord patterns, 247

C clef, 319–322
  drawing, 319–320
  positions, 319
C flat major scale, 99, 316, 317
C major guitar chords, 241, 343
C major scale, 84, 315, 333
C melodic minor scale
  ascending, 174
  descending, 174
C natural minor scale, 168
C sharp, 86
C sharp major scale, 98
Cadences, 121, 262–268
  authentic, 263–264
  deceptive, 265–266
  defined, 262
  half, 265
  hearing cadences, 266
  plagal, 264
  See also Chord progressions
Cello, 338
Chord progressions, 259–276
  bar blues progression, 271–273
  cadences, 262–268
  dominant/tonic relationship, 261–262
  simple, 268–273
  tendency tones, 259–260
  three-cord, 270–271
  two-chord, 269–270
  See also Cadences; Chords; Tonal music; Tonality; Triads
Chords
  block, 245–246
  broken chord patterns, 247
  defined, 215
  guitar, 343–344
  hearing chord qualities, 221–222
  primary and secondary, 281–282
  seventh, 242–245
  symbols for, 240–241
  See also Chord progressions; Triads
Chromatic half steps, 19
Chromatic scales, 83–84
  ascending, 307
  descending, 307
  fingerings for keyboard instruments, 315
Circle of fifths
  major key signatures, 109
  minor key signatures, 156–157
Clarinet, 338
Clefs, 11–15
  bass clefs, 13–14, 24, 43
  treble, 11–13, 23, 43
  See also C clef
Close position, 218

Duckworth_Music9e_Sub_Ind.qxd 12/5/05 10:22 PM Page 353

Compound duple, 47–48
Compound intervals, 128
Compound meter, 47–60, 296–299
  counting method for, 50–53
  division of the pulse, 50–51
  primary pulse, 50
  repeat signs, 54–55
  syncopation, 54
  ties, 53–54
  See also Meter
Compound quadruple, 48
Compound triple, 48
Conducting patterns, 157–158, 160
Counting methods
  compound meter, 50–53
  simple meter, 33–36
  triplets and duplets, 110–111
Crescendo (cresc.), 67
Cut time, 36

D flat major scale, 99, 317
D flat melodic minor scale, 174
D harmonic minor, 189
D harmonic minor triads, 223
D major guitar chords, 343
D major scale, 97, 315
D melodic minor, 194
D minor guitar chords, 344
Da capo al fine, 70
Dal segno al fine, 70
Deceptive cadence, 265–266
Descrescendo (decresc.), 67
Diatonic half steps, 18, 84
Diatonic seventh chords, 244
Diminished fifth interval, 122
Diminished intervals, 120, 122
Diminished triads, 219–222
Diminuendo (dim.), 67
Do, movable, 87–88
Dominant seventh chords, 243
Dominant/tonic relationship, 261–262
Dorian mode, 308, 323, 332–334
Dotted notes, 3, 31
Double flat sign, 43
Double flats, 19
Double sharps, 19
Double sharp sign, 43
Downbeat, 158
Drawing
  C clefs, 319–320
  F clefs, 13
  note values, 6
  treble clefs, 11–12
Duple meter, 3–4, 7–8
  compound, 48
  simple, 33
Duplets, 110–111
Duration, 342
Dynamics, 67

E flat, 86
E flat major scale, 99, 317
E harmonic minor, 187
E major guitar chords, 343
E major scale, 97, 316
E melodic minor, 193
E minor guitar chords, 344
E natural minor scale, 151, 332
Ear training
  chord progressions, 249–250
  compound meter, 57
  defined, 91
  intervals, 129–131
  major scales, 91–92
  minor and major key signatures, 155
  minor scales, 175, 179
  pitch, 10–11
  rhythm, 7
  simple meter, 36
  triads, 215
Eighth notes, 3, 6–7
  beams, 5–6
  equivalency to quarter note, 7
  flags for, 5
  illustrated, 5
  rhythm tree, 7
Eighth rests, 8–9
Enharmonic pitches, 62–63
Enharmonic keys, 109
Enharmonic pitches, 62–63

F clefs, 13–14
  See also Bass clefs
F guitar chord, 241
  F major guitar chords, 343
  F major scale, 98, 151, 317, 333
  F major triad, 216, 217, 222
  F minor triad, 217
F sharp, 17–18, 85–86
  F sharp major scale, 98, 316
Fifths
  as interval, 119, 121
  major circle of, 109
  minor circle of, 156–157
Flags, 5–6
  beamed together, 5–6
  illustrated, 5–6
Flat major keys, 107–108
  Flat minor keys, 153
Flat sign, 43
Flats, 17–18, 19, 85–86
  enharmonic pitches and, 62–63
Flute, 338
Forte (f), 67
  Fortissimo (ff), 67
Fourths, as interval, 118–119, 121
  French horn, 339
  Frequency, 341
  See also Pitch
Frets, 241

G clefs, 11–13
  See also Treble clefs
G flat, 86
G flat major scale, 99, 316
  G guitar chord, 241
  G harmonic minor, 165
  G major guitar chords, 344
  G major scale, 85, 97, 151, 315, 333
  G melodic minor, 165
  G natural minor, 165
  G pentatonic scale, 200–201
G sharp, 86
  G sharp harmonic minor scale, 171
  Great staff, 14–15, 25
  Guitar chords
  guitar tablature, 241–242
  major keys, 343–344
  minor keys, 344
  Guitar tablature, 241–242
  Guitar tuning, 241

Half cadence, 265
  Half notes, 3, 5–7
  equivalency to quarter note, 7
  illustrated, 5
  rhythm tree, 7
Half rests, 8–9
Half steps, 18–19, 122–125
  chromatic, 19
  diatonic, 18, 84
  major scale and, 84–86, 100–102
  minor scale and, 167–168, 171
  modes and, 323
Harmonic cadence, 262
  Harmonic intervals, 117
  Harmonic rhythm, 284
  Harmonic series, 337
  Harmonizing a melody, 282–287
  Harmony, 215
  Interval patterns, 117
  Intervals, 18, 117–145, 215
  augmented, 120
  defined, 117
  diminished, 120
  harmonic, 117
  harmonic inversion of, 128–129
  major and minor, 120, 123–124, 168
  melodic, 117
  natural minor scale, 168
  perfect, 120–122
  quality of, 120–121
  scales as, 83–84
  sight singing, 126–127
  simple and compound, 128
  sizes of, 118–120
  within the octave, 125
Inversions
  labeling, 224–226
  of seventh chords, 244–245
  of triads, 223–224
Italian dynamics, 67

Key signatures
  defined, 105
  flat major keys, 107–108
  relative major and minor scales, 154
  sharp major keys, 106–107
  See also Accidentals; Major key signatures; Minor key signatures

Duckworth_Music9e_Sub_Ind.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page 354

Keyboard, 15–19, 25–29, 43–45
  black keys, 17–18
musical distances, 18–19
  octave identification, 65–66
  pitch and, 73–74
  scales and, 86–87
  white keys, 16–17, 62–63

L (lower in pitch), 10–11
Largo, 36
Leading tone scale degree, 90
Ledger lines, 14, 63–64
Lento, 36
Lydian mode, 308, 323, 332–333, 335

Major intervals, 120, 123–124
Major key signatures, 105–115
  circle of fifths, 109
  enharmonic keys, 109
  flat keys, 107–108
  parallel keys, 155–156
  sharp keys, 106–107
  See also Minor key signatures
Major keys, 309–312
  guitar chords, 343–344
Major-minor relationship, 151–156
Major pentatonic scale, 200–203
Major scales, 83–104, 307, 333
  elements of, 84–89
  fingerings for keyboard instruments, 315–317
  intervals of, 83–84, 123, 168
  naming scale degrees, 90–91
  rhythm and, 92–94
  sight singing, 87–89, 95
  See also Tonal music
Major triads, 216–218
Measures, 4
Mediant scale degree, 90
Mediant triad, 222
Melodic intervals, 117
Melodic minor scale, 165, 173–176, 307
Melodies, 22
  graded melodies for sight-singing and playing, 309–313
  harmonizing, 282–287
Meter, 5, 7–8
  compound, 296–299
  defined, 3
  feeling the, 3
  less-familiar, 297–299
  simple, 295–299
  types of, 3
  See also Compound meter; Simple meter
Meter signatures. See Time signatures
Metronome, 37
Mezzo forte (mf), 67
Mezzo piano (mp), 67
Middle C, 26, 28–29
  authentic cadence in, 263–264
  circle of fifths, 109
  great staff and, 14–15
  as keyboard landmark, 16
  parallel keys, 155–156
  related keys, 151–152
  See also Major key signatures
Minor intervals, 120, 123–124
Minor key signatures, 151–163
  circle of fifths, 156–157
  flats, 153
  parallel keys, 155–156
  related keys, 151–152
  relative major and relative minor relationships, 153–154
  rhythm and, 157–158
  sharps, 152–153
  See also Major key signatures
Minor keys, 312–313
  guitar chords, 344
Minor scales, 83, 165–197
  in actual music, 175–176
  harmonic minor, 165, 170–173, 175–176, 307
  melodic minor, 165, 173–176, 307–308
  natural minor, 165, 167–170, 307
  sight singing, 177–178
  See also Harmonic minor scale; Melodic minor scale; Natural minor scale
Minor triads, 216–218
Mixolydian mode, 308, 323, 332–333, 335
Moderate tempos, 36
Moderato, 36–37
Modes, 199, 323–327
  transposing, 324–327, 331–335
  See also Pitch sets
Movable do, 87–88
Musical distances, 18–19
  half steps, 18–19
  whole steps, 19
Musical form, 287–292
  32-bar song for (AABA), 291–292
  binary for (AB), 288–289
  strophic for (12-bar blues), 288
  ternary for (ABA), 289–291
  See also Songwriting

Natural, 19
Natural minor scale, 151, 165, 167–171, 307, 332
  intervals of, 168
Natural sign, 43
Normal subdivision, 110
Note values, 4–7
  See also Rhythm
Noteheads, 5–6, 9–11
Notes
  dotted, 3, 31
  eighth notes, 3, 6–7
  half notes, 3, 5–7
  quarter notes, 3, 5–7
  sixteenth notes, 5–7
  whole notes, 2, 5–7
  See also Headings under specific notes

Oboe, 338
Octatonic scales, 199, 328–329
Octave identification, 65–66
Octave sign, 64–65
Octaves, intervals within, 119, 121, 125
Open position, 218–219
Overtones, 337

Parallel keys, 155–156
Partials, 337
  Pentatonic scale, 199–204
  major, 200–203
  minor, 204
  Western music examples, 201–203
Pentatonic scale (major), 308
  Percussion, timbre and, 339
  Perfect fifth interval, 121–123
  Perfect fourth interval, 121–123
  Perfect intervals, 120–122
Perfect octave interval, 121, 123
  Perfect pitch, 91
  Perfect unison interval, 121, 123
  Phrygian mode, 308, 323, 332, 334
Pianissimo (pp), 67
Piano (p), 67
Piccolo, 338
  Pitch, 9–15, 23–25, 61–77
  clefs, 11–15
  dynamics, 67
  enharmonic pitches, 62–63
  great staff, 14–15
  ledger lines, 63–64
  listening, 61–62
  noteheads, 9–11
  octave identification, 65–66
  octave sign, 64–65
  perfect, 91
  reading music, 68–70
  relative, 91
  rhythm and, 70–71
  staff, 9
  stems, 66–67
  See also Frequency
Pitch notation, 4
Plagal cadence, 264
Poco a poco, 67
Preparatory beat, 158
  Presto, 36
  Pulse, 70–71
  basic, 33–36
  defined, 2–3
  divisions of, 34, 50–51
  meter and, 4–5
  primary, 50
  See also Beat

Duckworth_Music9e_Sub_Ind.qxd 8/8/06 3:49 PM Page 355

Quadruple meter, 3–5, 7–8
compound, 48
simple, 33
Quality of intervals (color), 120–122
Quarter notes, 3, 5–7
equivalencies with other note values, 7
illustrated, 5
rhythm tree, 7
Quarter rests, 8–9

Related keys, 151–152
Relative major and relative minor key signature chart, 154
Relative pitch, 91
Repeat signs, 54–55, 70
Rests
dotted notes and, 31
symbols and values for, 8–9
Rhymic notation, 4–6
Rhythm, 1–9, 21–22
conducting and, 157–158
harmonic, 284
measures, 4
meter, 3
note values, 4–7
pitch and, 70–71
pulse, 2–3
rests, 8–9
three-part, 304–305
two-part, 301–304
world, 301–305
See also Compound meter; Note values; Simple meter
Ritardando (rit.), 37
Root position, triads, 216–217, 224

Scales
defined, 83
as interval patterns, 83–84
microtonal, 199
octatonic, 199, 328–329
playing, 91
scale degrees, 90–91
triads and, 222–223
twelve-tone, 199
whole-tone scale, 199, 308, 327–328
See also Blues scales; Major scales; Minor scales; Modes; Pentatonic scales; Sight singing
Seventh chords, 242–245
diatonic, 244
dominant, 243
inversion of, 244–245
Sevenths, as interval, 119
Sharp major keys, 106–107
Sharp minor keys, 152–153
Sharp sign, 43
Sharps, 17–18, 19, 85–86
enharmonic pitches and, 62–63
Sight singing
bass clef, 14
graded melodies for sight-singing and playing, 309–313
intervals, 126–127
syllables for sight-singing scales and modes, 307–308
Simple chord progressions, 268–273
Simple intervals, 128
Simple meter, 31–46, 295–299
See also Meter
Sixteenth notes, 5–7
Sixteenth rests, 8–9
Sixths, as interval, 119
Sonata allegro form, 287
Songwriting, 281–293
Soprano C clef position, 319
Staff, 9
great staff, 14–15, 25
Stems, 5–6, 66–67
Strings, timbre and, 338
Strophic form (12-bar blues), 288
Subdominant scale degree, 90
Subdominant triad, 222
Subito, 67
Submediant scale degree, 90
Subtonic, 170
Supertonic scale degree, 90
Supertonic triad, 222
Syncopation, 54

Tempo, 7
simple meter, 36–37
Tendency tones, 259–260
Tenor clef, 319
Thirds, as interval, 118–119
Three-beat pattern, 158
Three-chord progression, 270–271
Three-part rhythms, 304–305
Timbre, 337–340
acoustics and, 342
brass: trumpets, French horn, trombone, tuba, 339
percussion, 339
strings: violin, viola, cello, string bass, 338
voices, 339–340
woodwinds, 338
Time signatures, 32
Tonal music, 83, 259
See also Chord progressions; Intervals; Major scales; Tonality
Tonality
dominant/tonic relationship, 261–262
harmonizing melodies, 282–287
simple chord progressions, 268–273
tendency tones, 259–260
three-chord progressions, 270–271
two-chord progressions, 269–270
See also Cadences; Chord progressions; Tonal music
Tonic chords, hearing, 269–270
Transposing modes, 324–327, 331–335
Treble clefs, 11–13, 43
See also G clefs
Triads, 215–258, 277–279
in actual music, 245–249
arpeggiations, 246–250
augmented and diminished triads, 219–222
chord symbols, 240–241
close and open positions, 218–219
inversions of, 223–224
labeling, 237–242
labeling inversions, 224–226
major and minor, 216–218
roman numeral analysis, 237–239
scales and, 222–223
seventh chords, 242–245
structure of, 216
See also Chord progressions; Chords
Triple meter, 3–4, 7–8
compound, 48
simple, 33
Triplets, 110–111
Trombone, 339
Trumpet, 339

Unison, interval of, 118, 121, 123
Upbeat, 158

Viola, 338
Violin, 338
Vivace, 36
Voice, timbre and, 339–340

White keys of keyboard, 16–17, 62–63
Whole notes, 2, 5–7
Whole rests, 8–9
Whole steps, 19
major scale and, 84–85
Whole-tone scale, 199, 308, 327–328
World rhythms, 301–305

Duckworth_Music9e_Mus_Ind.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 356

\Çwxå àÉ` âá|vtÄ XåtÅÑÄxá

African rhythms, 22, 303–305
Album for the Young (Schumann), 221–222
“Allegro” (Carulli), 56
“America”, 35, 89
Asian rhythms, 22, 301–302

Bach, J.S.
  Chorale from Cantata No. 180, 15
  Chorale, “Herr, ich denk’ an jene Zeit”, 264
  Courante from French Suite No., 2, 15, 179
  “Ein’Feste Burg” from Cantata No. 80, 321
  “Ermuntre dich, mein schwacher Geist”, 267
  “Heut’ Triumphieret Gottes Sohn”, 322
  “Menuet” from Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedemann Bach, The, 179
  Minuet in G Minor, 38
  “Passacaglia”, 178
  “Praeludium” from Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedmann Bach, The, 171
  “Preludio III” from Well-Tempered Clavier Book I, 105–106
“Barbara Allen”, 88
Beethoven, L.
  “Dance”, 288–289
  “Menuetto” from Sonatina in D Major, 247–248
  Variations, 279
Berlioz, H. Symphonie fantastique, 326
“Blow Ye Winds in the Morning”, 239
“Brouillards” from Preludes, Book II (Debussy), 65
“Camptown Races” (Foster), 23
Carulli, F., “Allegro”, 56
Chopin, F., Mazurka in F Major, Op. 68, No. 3, 325
Choral from Album for the Young (Schumann), 221–222
Chorale from Cantata No. 180 (Bach), 15
Chorale, “Herr, ich denk’ an jene Zeit” (Bach), 264
Clementi, M.
  “Rondo” from Sonatina in F Major, Op. 36, No. 4, 248–249
  “Rondo” from Sonatina in G Major, Op. 36, No. 5, 247
  Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 1, 68
  Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 3, III, 266
Courante from French Suite No. 2 (Bach), 15, 179
Crüger, Chorale, 277

“Dance” (Beethoven), 288–289
Debussy, C.
  “Brouillards” from Preludes, Book II, 65
  La Mer, 328
  “L’Isle Joyeuse”, 327
  “Nuages” from Nocturnes, 202
  Prelude to “The Afternoon of a Faun”, 328
  “Voiles”, Preludes, Book I, 328
“Down in the Valley”, 23, 51
“Drunken Sailor, The”, 326
Dundee (hymn), 263

Eastern European rhythms, 303–304
“Ecco la Primavera” (Landini), 125
“Eine Kleine Nachtmusik” (Mozart), 89
“Ein’Feste Burg” from Cantata No. 80 (Bach), 321
“Erie Canal”, 170
“Ermuntre dich, mein schwacher Geist” (Bach), 267
Estampie, 122

Farnaby, G., “Old Spagnoletta, The”, 57
“For He’s a Jolly Good Fellow”, 48, 51
Foster, S.
  “Camptown Races”, 23
  “Old Folks at Home”, 282–285

“Go Tell Aunt Rhody”, 13
Gregorian Chant, 325

Handel, G.F.
  “Lift up Your Heads” from Messiah, 264
  “Siciliana” from Flute Sonata in F Major, 225
“Henry Martin”, 325
“Heut’ Triumphieret Gottes Sohn” (Bach), 322
“Home on the Range”, 51
“Hush Little Baby”, 159

“I Gave My Love a Cherry”, 201

“Johnny Has Gone for a Soldier”, 178
“Joshua Fit the Battle of Jericho”, 166, 178

Kuhlau, F.
  Rondo from Sonatina, Op. 20, No. 1, 64–65
  Sonatina in C Major, Op. 55, No. 1, I, 267

La Mer (Debussy), 328
Landini, F., “Ecco la Primavera”, 125

Duckworth_Music9e_Mus_Ind.qxd 12/5/05 10:21 PM Page 357

"Lavender's Blue", 215
"Lift up Your Heads" from Messiah (Handel), 264
"L'Isle Joyeuse" (Debussy), 327
L'omnipotent from "Genevan Psalter", 268
"Lonesome Valley", 202

Mazurka in F Major, Op. 68, No. 3 (Chopin), 325
"Meet the Flintstones", 291–292
"Menuet" from Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedemann Bach, The (Bach), 179
"Menuetto" from Sonatina in D Major (Beethoven), 247–248
"Mexican Folk Song", 24
"Michael Row the Boat Ashore", 13, 88, 271
Minuet in G Minor (Bach), 38
"Mockingbird Hill", 286
"Molly Malone", 166
Mozart, W.A.
"Eine Kleine Nachtmusik", 89
Sonata in F Major, K., 332, 376
Sonata in Bf Major, K. 570, III, 64

"New River Train", 286
"Nine Hundred Miles", 24, 178
"Nowel syng we", 124
"Nuages" from Nocturnes (Debussy), 202

"Oh Dear, What Can the Matter Be", 159
"Ol' Texas", 202
"Old Folks at Home" (Foster), 282–285
"Old Joe Clark", 326–327
"Old Spagnoletta, The" (Farnaby), 57

"Passacaglia" (Bach), 178
Plano Sonata, K., 332 (Mozart), 376
"Poor Orphan Child, The" from Album for the Young (Schumann), 179, 267
"Praeludium" from Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedmann Bach, The (Bach), 171
Prelude to "The Afternoon of a Faun" (Debussy), 328
"Preludio III" from Well-Tempered Clavier, Book I (Bach), 105–106

"Red River Valley", 286–287
"Rondo" from Sonatina in F Major, Op. 36, No. 4 (Clementi), 248–249
"Rondo" from Sonatina in G Major, Op. 36, No. 5 (Clementi), 247
Rondo from Sonatina, Op. 20, No. 1 (Kuhlau), 64–65
Rossini, G., William Tell, Overtures, 200
Russian Folk Song, 38

"Sakura, Sakura", 204
"Scarborough Fair", 159, 331
Scarlatti, A.G., Sonata in C Minor, 176
Schubert, Valses nobles, 245
Schumann, R.
Choral from Album for the Young, 221–222
"Poor Orphan Child, The" from Album for the Young, 179, 267
"Siciliana" from Album for the Young, 69
"Soldier's March" from Album for the Young, 267
"Waltz" from Albumblater, 290–291
"Wild Rider, The" from Album for the Young, 179, 268
"She'll Be Coming Round the Mountain", 35
"Siciliana" from Album for the Young (Schumann), 69
"Skip to My Lou", 24
"Soldier's March" from Album for the Young (Schumann), 267
Sonata in B flat Major, K. 570, III (Mozart), 64
Sonata in C Minor (Scarlatti), 176
Sonatina in C Major, Op. 55, No. 1, I (Kuhlau), 267
Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 1 (Clementi), 68
Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 3, III (Clementi), 266
"Sourwood Mountain", 159
South American rhythms, 304–305
"St. James Infirmary", 240
"Sur le Pont d'Avignon", 89, 261
"Sweet Betsy from Pike", 14
Symphonie fantastique (Berlioz), 326

"This Old Man", 14
"Tom Dooley", 202, 269

Valses nobles (Schubert), 245
"Voiles", Preludes, Book I (Debussy), 328

"Wabash Cannon Ball, The", 173, 270
"Waltz" from Albumblater (Schumann), 290–291
"Wayfaring Stranger", 23, 201, 239
Western European rhythms, 301–304
"Wild Rider, The" from Album for the Young (Schumann), 179, 268
William Tell, Overtures (Rossini), 200
Winchester Now (hymn), 264
"Worried Man Blues", 242

"Yellow Rose of Texas, The", 35

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 1

CHAPTER ONE

The Basics of Music

Although music is a broad, complicated, and subtle form of artistic expression, it contains a few basic elements that, when understood, will not only make learning more about music seem easier but will also make it come alive for you. And that, after all, is the real purpose of the class you are taking and of this book—to give you some understanding and control over the basic elements of music so that you can make your own music in whatever style you choose. This chapter could just as easily have been titled "The Three Things You Really Need To Know," because that is what it is—an introduction to the three basic building blocks of tonal music. These basic building blocks are the place where almost everyone begins their study of music, because no matter what kind of musician you plan to be, you're going to need to know the basics. You will need to be able to manipulate pitches, to maneuver through rhythms, and to develop some way to visualize sound, in our case through the use of the piano or the synthesizer keyboard. This chapter introduces these three topics. And, although these topics will be covered in more detail later in the book, the purpose of introducing them here is to get you on the road to making music as quickly and efficiently as possible.

Rhythm

We are going to begin our study of music with the element of rhythm. All music has a rhythmic component. Sometimes the rhythm is front and center, sometimes it is in the background. But whether fast and aggressive or slow and subtle, rhythm always represents a measuring and a parceling out of time. When we talk about rhythm, we are talking about how music flows through time.

For some reason, most beginning music students feel more secure with their rhythmic skills than with their ability to hear and sing pitches. Perhaps it is because our pitch skills seem more individual, and therefore more personal. Also, since it is often thought of as easier, rhythm is sometimes given less attention and drill than pitch. Perhaps for this reason many people, even those with a lot of musi cal training, have misconceptions about rhythm's place in and contribution to a piece of music. As you begin, keep in mind that rhythm plays a fundamental role in all of the world's music, and that a mastery of rhythm (no matter what the style) and of rhythmic notation (for most Western styles) is a necessary first step in becoming a musician.

So what is musical rhythm? All of us can feel it when it's happening. It's one of the things we really respond to. Most of us can even single out the instruments most involved in creating a rhythm. But, when asked to define rhythm, we have trouble; we give only a partial definition. And although each definition contributes to the understanding of musical rhythm, none by itself explains the concept entirely. A true

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 2

explanation of musical rhythm is complex, changes from culture to culture, and involves the interaction of a large number of rhythmic components, or elements.

We will begin by discussing each of these rhythmic elements individually, both here and in the chapters that follow. What you will soon discover is that all of these rhythmic components—the pulse, meter, measure, note values, dotted notes, or ties—are relatively simple concepts when studied individually. The difficulty comes with trying to combine these simple concepts into an accurate and sufficiently complex definition of musical rhythm. Equally difficult is applying these definitions to the rhythm of an actual piece of music in an effort to understand how it works. As you continue with this chapter and the next, remember that all of the individual rhythmic elements combine within a piece of music to produce a rhythmic feeling unique to that piece. Remember also that most of us already have a high degree of sensitivity and an intuitive appreciation of those rhythmic qualities. There is the place to begin.

MUSIC IN THE MAKING

Listening

Listen to a piece of music that you have heard many times before. It may be a solo work or a piece for a small or large ensemble. It can be something from the past, such as a symphony or string quartet, or something more current, such as a pop song, dance mix, or rap. What is important—whatever style you choose—is that it be a piece of music that you "know." When listening this time, however, try to concentrate primarily on the rhythm. Are you able to direct your musical attention this selectively? If you have never tried this before, it may take several attempts before you are successful.

How different does the piece sound when you listen to it this way? Do you hear things that you have never really paid attention to or thought much about before? Is there a steady pulse? Can you hear rhythmic patterns? Do the rhythmic patterns repeat? Are there a lot of different patterns, or just a few? Try to put your thoughts and feelings about the rhythmic qualities of this piece into two or three sentences. Ask various people to read their sentences to the class. Does everyone agree?

Now, with help from your teacher or another student, choose a piece of music from another culture and listen to it, again paying particular attention to the rhythm. Are there obvious rhythmic similarities or differences between this and the more familiar piece you heard first? Are the rhythmic elements of this second example more or less prominent? Do the questions about pulse, patterns, and repetition that you considered for the first piece apply equally to this style of music? Can you summarize your thoughts about the rhythmic qualities of this unfamiliar music?

Pulse

Most of the music we hear around us every day has a steady pulse. The pulse, which is both constant and regular, can be felt when you tap your foot to music. This steady pulse in your foot can be represented visually by notes of any value. Here, it is represented by a line of whole notes.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 3

It can also be represented by half notes, quarter notes, or eighth notes.

The point is that any note value can be used to visually represent the pulse. This even includes dotted notes, which we will study later.

But regardless of the note value chosen—the quarter note is probably used most—it is important to remember that a steady, proportional relationship is established by the pulse, against which the combination of sounds and silences that makes up the actual music moves.

Meter

As you listen to and feel the pulse in various pieces of music, you will notice that some pulses sound stronger than others. This combination of strong and weak pulses forms a recurring pattern known as the meter. When musicians talk about the meter of a piece, they are referring to a particular pattern of strong and weak pulses. The three most common patterns or meters are duple meter, triple meter, and quadruple meter. As the following illustration shows, in duple meter, the pulse is divided into a recurring pattern of one strong and one weak pulse, triple meter divides the pulse into a recurring pattern of one strong and two weak pulses, and quadruple meter divides the pulse into one strong and three weak pulses.

The sign is an accent mark. It indicates that the note under which (or over which) it appears is to be given more stress than the surrounding notes.

MUSIC IN THEORY

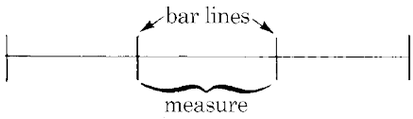
Feeling the Meter

Clap each of the metrical patterns just shown twice—first slowly, then faster—accenting the notes indicated. Notice that the speed you choose does not in any way alter the meter. What matters is that you keep the pulse steady and accent the proper notes.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 4

Measures

As you performed the different meters, you may have lost your place momentarily. Even if you didn't, you can see that it would be difficult to play a long piece of music without losing one's place. For this reason, music is divided into measures with vertical lines called bar lines.



A bar line occurs immediately before an accented pulse. Thus, duple meter has two pulses per measure, triple meter has three pulses per measure, and quadruple meter has four pulses per measure. The following example shows the common meters again, this time with bar lines included. Notice how much easier it is to read and perform the meter when it is written this way.

Double bar lines have a special meaning: Their two most common uses are to signal the beginning of a new section in a large work and to mark the end of a work. Put double bar lines at the end of any exercises or pieces you write.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Hearing Pulse and Meter

As members of the class listen, clap a steady pulse without any noticeable accents. Slowly change the pulse to duple, triple, or quadruple meter. You may want to have a contest to see how quickly members of the class can detect the shift to a measured pulse.

Note Values

Learning to read music involves mastering two different musical subsystems: pitch notation and rhythmic notation. Pitch is indicated by the placement of a note on a five-line staff (the higher the note on the staff, the higher the pitch). You will learn about that later in this chapter. Rhythm, on the other hand, is written with

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 5

note-value symbols, which show duration. The following note values are the most commonly used:

whole note

half note

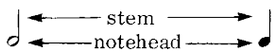
quarter note

eighth note

sixteenth note

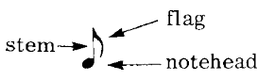
Notice that only the whole note exists as a notehead. Half notes and quarter notes consist of both a notehead and a stem,

half note quarter note

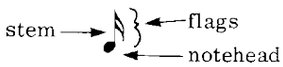


while eighth notes and sixteenth notes consist of a notehead, a stem, and either one or two flags.

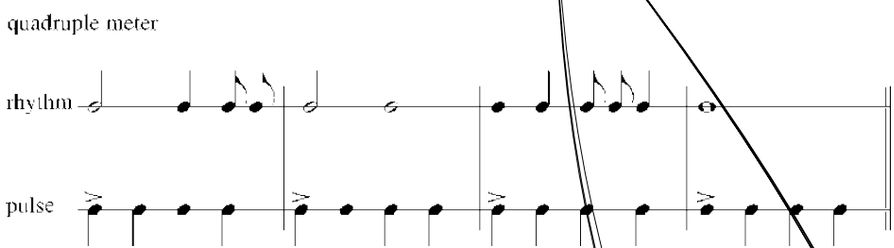
eighth note



sixteenth note



By combining these note values into various rhythmic combinations, the steady pulse of a piece of music is divided into an endless variety of patterns. The following example shows both the steady pulse and a rhythmic division of that pulse. Can you see how one line appears to support and strengthen the other?



When several notes with flags occur together, the flags are usually replaced by beams that join the notes together at the tops of the stems. Generally, these note groupings are put into combinations of two, three, four, six, or eight. This is done to reflect the location of the pulse in relation to the rhythm. That is, a new beam is used at the beginning of each pulse. This makes it visually easier to tell where the beats are.

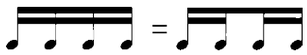
When beams are used, they indicate the rhythmic value of the notes in the same way as flags do for individual notes.

eighth notes beamed together

sixteenth notes beamed together

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 6

Sometimes sixteenth-note beams stop in the middle of the pattern and then begin again. This is usually done to make the rhythm clearer to the eye and does not affect the value of the notes in any way. The rule is that if a stem is touched by a beam, it becomes that value, even if the beam touches only one side of the stem. Thus, in the following example, the two sixteenth-note patterns would sound identical, even though they look slightly different, because each stem is touched by two beams.



Once you begin working with rhythms of different note values you will notice that short, incomplete beams are often used.

In this example, the second and fourth notes are sixteenth notes, and the first and third are eighth notes (the function of the dot will be explained later in this chapter). Just remember that if a stem is touched by a beam, it becomes that value, and you should not have any trouble deciphering the rhythmic patterns that appear throughout the rest of this book.

CLASS WORK

Before proceeding further, you should practice drawing note values. This is not difficult but it does require some practice if you have not worked with them before. Keep the following points in mind:

1. Note heads are oval rather than round.
2. The flags on eighth and sixteenth notes always point to the right, no matter which side of the note the stem is on.
3. Notice also that when the stem points down it is always located to the left of the notehead, and when it points up it is always on the right.

Now try some on your own. Remember to draw examples of the stems both above and below the notes.

whole notes

half notes

quarter notes

eighth notes

sixteenth notes

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 7

Regardless of the speed (tempo) at which a piece of music moves, the note value symbols are proportionately related to each other. Thus, if the quarter note receives one pulse, the half note will receive two pulses and the whole note four pulses. This proportionality can be illustrated in the following way:

One whole note is equal in duration to four quarter notes.

One half note is equal in duration to two quarter notes.

Notes of lesser value than the quarter note are proportioned in the same way:

Two eighth notes equal one quarter note in duration.

Four sixteenth notes equal one quarter note in duration.

The proportionality of note values may be easier to understand if we put them into a rhythm tree. Here, each horizontal line of notes lasts the same amount of time, that is, four pulses.

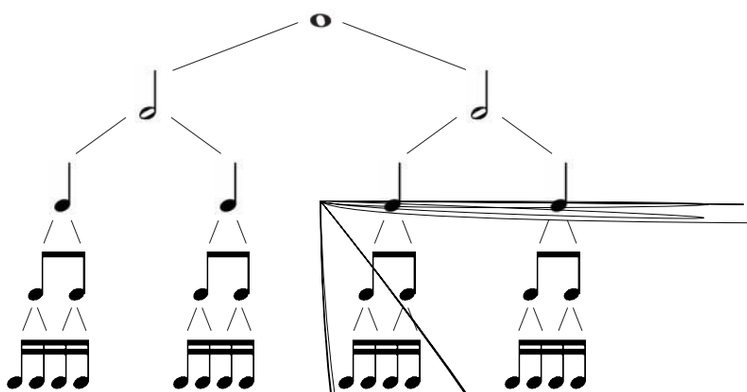
whole note

half note

quarter notes

eighth notes

sixteenth notes



As mentioned earlier, different note values can represent the pulse. If, for example, the eighth note receives one pulse, the quarter note will get two pulses and the half note four pulses. Similarly, if the half note receives one pulse, the whole note will get two pulses and two quarter notes will be needed to complete one pulse.

MUSIC IN T

Ear Training

Your instructor will select five examples from the rhythmic patterns given on the next page and play them on the piano. In the space provided, indicate whether the examples are in duple, triple, or quadruple meter. Remember to listen for the basic, underlying pulse.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 8

MUSIC IN

Rests

Just as the symbols for note value represent duration of sound, rest signs are used to indicate durations of silence. Each note value has a corresponding rest sign.

whole rest (fourth line of staff)

half rest (third line of staff)

quarter rest

eighth rest

sixteenth rest

We can create a rhythm tree for rests similar to the one we made for note values.

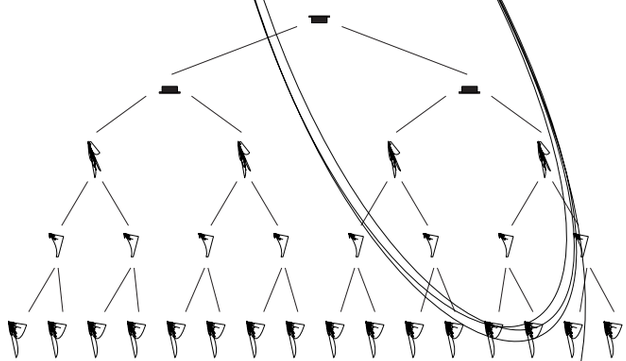
whole rest

half rests

quarter rests

eighth rests

sixteenth rests

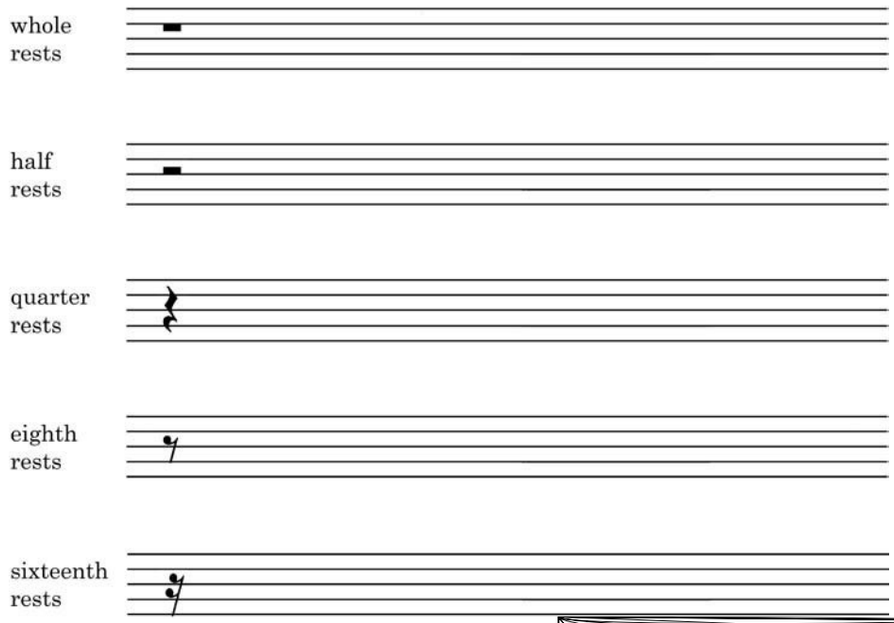


Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 9

Note that the whole rest is often used to indicate one complete measure of silence. It can serve this purpose for any meter, and when used in this way it is centered within the measure.

CLASS WORK

Practice drawing the following rest signs:



Pitch

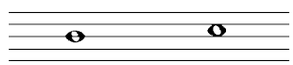
The Staff

In Western music, pitch is written on a staff. The music staff (pl., staves) consists of a group of five parallel lines. In music notation, the five lines, the four spaces between the lines, and the spaces above and below the staff are all utilized. The lines and spaces are numbered from bottom to top: the lines 1 through 5, the spaces 1 through 4.

Noteheads

The lines and spaces of the staff, from the bottom to the top, indicate successively higher pitches. In technical terms, pitch is the frequency at which a given sound vibrates. The faster the vibration, the higher the pitch is said to be. (A more detailed explanation of the physical characteristics of sound is given in Appendix I.)

Noteheads are the small oval shapes drawn on the staff to represent particu lar pitches. They may appear either on a line or in a space, as in the following staff. Notice that the second notehead represents a slightly higher pitch than the first one, since the third space is above the third line.



Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 10

CLASS WORK

Previously, you were asked to practice drawing notes on a single line. Look back at that effort now. Are your noteheads clearly on the line? In order to indicate pitch, noteheads must be placed exactly on a line or in a space. Practice notehead placement once more, this time on the staff, by drawing the following noteheads. Remember to make the noteheads oval rather than round, and to draw them small enough so that they sit clearly centered either in a space or on a line.

1.

2.

3.

4.

MUSIC IN T & E

Ear Training

Your instructor will play, in random order, various two-note sequences from examples 1 through 12 below. Listen carefully to each of the sequences, and indicate in the numbered spaces below the examples whether the second note is higher in pitch (H) or lower in pitch (L) than the first. Remember, these examples are being played in random order.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 11

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Ear Training

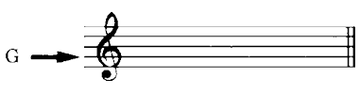
Your instructor will randomly select and play various three- and four-note sequences from those given below. Listen carefully to each of the sequences, and in the spaces below the examples, indicate whether the last note is higher in pitch (H) or lower in pitch (L) than the first.

Clefs

The first seven letters of the alphabet (A through G) are used to name pitches. The staff by itself does not represent any particular set (or range) of pitches; this is the function of clef signs. Each clef sign locates a particular pitch on the staff. Two clef signs are used the most: treble clef and bass clef.

The Treble Clef

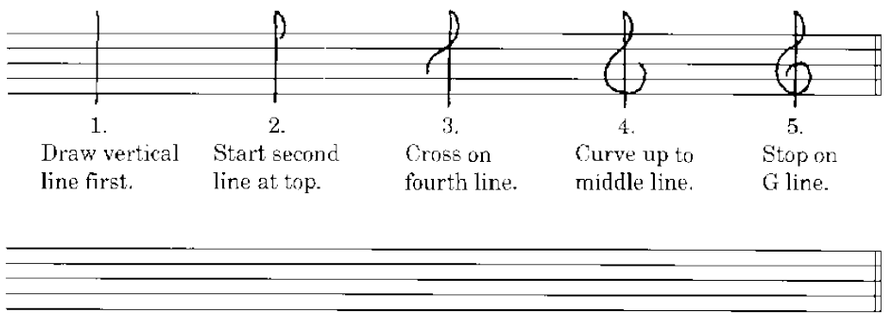
The treble clef, or G clef, identifies the second line of the staff as the location for the note G that is five notes above middle C (the C approximately in the middle of the piano keyboard). Notice that the lower part of the treble clef sign encircles the second line:



CLASS WORK

Practice drawing the treble clef sign. First draw a vertical line and then draw the remainder of the clef, starting at the top of the vertical line. Remember to encircle the second line with the lower part of the clef.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 12



Once a particular pitch is identified on the staff by a clef sign, the other pitches on that staff follow automatically in alphabetical sequence. Remember, only the first seven letters of the alphabet are used. After that, the sequence of letters repeats.

CLASS WORK

Because the musical alphabet consists of only the letters A through G, it is impor tant to become fluent in using these seven letters in various combinations. As a class (and later on your own), practice the following sequences using the letters A through G. Notice that some of the sequences move up the alphabet whereas others move down it.

When you begin, try to keep a steady pulse as you say the sequences. As you improve, try to say each pattern in either duple, triple, or quadruple meter, clap ping your hands on the downbeats, i.e., the first beat of each measure, as you say each sequence.

1. B C D _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
2. G F D _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
3. D E F _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
4. C B A _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
5. F G A _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
6. B A G _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Sight Singing

Try to sing the following two songs using the syllable la. Then try singing them in rhythm, with letter names. For each song, see whether some pitches occur more frequently than others, and identify the pitch that seems to produce the most restful feeling or clearest sense of completion. If you play piano or guitar, once you are comfortable singing these melodies, try playing one or both of them on your instrument. Your teacher or another student may be able to accompany you.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 13

MUSIC IN

T và ÉÇ

1. “Michael, Row the Boat Ashore”

2. “Go Tell Aunt Rhody”

The Bass Clef

The bass clef, or F clef, identifies the fourth line of the staff as the location for the note F that is five notes below middle C on the piano.

CLASS WORK

Practice drawing the bass clef sign. First draw a dot on the fourth line; then draw the curved sign, beginning at the dot; and finally place two dots to the right of the sign, one just above the fourth line and one just below.

As with the treble clef, the pitches of the bass clef are arranged in alphabetical sequence.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 14

MUSIC IN THEORY

Sight Singing

Sing the following two songs, both written in the bass clef, first using the syllable la, then with the letter names in rhythm. For each song, identify the pitch that seems to produce the most restful feeling or clearest sense of completion. Then, if you play piano or guitar, try playing one or both of these songs on your instrument. Your teacher or another student may be able to accompany you.

"This Old Man"

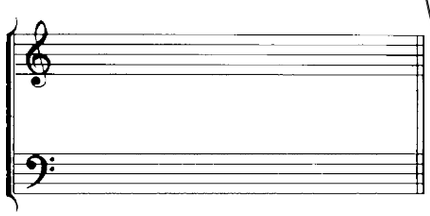
1.

"Sweet Betsy From Pike"

2.

The Great Staff

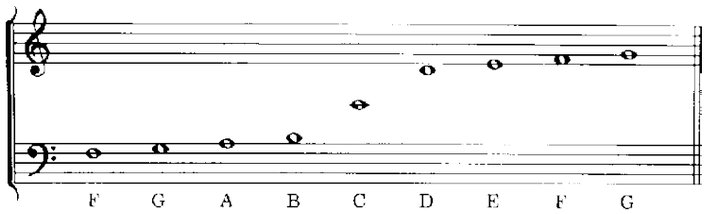
The great staff, also known as the grand staff, consists of a treble clef staff and a bass clef staff joined together by a vertical line and a brace.



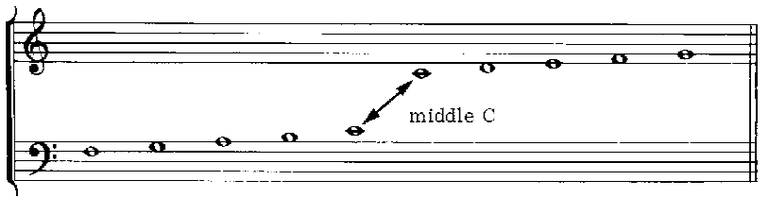
The great staff is used primarily for piano music. It is also sometimes used for choral music or any other type of music requiring a range of pitches too wide for a single staff.

In the following example, notice that one pitch, middle C—so called because of its location in the middle of the piano keyboard and on the great staff—does not touch either staff. Instead, it sits on a short line, called a ledger line, that is not part of either staff. Ledger lines are explained in more detail on page 63.

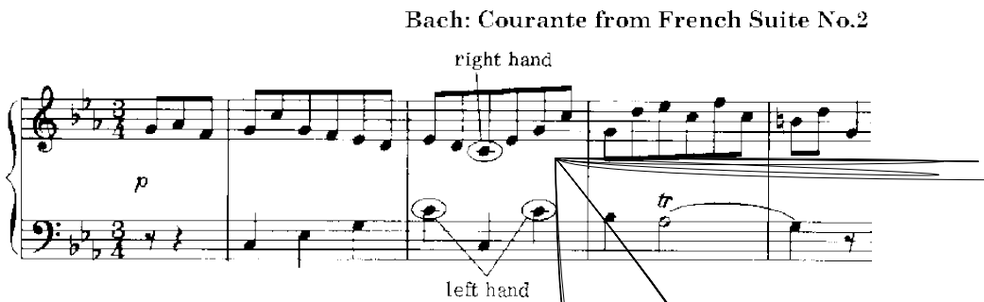
Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 15



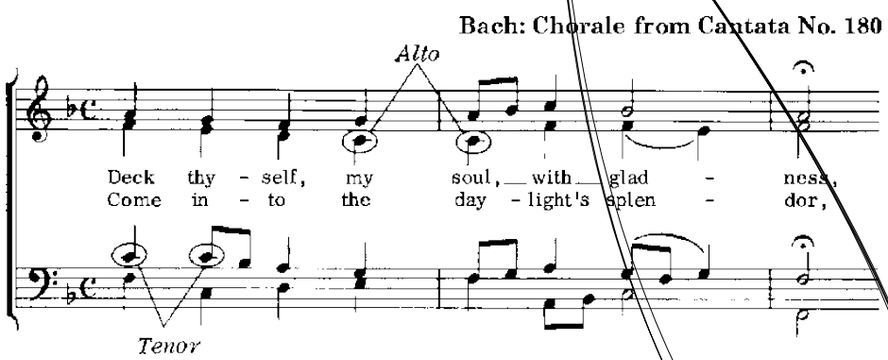
In actual music, however, middle C does not appear, as it does here, in the center of the great staff. Rather, it is located closer to one staff or the other.



In piano music, the notes on the treble staff are usually played by the right hand, and the notes on the bass staff are played by the left hand. As shown in the following example, the location of middle C indicates which hand is to play it.



In choral music, the location of middle C indicates which voice should sing it.



The Keyboard

When you first begin to learn music theory, it is enormously helpful to know your way around the keyboard. Either the piano or the electronic keyboard will do equally well. With either of them you will be able to both hear and see concepts of musical sound such as intervals, scales, and triads. Although it is possible to do this to some

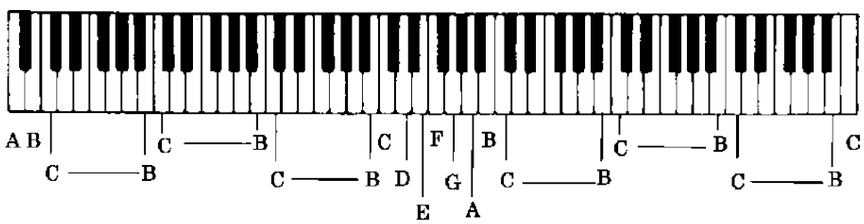
Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 16

extent on other instruments, such as the fingerboard of the guitar, it is far easiest to work with these concepts at the piano keyboard. This section will introduce the keyboard and help you begin to understand it. Future chapters will frequently refer to the keyboard when clarifying particular points. Some exercises will help you become familiar with the keyboard.

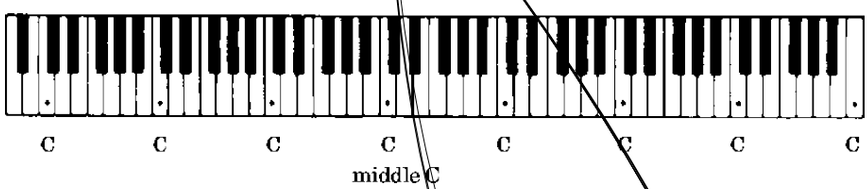
The standard piano keyboard has 88 keys: 52 white ones and 36 black ones. (Synthesizers and electronic keyboards are generally smaller, commonly five-and one-half octaves, as opposed to slightly more than eight octaves for the piano.) The black keys on both pianos and synthesizers are arranged in alternating groups of twos and threes. Moving from right to left on all keyboards produces successively lower pitches, while moving from left to right creates successively higher ones.

The White Keys

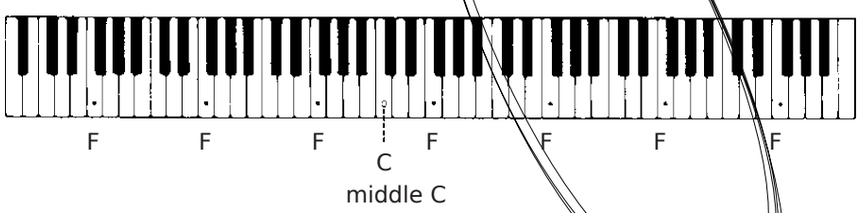
As explained earlier, only the first seven letters of the alphabet are used to name pitches. These seven letters name the white keys of the piano, beginning at the left end of the keyboard with A and successively repeating the sequence A through G up to the other end of the keyboard.



Learning the keyboard is easier when you locate and remember two landmarks. The first is the note C. In the following illustration, notice that the note C always occurs immediately to the left of a group of two black keys. The pitch called middle C is the one approximately in the middle of the keyboard.

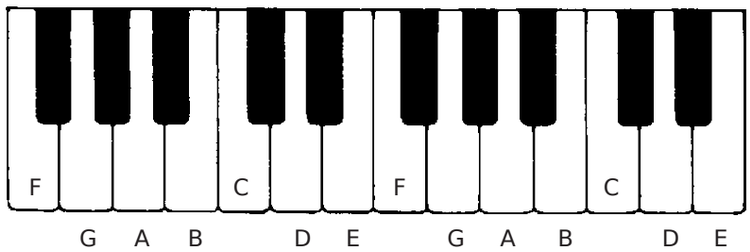


The second landmark to locate is F. This is the pitch that occurs immediately to the left of a group of three black keys.



With these two landmarks you should be able to learn the rest of the keyboard more easily. Remember, too, that only the letters A through G are used, and that the alphabetical sequence runs from left to right.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 10:10 PM Page 17



It is sometimes helpful to memorize other landmarks such as G or B. But be careful not to rely too heavily on landmarks at the expense of learning all of the keys equally well. Landmarks are convenient at the beginning, but you only know the keyboard when you can name any key at random.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Keyboard

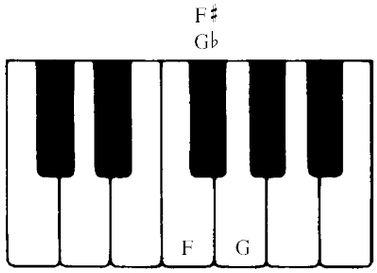
The following pitch sequences are the opening notes of four songs you may know. Find and play these pitches at the piano, and name each song if you can. When you have completed your work at the piano, practice singing each song fragment with letter names.

The Black Keys

The black keys of the piano are named in relation to the white keys that they stand between. Furthermore, each black key can be identified by two different names. For instance, the black key between F and G is called either F sharp (F) or G flat (G).

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 18

F♯ identifies that black key as the pitch above F, while G♭ tells us it's the pitch below G.



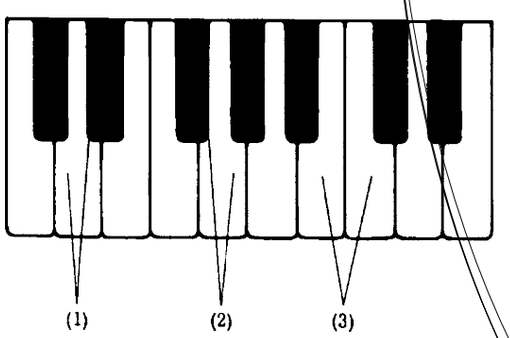
At first, it may seem needlessly confusing that one black key can have two different names, but once you understand the pattern it will make sense. It is important to remember that each of the white keys has its own letter name (A through G), while each of the black keys is related to, and takes its name from, the white key on either side of it.

Musical Distances

The piano keyboard has the important characteristic of allowing us to visualize musical distances. The musical distance between two pitches, whether sounded or written on the staff, is called an interval.

Half Steps

The smallest interval on the piano is a half step. This is the distance from any key to the key immediately above or below it. The following example shows the three situations in which half steps can occur: (1) between a white key and a black key, (2) between a black key and a white key, and (3) between a white key and a white key. Notice that the third possibility, between a white key and a white key, appears in only two places in each octave—between E and F and between B and C. As you look at this example, remember that an interval is the distance between two notes.



Half steps are either diatonic or chromatic. A diatonic half step consists of two pitches with adjacent letter names and staff locations. The following are all examples of diatonic half steps:

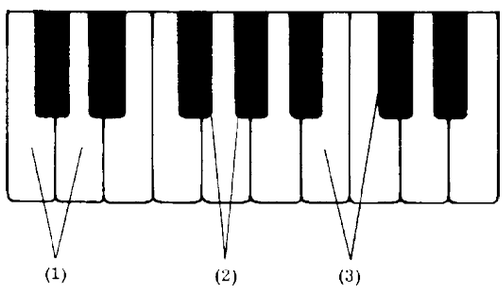
Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 19

A chromatic half step employs two pitches of the same letter name and staff location, such as the following:

The significance of this distinction will become clear in later chapters, when we discuss minor scales.

Whole Steps

A whole step consists of two half steps. On the keyboard, there will be one key between the two pitches that are a whole step apart. Whole steps can appear (1) between a white key and a white key, (2) between a black key and a black key, and (3) between a white key and a black key. In each instance, the whole step has one pitch in between.



Whole steps usually involve pitches of adjacent letter names, as in the following cases:

Accidentals

In written music, the following signs, called accidentals, are used to alter the pitch of a note chromatically:

♯	**sharp**	raises the pitch to the next adjacent note (i.e., a half step)
♭	**flat**	lowers pitch by a half step
𝄪	**double sharp**	raises pitch by two half steps (one whole step)
𝄫	**double flat**	lowers pitch by two half steps (one whole step)
♮	**natural**	cancels a sharp, double sharp, flat, or double flat

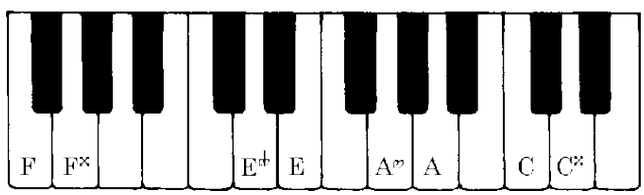
When pitches are written as words, the accidentals follow the note (as when spoken); for example C♯ is read C sharp. When pitches are notated on a staff, however,

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 20

all accidentals are placed to the left of the pitches they affect and on the same line or space as the note.

When writing an accidental before a note on the staff it is important to remember that the placement of that accidental must be exact. If the note is centered on a space, then the accidental before it must also be centered in the same space. This is also true for a note located on a line—the accidental before it must be centered on the same line. This precision in placement is necessary because musicians read the note and the accidental as a single unit. If you are careless and place the accidental in the wrong place, you will be sending contradictory information to the performer.

Double sharps and double flats can be confusing. As you know, the sharp sign raises a pitch by a half step. In most instances, this means that a pitch will be raised from a white key to a black key—for example, F to F♯, C to C♯. Because a double sharp raises a pitch two half steps, or one whole step, quite often the resulting



way, E to E^{ff} appears on the keyboard as E to D.

You may be wondering why we can't simply ignore double sharps and double flats. In fact, these signs seldom appear in music, but when they do they have a specific function, which we will discuss in Chapter 9.

Practicing Revisited

If there is one thing that should be repeated every chapter, it's that you need to practice. Making music is a skill. Everybody hones their talent. Music is both a mental and a physical effort and most musicians practice every day. If you're going to become a better musician, it will be because you practice regularly, not because you remember what's in the chapter you just read (although that certainly helps). It also helps to think of practicing as a daily journey—one that never ends. And although it's probably difficult to imagine after only one chapter, practicing does become fun as we start to see improvement. If it helps, you can think of practicing as homework for the future…your future, as a musician.

As you continue through the book, I've tried to make practicing as productive and as varied as possible, and you will find a wealth of material to practice for each chapter. Each chapter is followed by a set of Practice Materials that will help you become more familiar with the concepts and skills covered in that chapter. The Practice Materials are designed to be torn out and handed in to your instructor, without removing any of the text. There is also a Focus on Fundamentals CD-ROM that contains audio some of the musical examples, as well as interactive activities that help you develop your skills through practice at home. You can even test yourself and email your instructor the results. And while practicing is absolutely essential, it doesn't have to be dull and repetitive. It can be varied, challenging, and fun.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 21

Focus

When music is written down on paper it can be thought of as a storage and retrieval system. In this system, musical information is stored by the composer in a code of shapes and symbols. A performer wishing to turn this written code back into sound must understand not only which musical elements are being dealt with but also how they are encoded.

The key to reading and writing Western music is to realize that the written music of our culture focuses on and encodes two major musical elements: pitch, which is the basis of melody and harmony; and duration, through which the rhythm flows. While a lot of additional information is given in music notation, these two elements—rhythm and pitch—are the primary ones.

As you probably are aware by now, the piano or electric keyboard is extremely useful in helping us visualize abstract musical concepts like intervals, scales, and chords. Knowing the keyboard is also important for a number of other reasons, such as understanding harmony, learning voicing for arranging, and composing. Many musi cians study piano or synthesizer as a second instrument because of this versatility. These people feel that improving their abilities on the keyboard helps them to understand the music better.

Even if you do not play piano or synthesizer, you should spend some time each day becoming familiar with the keyboard. The Class Work and Practice Materials in this book are useful for this purpose, as are simple songbooks and beginning sight-singing books. Another good place to begin is Appendix D, “Graded Melodies for Sight-Singing and Playing.” Remember, becoming musical requires your active participation. Remember, too, that being able to hear what you play before you play it is one of the goals of becoming more musical. Your skill at sight-singing will improve if you practice it for a few minutes each time you sit down to practice your instrument. Try singing each exercise before you play it. Then play it. Then sing it again. This may seem difficult at first, but you will get better as you practice, and the skill you will learn will be invaluable.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Applying Your Skills

The following rhythms and melodies are taken from Appendices A and B. Clap and count the rhythms, and try to sing the melodies using a neutral syllable such as la. (In Chapter 5 you will learn another way to sing melodies called moveable do.) After you have tried to sing these melodies, play them on the keyboard to check for accuracy. These three appendices contain a lot of practice material. As you continue with this book, it would be extremely helpful to practice one or two rhythms and melodies at the beginning of each study session.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 22

MUSIC IN

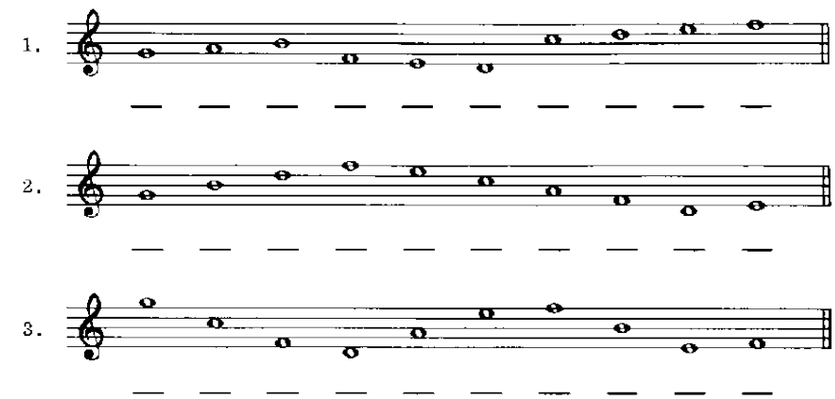
Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 23

Practice Materials

Complete the following practice materials outside of class. They are designed to be torn out and handed in as your teacher requests without destroying any of the text of the book. Similar practice materials will appear at the end of each chapter.

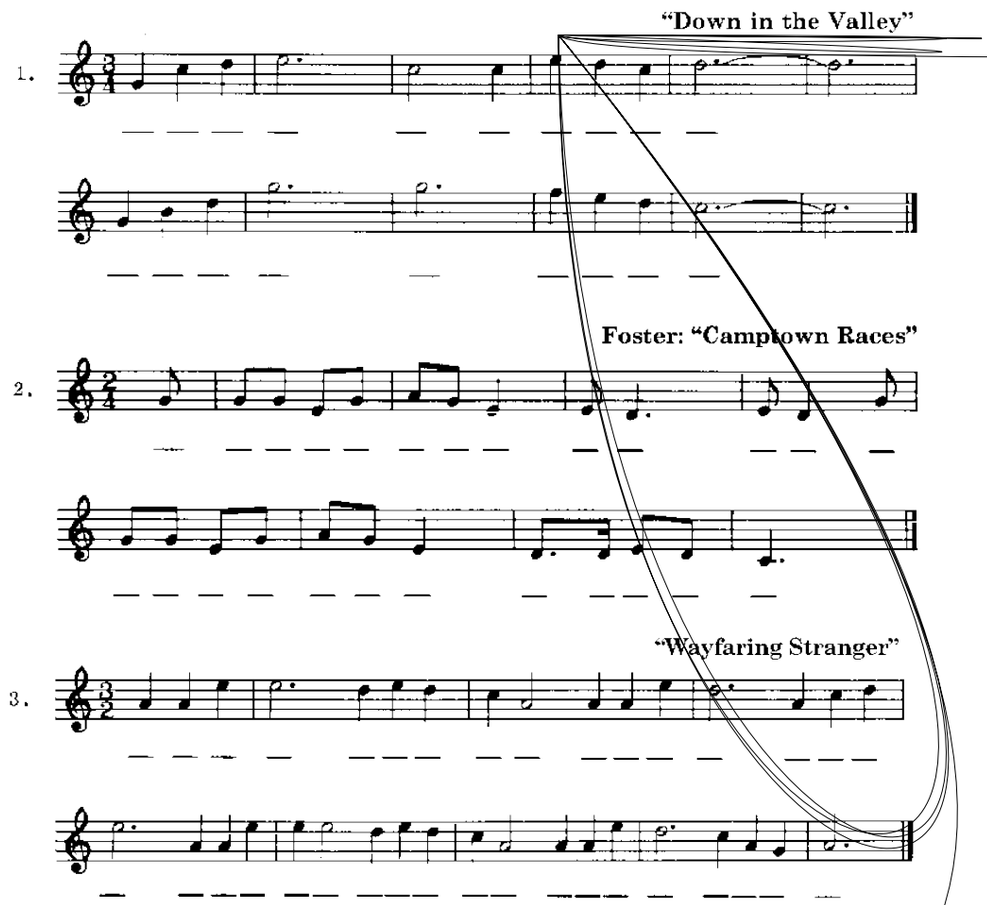
Practice Materials 1-1

Identify by letter name the following pitches in the treble clef.



Practice Materials 1-2

Identify by letter name the pitches of the following songs.



Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 24

PRACTICE

Practice Materials 1-3

Identify by letter name the following pitches in the bass clef.

1.

2.

3.

Practice Materials 1-4

Identify by letter name the pitches of the following songs.

"Nine Hundred Miles"

1.

"Skip to My Lou"

2.

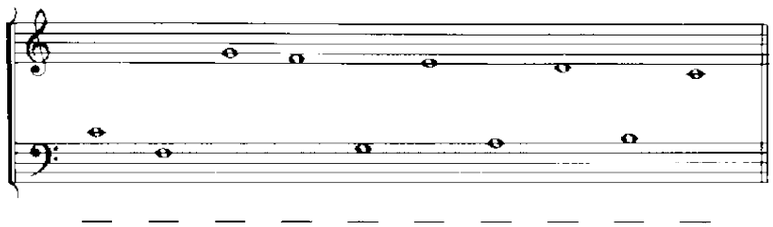
"Mexican Folk Song"

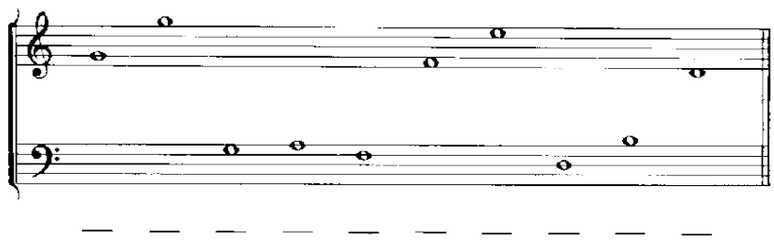
3.

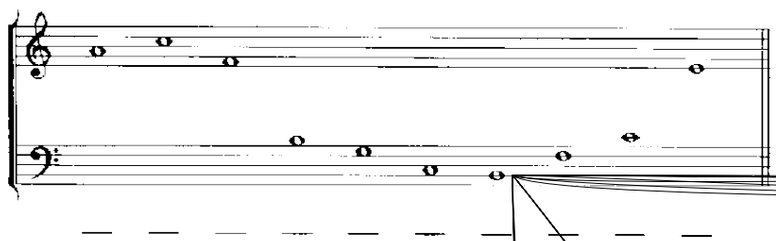
Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 25

Practice Materials 1-5

Identify by letter name the following pitches on the great staff.

1. 

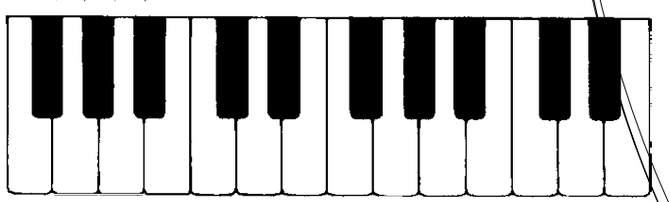
2. 

3. 

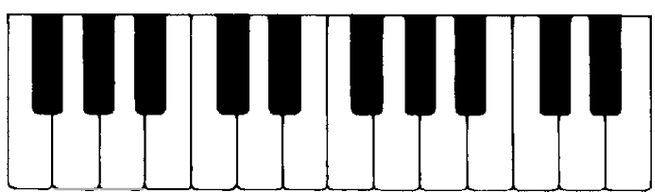
Practice Materials 1-6

Locate and write each given pitch on the keyboard. Remember that each pitch will occur in more than one place, since these keyboards are greater than an octave. When you have written all the pitches, practice finding and playing them on the piano.

1. F, C, G, D, B

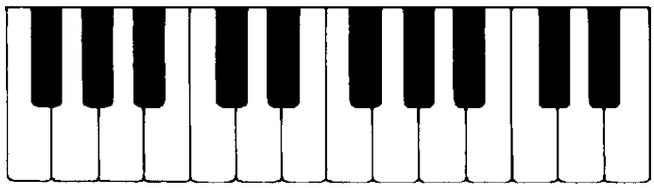


2. G, D, E, A, C



Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 26

3. A, E, B, F, D



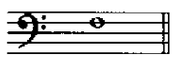
PRACTICE

Practice Materials 1-7

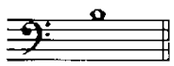
Identify by letter name the pitches given. Then, write each pitch once on the key board that follows. Finally, find and play each of the pitches at the piano.

1. ____

2. ____

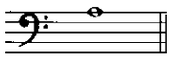
3.  ____

4. ____

5.  ____

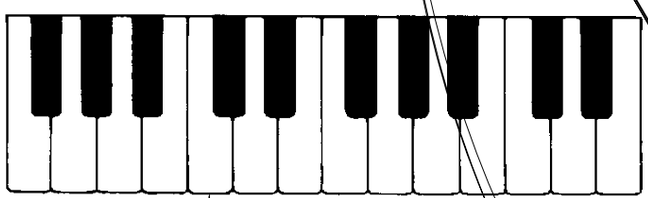
6. ____

7. ____

8.  ____

9. ____

10. ____



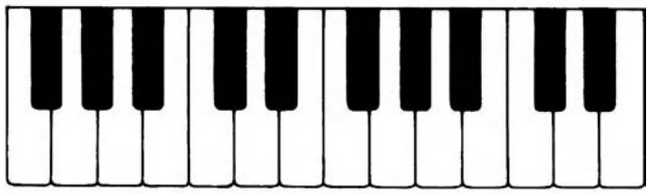
Middle C

Practice Materials 1-8

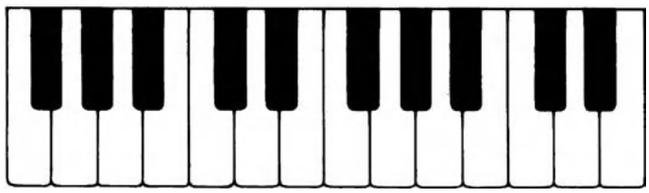
Locate the following pitches on the black keys of the keyboard by drawing a line from each pitch name to the appropriate places on the keyboard. Remember that each pitch will occur in more than one place, since these keyboards are greater than an octave. When you have located all the pitches, practice finding and playing them on the piano.

Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 27

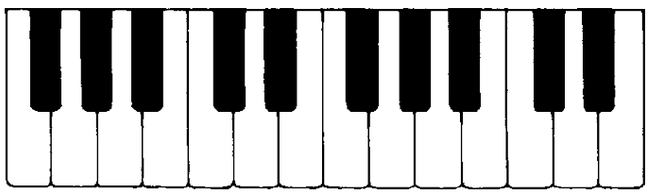
1. C♯, G♭, B♭



2. E♭, F♯, A♭



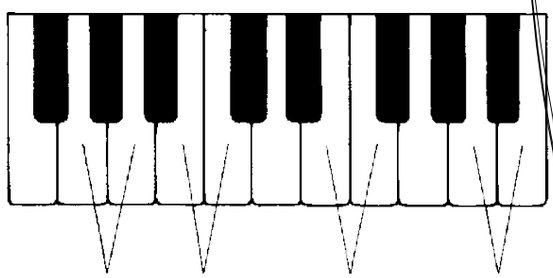
3. D♭, D♮, G♯



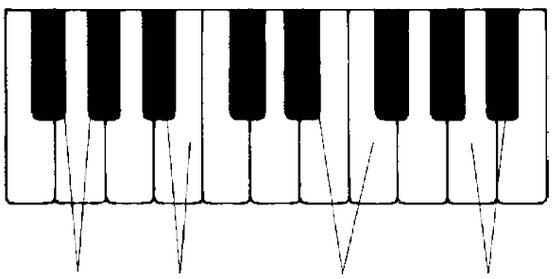
Practice Materials 1-9

On the following keyboards, identify each indicated interval as either a whole step or a half step. Use the letters W or H to indicate the interval and write them in the space provided.

1.



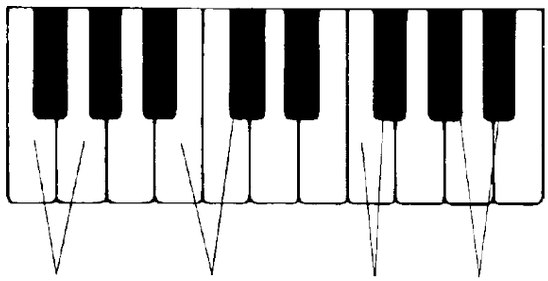
2.



Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 28

PRACTICE

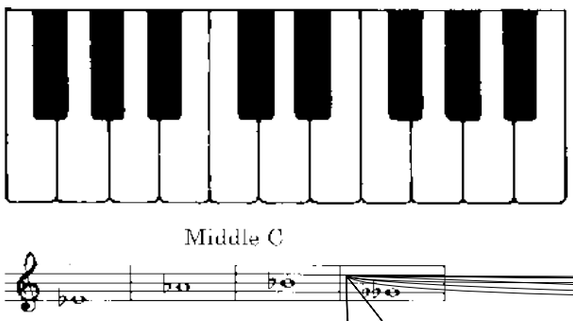
3.



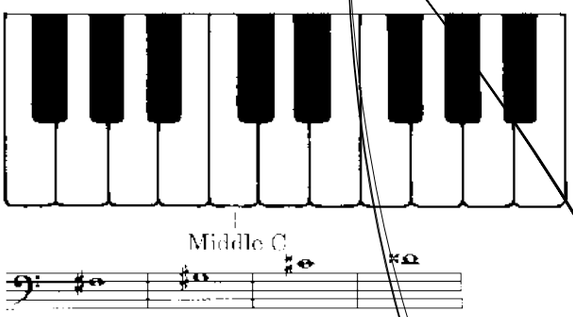
Practice Materials 1-10

Locate the indicated pitches on the following keyboards by drawing a line from the written pitch to the key it represents. Then, play each of the pitches on the piano.

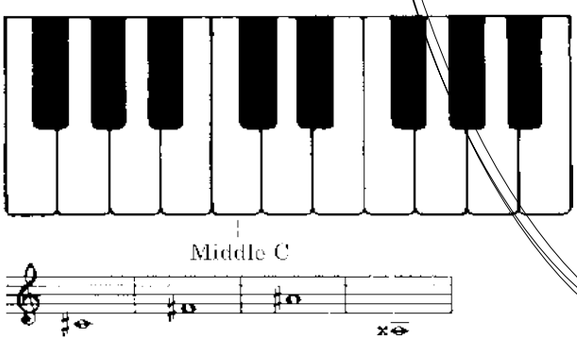
1.



2.

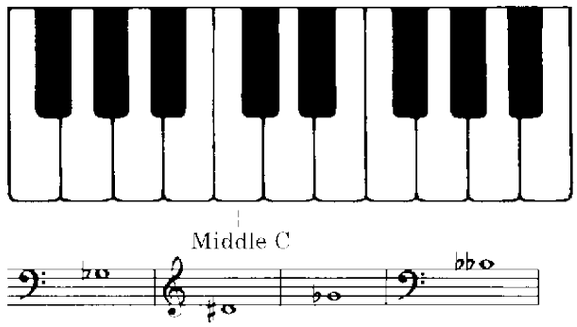


3.

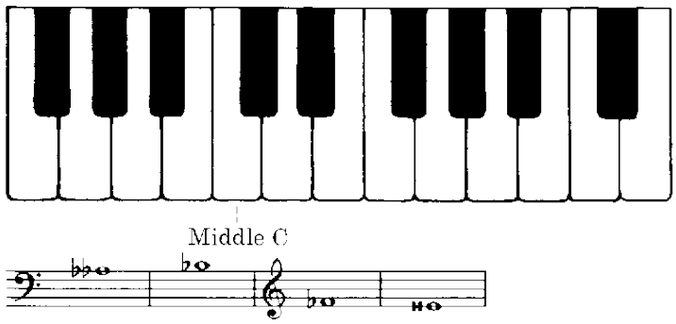


Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 29

4.

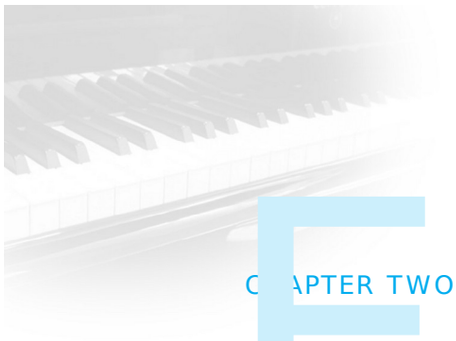


5.



Duckworth_Music9e_01.qxd 12/5/05 4:05 PM Page 30

Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 31



CHAPTER TWO

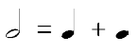
Rhythm I: Simple Meter

Music based on steady recurring pulses can be divided into two main types: simple meters that divide the basic pulse into two parts, and compound meters that divide the basic pulse into three parts. In this chapter we will learn about simple meter, including a method for counting it, whereas in Chapter 3 we will study compound meter and how it is counted. We will begin, however, by learning about dotted notes, which is a way of increasing the time value of any note.

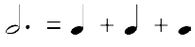
Dotted Notes

Musical rhythms can become extremely complex at times, making use of note values that go far beyond the whole, half, quarter, eighth, and sixteenth notes studied so far. One such new note value is the dotted note.

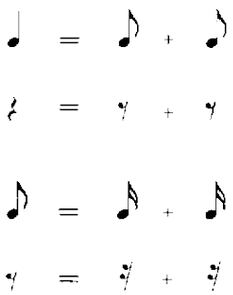
When you first begin to study dotted notes, they can seem very confusing. But if you will keep in mind that the dot always means the same thing, you will have less trouble. A dot to the right of a notehead gives that note a longer duration. Furthermore, the dot always increases the time value of that note by one-half. For example, a half note is equal in value to two quarter notes.

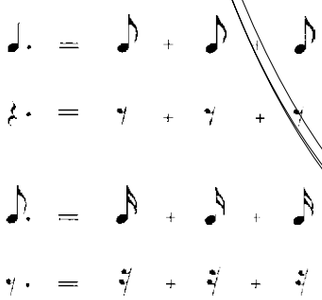


When a dot is placed beside a note, this new note, called a dotted note, becomes equal to the original value plus one-half the original value. In the case of our half note, adding a dot creates a dotted half note with a time value equal to three quarter notes.



Rests as well as notes can be increased in value by adding a dot, although dotted rests are used less often than dotted notes. As with notes, a dot placed to the right of a rest increases its value by one-half.





Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 32

Time Signatures

The time signature, or meter signature as it is also called, is made up of two numbers, one above the other. It always appears at the beginning of a piece of music. The time signature gives us two different pieces of information: The top number tells us the meter of the piece; the bottom number identifies the note value that represents the pulse. For example, in the time signature T:

3 indicates triple meter—that is, three pulses per measure.

4 identifies the quarter note as the pulse beat.

Remember that although the quarter note represents the pulse for many pieces, other note values can also serve this purpose. Both the eighth note and the half note are frequently used.

Here is an example of triple meter with the eighth note representing the pulse,

while this is a triple meter with the half note representing the pulse.

Notice, incidentally, that the meter signature is never written as a fraction: .

CLASS WORK

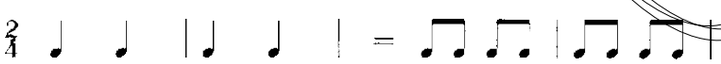
With your teacher's help, identify the meter and indicate the note value that represents the pulse for each of the meter signatures below.

EXAMPLE: 4 quadruple meter
4 quarter-note pulse

1. 2/8
2. 3/4
3. 4/2
4. 3/8
5. 2/4
6. 4/8
7. 3/2
8. 2/2

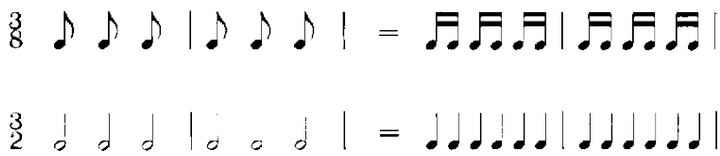
Simple Meter

Thus far, our discussion of meter has dealt entirely with what is called simple meter. In simple meter, the basic pulse is normally divided into two equal parts. For instance, in + meter each quarter note (the note representing the pulse) is divisible into two eighth notes:



Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 33

This division of the basic pulse into two equal parts is the mark of a simple meter. Metrical patterns such as K and 9 also subdivide in this way:



The common simple meters are:

simple duple	$\frac{2}{8}$	$\frac{2}{4}$	$\frac{2}{2}$
simple triple	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{2}$
simple quadruple	$\frac{4}{8}$	$\frac{4}{4}$	$\frac{4}{2}$

Note that in all cases the top numeral indicates the number of pulses in each meas ure, and the bottom numeral indicates the note value that represents the pulse.

CLASS WORK

For each of the following simple meters, write one measure of notes representing the pulse and one measure of notes representing the division of the pulse. Follow the example. Your teacher will help as needed.

EXAMPLE: *Pulse* *Division of the Pulse*

Pulse *Division of the Pulse*

1. $\frac{2}{8}$
2. $\frac{4}{2}$
3. $\frac{3}{4}$
4. $\frac{4}{8}$
5. $\frac{2}{2}$

A Counting Method for Simple Meters

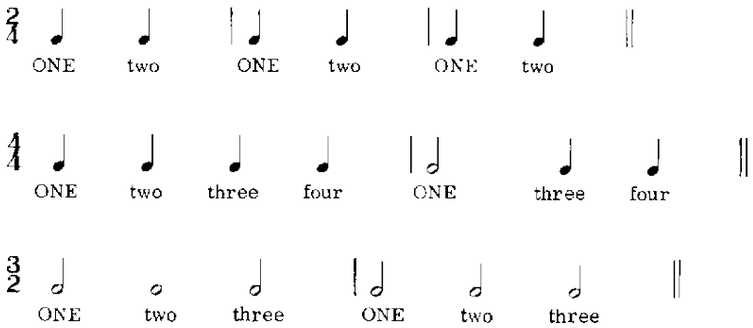
In learning rhythms, it is helpful to know a method of counting that can be spoken aloud as you are clapping rhythms. The value of such a system is that it can be transferred to “mental” counting when you are playing or singing actual music. Although several systems are in use, the following one is recommended.

The Basic Pulse

In this system, the basic pulse is identified by the numbers “one, two, three, four,” as needed. (This is true for both simple and compound meter, which we will learn

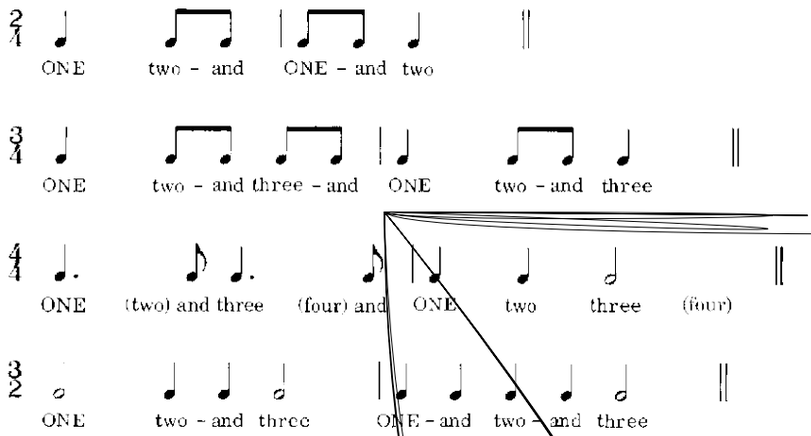
Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 34

later.) Practice counting the following examples in simple meter until you feel comfortable with the basic pulse. Remember to always keep the pulse steady.

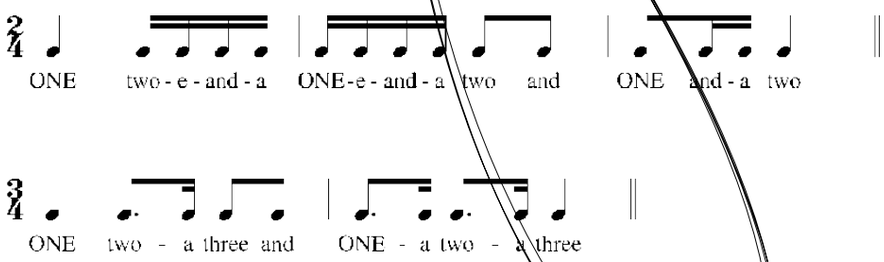


Divisions of the Pulse

When dividing simple meters, and is used to indicate the division of the pulse. Practice the following examples until they feel comfortable.



When a further subdivision is needed—that is, if you need to indicate one-quarter of the basic pulse—the syllables to use are “e” and “a” (or “da”). Here are some examples to practice.



CLASS WORK

As a class, clap and count the following rhythmic examples taken from folk songs. You will probably know some of these pieces and that will help you decide whether you are doing them right or not. Begin by saying two measures of the divided

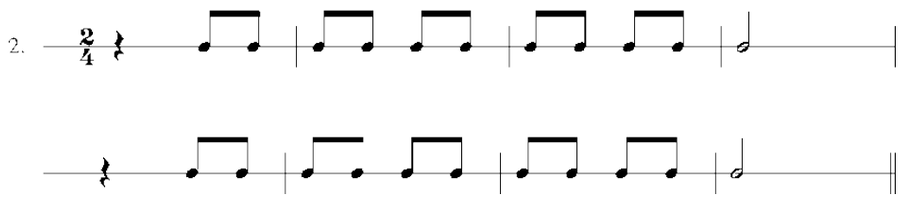
Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 35

pulse (1-and 2-and) aloud before clapping. When you are comfortable with the counting system, also try playing the rhythms on an instrument or keyboard while counting mentally. Remember to always keep the basic pulse steady.

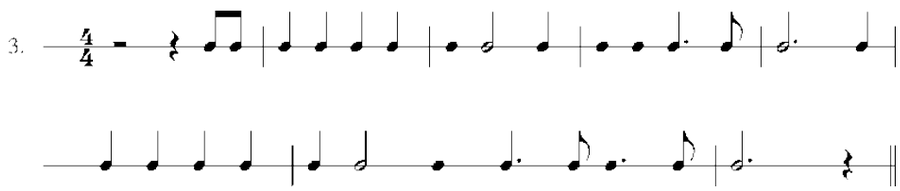
"America"

1.

"She'll Be Coming Round the Mountain"

2. 

"The Yellow Rose of Texas"

3. 

MUSIC IN T và[EÇ

Performing Simple Meters

As a class, clap and count aloud the following two-part examples in simple meter. Half the class should clap the top part and half the bottom part. When you are comfortable with your part, try switching parts. Then, by yourself, try tapping the examples on a desk or table top, one part per hand.

Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 36

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Ear Training

Your instructor will choose three rhythmic passages in simple meter from Appendix A and play them for you several times. You will be told the meter of each example. Listen carefully to each passage, and try to notate it in the space provided below. If the passages seem too long, your instructor can divide them into shorter segments. Use the counting method to help clarify the rhythmic patterns you hear.

1. _____

_____

2. _____

_____

3. _____

_____

Common Time and Alla Breve

In addition to the time signatures in simple meter that we have seen so far, you will encounter two others. These are called common time and alla breve, and both have been in use since the Middle Ages.

In common time, the symbol c is used to indicate a $\frac{4}{4}$ meter. Music written with either time signature is counted exactly the same.

If the c of common time has a vertical line running through it, that is, C, it is called cut time, or alla breve, and it indicates a $\frac{2}{2}$ meter, that is, a simple-duple meter with a half-note pulse. Alla breve is counted the same as $\frac{2}{2}$ meter.

Today, common time and alla breve are not found quite as frequently as are $\frac{4}{4}$ and $\frac{2}{2}$, but you will encounter them, particularly in march music, where alla breve is the norm.

Tempo

How fast the pulse of a piece of music moves is called the tempo. Whereas today we might use the terms fast and slow as indications of speed, many pieces of music use Italian terms to assign the tempo. The following is a list of the most important terms and their meanings:

Slow Tempos	
largo	broad, very slow
lento	slow
adagio	slow
Moderate Tempos	
andante	slow walking speed
moderato	moderate walking speed
Fast Tempos	
allegro	fast
vivace	quick, lively
presto	very fast

Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 37

In addition, the following two terms are important because they indicate gradual changes of tempo:

ritardando (rit.)	gradually becoming slower
accelerando (accel.)	gradually becoming faster

Although these terms give a general indication of how fast a piece of music should be performed, they are open to a certain amount of interpretation. A more precise method of setting tempo is to use metronome indications. The metronome is an instrument invented in the early 1800s that produces a specific number of clicks per minute. Each click represents one beat. The metronome indication is given at the beginning of a composition. It looks like this:

♩ = M.M.60 or ♩ = 60

This particular indication means that the metronome will produce sixty clicks in one minute, and that each click is to be considered the pulse of one quarter note.

MUSIC IN

Performing Simple Meters

As a class, clap or perform on instruments the following two- and three-part rhythmic examples, paying particular attention to the tempo of each example. Then, experiment with tapping out the examples on a desk or tabletop, one part per hand. If you are particularly adventurous, you might also like to try tapping out the three-part example: Tap out the top part with your right hand, the middle part with your left hand, and the bottom part with one foot. You may find the three-part example difficult at first, but remember that organists and trap-set drummers use this kind of rhythmic coordination every day.

Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 38

Focus

Rhythm is such an integral and fundamental part of music; you must master it in order to become a successful musician. This mastery must include the ability to recognize note values, count meters and rhythms, and perform intricate patterns utilizing a variety of durational symbols. In this chapter we have concentrated on simple meters, which divide the basic pulse into two parts. Before going ahead, make sure that you under stand and are comfortable recognizing note values in simple meters, and that you can clap and count the various examples in this chapter. Also, keep in mind that what at first may seem difficult or confusing will, with consistent practice, become easier.

MUSIC IN THEORY

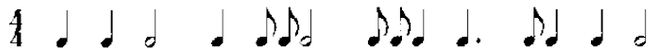
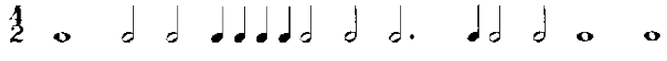
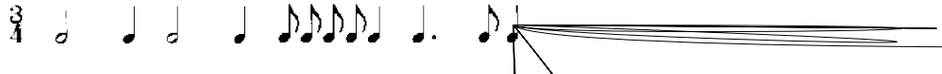
Composing

Below are two melodies in simple meter: one from a minuet by Bach and one from Russian folk music. You may have heard one or both of these pieces before. Clap the rhythm of each melody several times. Then, in the space provided, write a second rhythmic part that, when clapped with the rhythm of the melody, will complement it and create a two-part clapping piece. Your teacher may wish to work on this as a class or assign it as homework. If used as homework, perform these clapping pieces in class and discuss their strengths and weaknesses.

Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 39

Practice Materials 2-1

For each of the following sequences, determine the meter and the note value that represents the pulse. Then, divide each example into measures by placing bar lines in the appropriate places. Remember to put double bar lines at the end.

1.
2.
3.
4. 
5.
6.
7. 
8. 
9.
10.

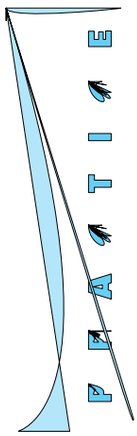
When you have correctly placed the bar lines in each of these examples, practice playing each rhythmic passage on the instrument you play or on a keyboard. If you sing, choose a comfortable pitch in the middle of your range. Remember to hold each note its full value.

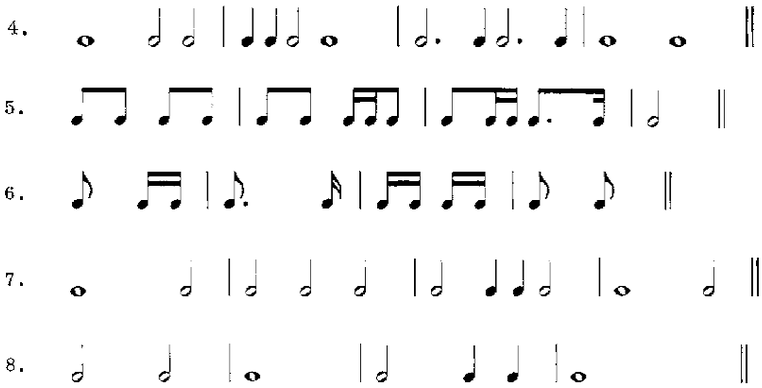
Practice Materials 2-2

The following rhythmic passages are barred and notated correctly. Study them carefully and write the meter signature for each in the appropriate place.

1.
2.
3.

Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 40

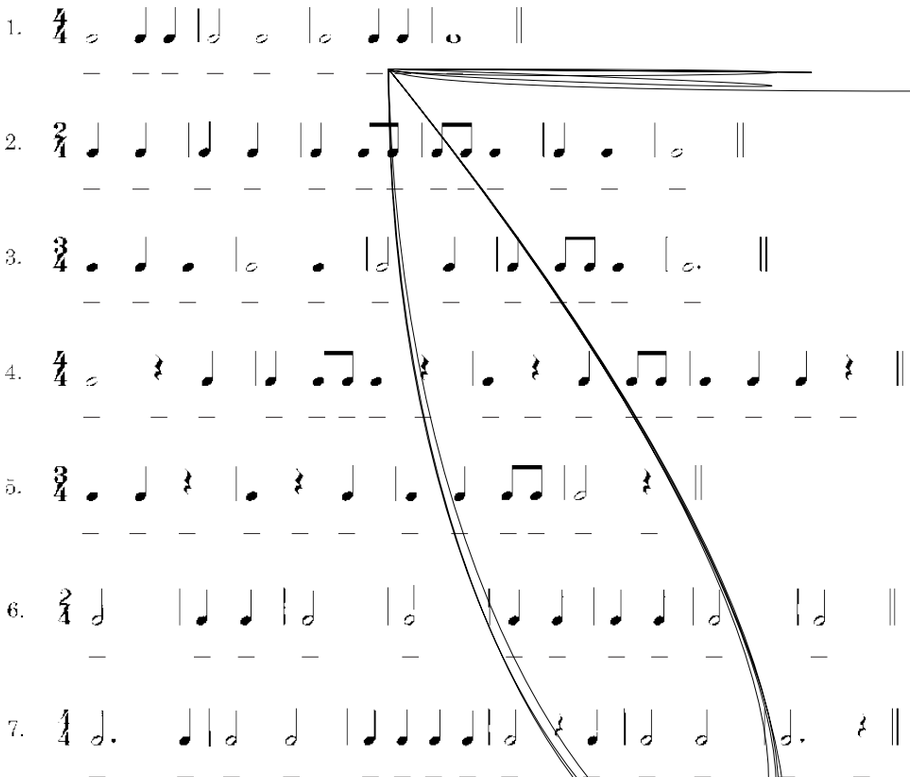




When you have correctly identified the meter signature of each example, practice playing the passages on the instrument you play or on a keyboard. If you sing, choose a comfortable pitch in the middle of your range.

Practice Materials 2-3

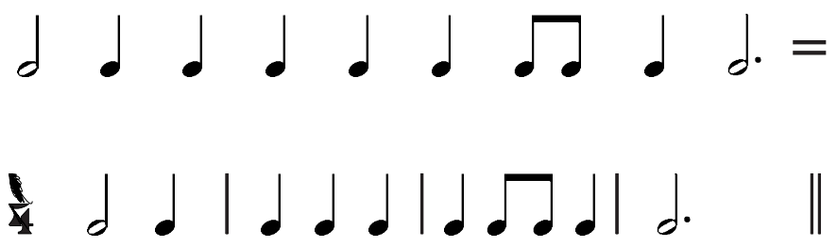
The following examples in simple meter are taken from Appendix A. For each, write the counting syllables below each line. Then, practice clapping and saying the syllables aloud. Be sure to keep a steady pulse.



Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 41

Practice Materials 2-4

Rewrite each of the following rhythmic patterns in the indicated simple meter.



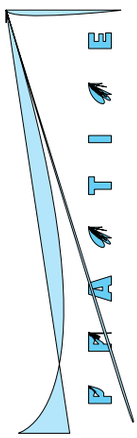
1.

2.

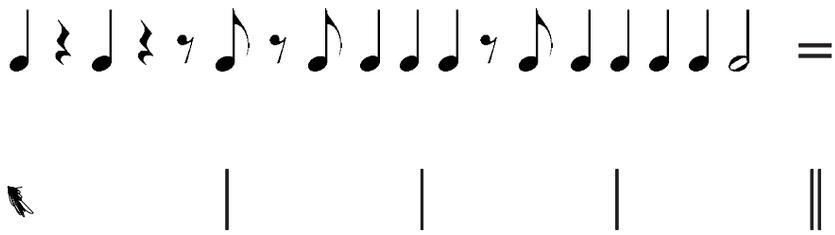
3.

4.

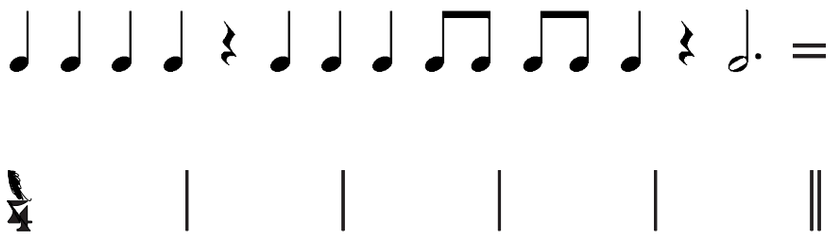
Duckworth_Music9e_02.qxd 11/17/05 10:16 PM Page 42



5.



6.



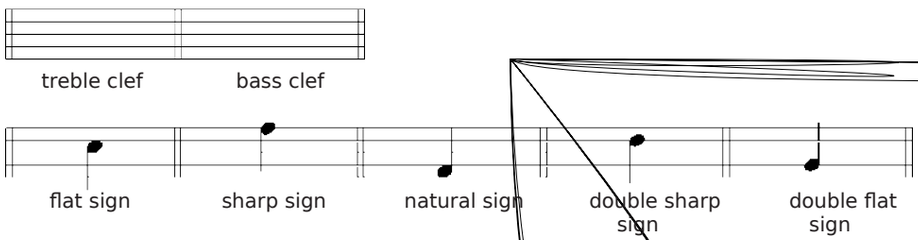
Duckworth_Music9e_FI.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 43

FOCUS ON SKILLS D

As you can see by now, musical knowledge is cumulative. You have to remember all the previous information in order to fully understand any new concepts. For this reason, it is important to check periodically to find out whether you have fully grasped the material we've covered so far. This is the first of five such checkpoints; the others come after Chapters 4, 7, 10, and 13.

The questions in this section require you to provide information from the first two chapters. If you discover weaknesses in any of these basic areas, be sure to review the relevant sections of those chapters before beginning Chapter 3.

1. In the space provided, draw a treble clef sign and a bass clef sign, as well as a flat sign, sharp sign, natural sign, double sharp sign, and double flat sign for the given notes.

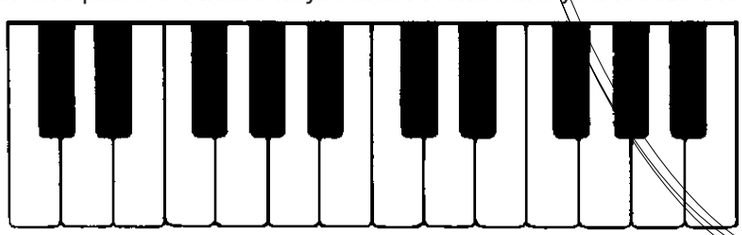


2. Identify the six basic elements of music. They may be in any order.

   a. _____
   b. _____
   c. _____
   d. _____
   e. _____
   f. _____

3. Locate the following pitches on the keyboard. Each pitch can be found in more than one place on these keyboards. Make sure you locate them all.

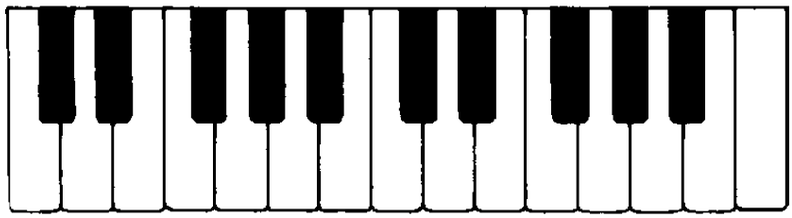
   a.



D, G, F, E, A

Duckworth_Music9e_FI.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 44

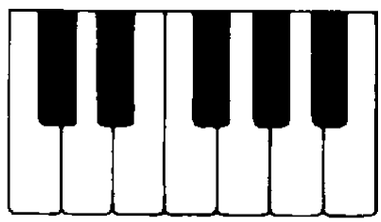
b.



G, E, C, D, F

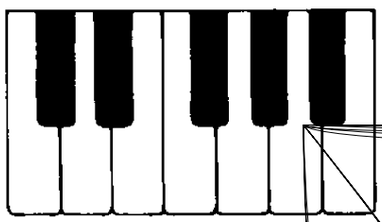
4. Locate the indicated pitches on the black keys of the keyboard by drawing a line from each pitch to the appropriate key. Remember that the same black key may have two different names.

a.



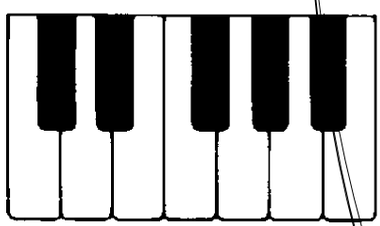
D♭, F♯, B♭

b.



C♯, E♭, A

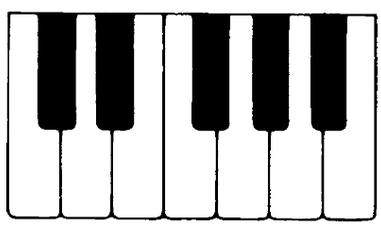
c.



D♯, G♭, A♭

5. Locate the indicated double sharps and double flats on the keyboard by drawing a line from each pitch to the appropriate key.

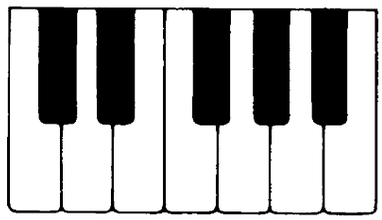
a.



C𝄪, E𝄫, A𝄫

Duckworth_Music9e_FI.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 45

b.



D♭, E♮, F♮

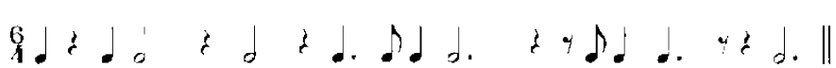
6. Mentally identify (a) the meter and (b) the note value that represents the pulse. Then mark off measures by placing bar lines in the appropriate places in each example.

a.

b.

c.

d.



7. Rewrite the following rhythmic patterns by beaming the eighth notes and sixteenth notes.

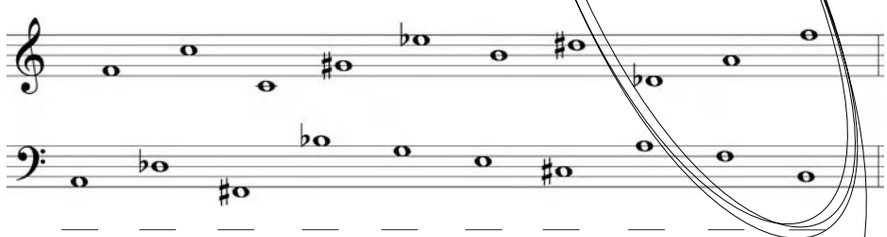
a.

b.

8. Identify the following pitches by letter name.

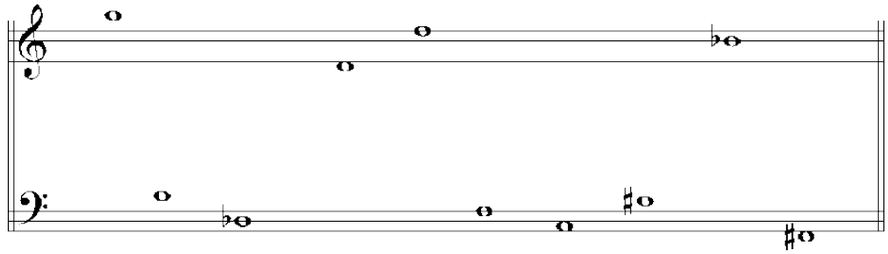
a.

b.

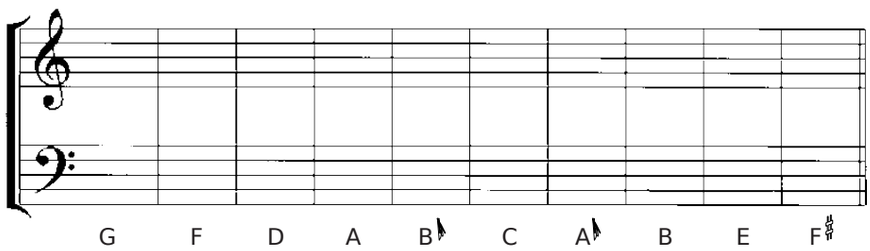


Duckworth_Music9e_FI.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 46

c.



9. Write each indicated pitch in four different places on the grand staff. The easiest way to do this is to locate two in the treble clef and two in the bass clef.



Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 47

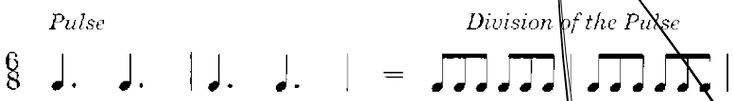
CHAPTER THREE

Rhythm II: Compound Meter

In addition to the two-part division of the primary pulse in simple meter that we learned in Chapter 2, there is another common way to divide the pulse. A division into three equal parts is called compound meter. The most common compound meter is Z.

Compound Meter

Compound meter may be confusing at first because the Z meter signature seems to indicate that there are six pulses in a measure and that the eighth note gets the pulse. This is true, but Z meter is normally counted and played with the six eighth notes grouped into two sets of three. As a result, Z meter "feels" like duple meter, with the primary pulse represented by a dotted quarter note and each of the primary pulses divisible into three parts:



The correct term for Z meter, therefore, is compound duple.

Practice clapping the following pattern in Z meter. It will help you begin to feel the divisions of compound duple meter. Be sure to emphasize the accented notes.

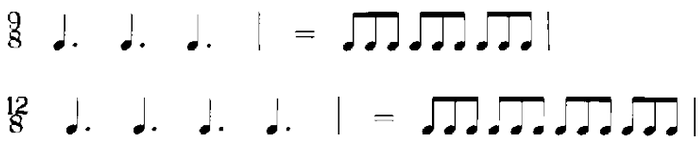
A problem that often arises is how to distinguish between T meter and Z meter, since both contain six eighth notes. The difference is in how the pulse is accented, and can be clearly seen in the following illustration:

Simple meter: eighth notes (and accents) grouped in twos

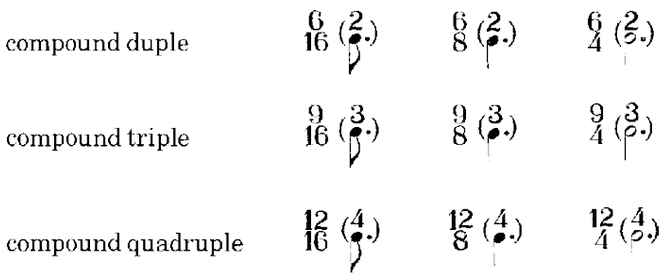
Compound meter: eighth notes (and accents) grouped in threes

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 48

In a similar way to Z meter being compound duple, (meter is compound triple and V meter is compound quadruple:



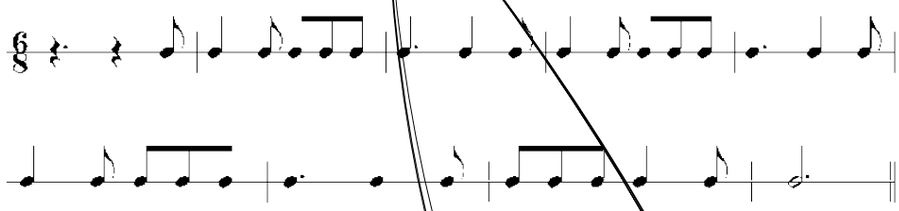
The common compound meters are:



The interesting thing about compound meter, of course, is that it contains two dif ferent pulses simultaneously going at different speeds. For example, there is the faster secondary pulse of six eighth notes, but there is also a bigger, slower pulse of two dotted quarter notes in a measure. This primary pulse combines the eighth notes into two groups of three.

Although this may be a difficult concept to understand initially, most people can hear it very easily. Look at the rhythm to "For He's a Jolly Good Fellow," which follows. Have some class members who know it sing the melody while others clap either the secondary eighth-note pulse or the primary dotted-quarter pulse. Notice how everything fits together. In most musical situations, the slower dotted-quarter pulse is usually considered primary.

"For He's a Jolly Good Fellow"



MUSIC IN T và|EÇ

Compound Meter

The following melodies are in compound meter:

"Down in the Valley"
"Eency, Weency Spider"
"Over the River and Through the Woods"
"Three Blind Mice"
"When Johnny Comes Marching Home"

Choose one or two that most of the class know and try to sing the melody while tapping the eighth notes on your desk with one hand and the dotted quarter notes with the other. This is not easy at first, but an understand ing of these interlocking qualities of compound rhythm will make your performances smoother and more musical.

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 49

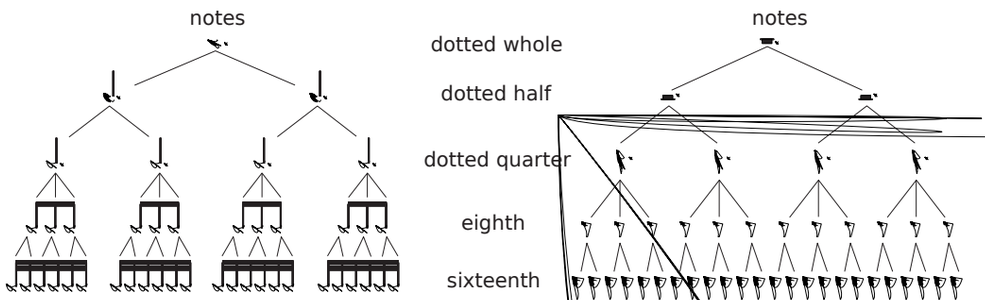
CLASS WORK

With the help of your teacher, identify the meter and indicate the note value that represents the primary pulse for each of the following compound meter signatures.

EXAMPLE: $\frac{6}{8}$ duple meter
dotted quarter-note pulse

1. $\frac{6}{4}$ _____ _____
2. $\frac{12}{4}$ _____ _____
3. $\frac{6}{16}$ _____ _____
4. $\frac{12}{16}$ _____ _____
5. $\frac{9}{8}$ _____ _____
6. $\frac{9}{4}$ _____ _____
7. $\frac{12}{8}$ _____ _____
8. $\frac{9}{16}$ _____ _____

In the same way that we made a rhythm tree for simple meters, we can make a rhythm tree for compound meters. Here it is for both notes and rests. As you can see, the division of the primary pulse into three parts is clearly visible.



CLASS WORK

For each of the following compound meters, write one measure of notes representing the primary pulse and one measure of notes representing the division of the pulse. Follow the example.

EXAMPLE: $\frac{6}{4}$ *Pulse* *Division of the Pulse*

Pulse *Division of the Pulse*

1. $\frac{6}{16}$
2. $\frac{9}{4}$
3. $\frac{12}{16}$

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 50

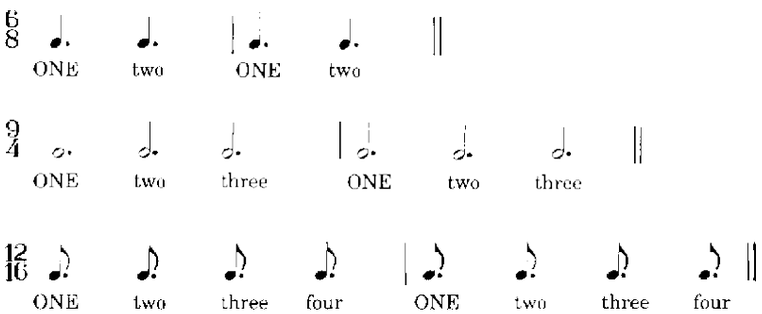
4. $\frac{12}{4}$

5. $\frac{9}{16}$

A Counting Method for Compound Meters

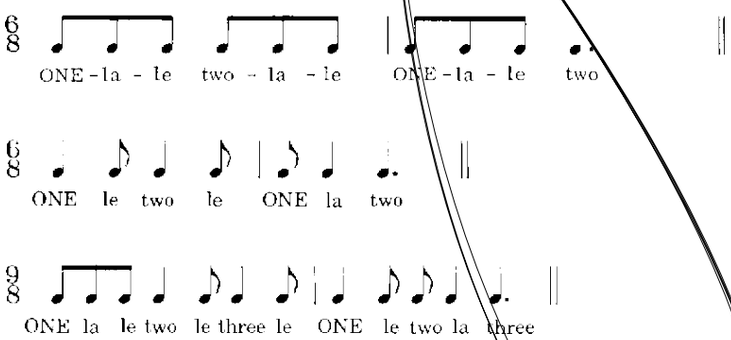
Remember from our discussion of simple meter that the basic pulse in either simple or compound meter is counted the same: “one, two, three, four.”

The Primary Pulse

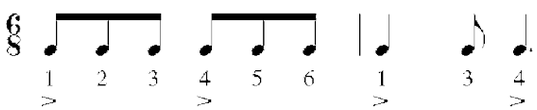


Divisions of the Pulse

Because compound meters are divided into three equal parts rather than two, a different set of syllables is used: la and le. Practice counting the following examples in compound meter until you feel comfortable with them. Remember that this is a different system from the one used to count simple meters. It may be confusing at first, but it will become easier with practice.



Some people prefer to count the eighth notes (or other pulse value) in compound meter. In this system, for instance, in $\frac{6}{8}$ you would say 1–2–3–4–5–6, emphasizing the 1 and 4.

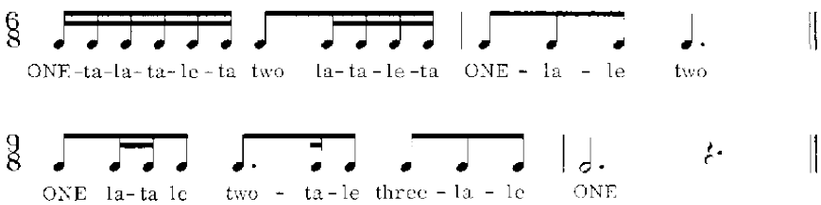


Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 51

We will continue to use la and le, but either system works equally well, and you should use the one that your teacher prefers.

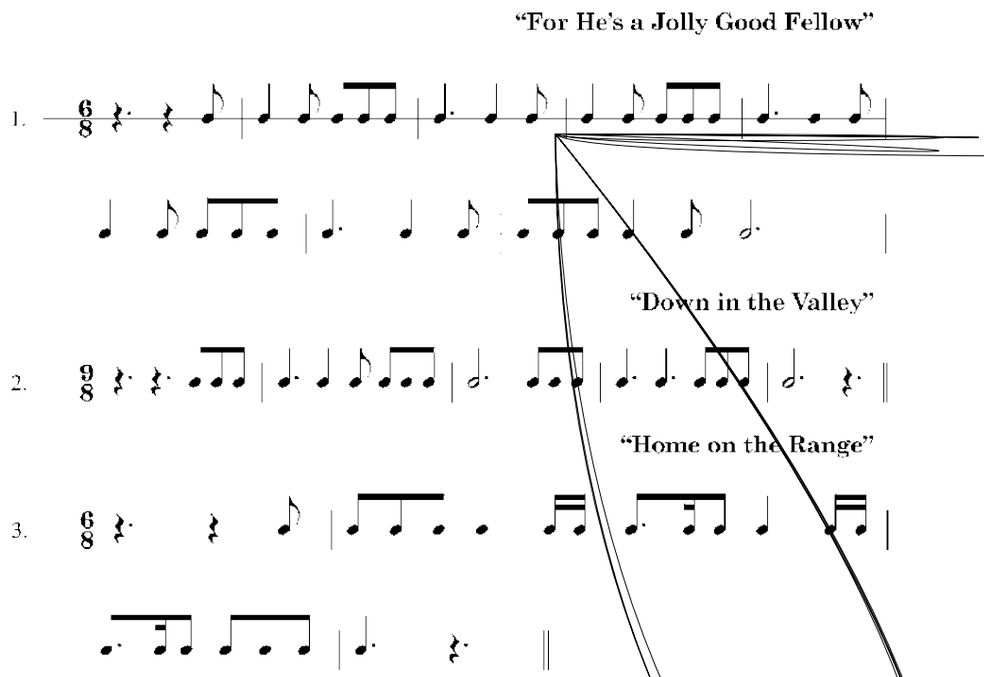
When a further subdivision of the beat in compound meter is required—that is, when you need to indicate one-sixth of the primary pulse—the syllable ta is used.

The following examples can be tongue twisters at first, but will grow easier as you practice them.



CLASS WORK

As a class, clap and count the following rhythmic examples in compound meter. You probably know these pieces and that should help you decide whether you are per forming them correctly or not. Begin by saying two measures of the divided primary pulse (1-la-le 2-la-le or 1-2-3 4-5-6) aloud before clapping. When you are comfortable with the counting system, also try playing the rhythms on an instrument or key board while counting mentally. Remember always to keep the basic pulse steady.

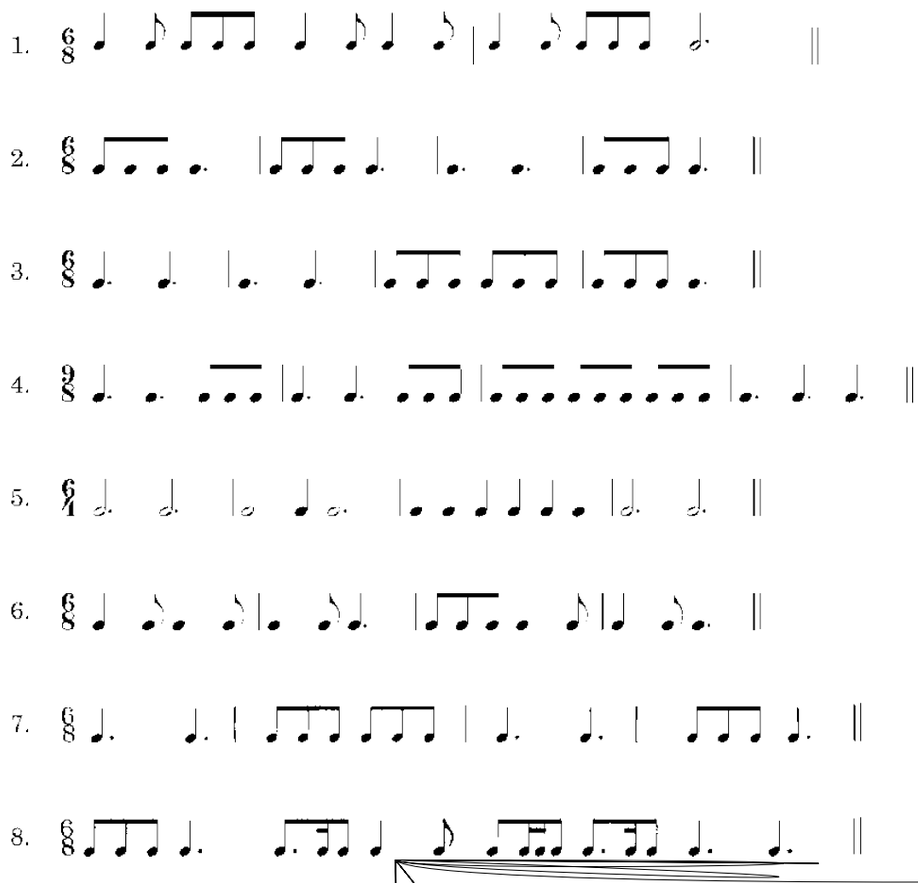


MUSIC IN THEORY

Counting Compound Meters

As a class, clap and count the following rhythmic examples in compound meter. Begin by saying two measures of the divided beat (1-la-le 2-la-le) aloud before clapping. Experiment with a variety of speeds. When you are comfortable with this counting system, also try playing these rhythms on an instrument or keyboard while counting mentally.

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 52



MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Rhythmic Dictation

Your instructor will choose three rhythmic passages in compound meter from Appendix A and play them for you several times. You will be told the meter of each example. Listen carefully to each passage, and try to notate it in the space provided below. If the passages seem too long, your instructor can divide them into shorter segments. Use the counting method to help clarify the rhythmic patterns you hear.

1. _____

_____

2. _____

_____

3. _____

_____

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 53

MUSIC IN THEORY

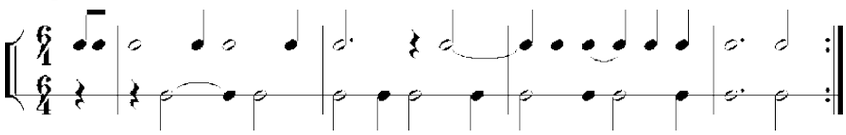
Compound Meters

As a class, clap the following two-part examples in compound meter. Half the class should clap the top part and half the bottom part. Then, by yourself, try tapping the examples on a desk or tabletop, one part per hand.

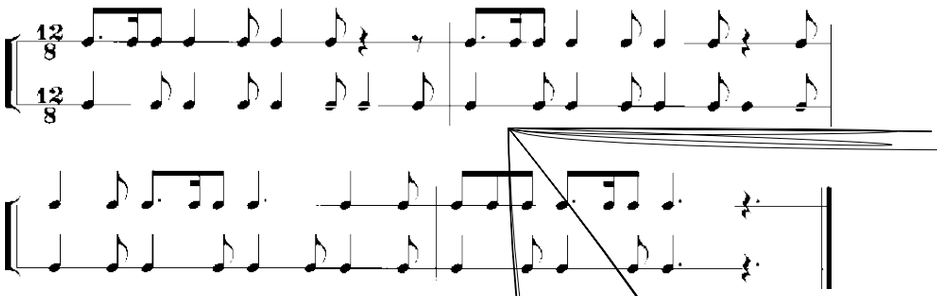
Moderato

1.

Allegro

2. 

Andante

3. 

Ties

Often, a composer will want to hold a note beyond the end of a measure in a particular meter. Suppose, for example, we want a note to last four pulses in triple meter. Obviously, four pulses will not fit into a single three-pulse measure. To permit the note to last four pulses, we use a tie, which extends the note into the next measure. As shown in the following example, the tie is a curved line connecting the notehead to be prolonged with the same pitch in the next measure.

In performance, the second note will not be sounded separately. Instead, the first note will be held through the time value of the second, producing a single sound, four pulses in duration.

Ties are not only useful for creating notes of longer duration than the number of pulses in a measure, they are sometimes also needed at the end of a measure. In the following illustration, for example, the tie is needed because a half note cannot occur on the last beat of the first measure.

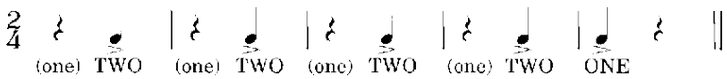
Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 54

Another use of ties is to help make clear metric groupings, both within the bar and over the bar line. In the following example the normal grouping in $\frac{6}{8}$ is maintained by the use of ties.

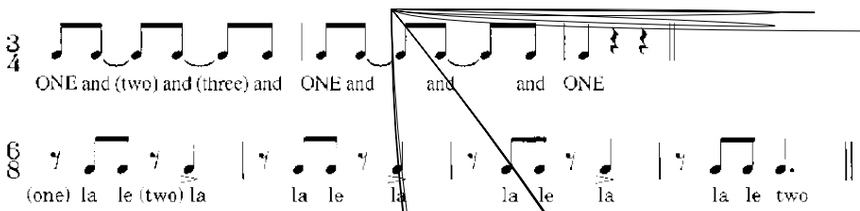
Ties are very similar in appearance to slurs, which are used to specify a smooth, connected style of playing. Slurs, however, always connect different pitches, and may extend over several pitches at once, whereas ties always connect two notes of the same pitch.

Syncopation

In some styles of music, an accent is frequently placed on what would otherwise be a weak beat. This is called syncopation. Clap and count aloud the following example:



Notice that even this simple example of syncopation creates more rhythmic drive and energy. This is why some styles of music use syncopation so extensively. Here are two more examples.



A seemingly endless number of different syncopation figures is possible. In fact, almost every culture in the world has a group of these rhythms embedded some where in their traditional music. And what all syncopations have in common is a stressing of the weaker pulses (or the weaker divisions of a pulse) in order to pro duce more rhythmic tension. Some Western styles of music, such as jazz and rock, make extensive use of syncopation, while others, such as symphonic, usually do not.

Repeat Signs

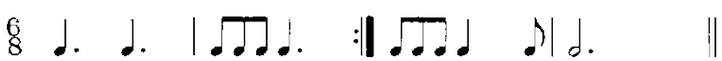
Occasionally, composers want several measures in a composition to repeat immedi ately. They can indicate this either by writing all of the measures again or by using repeat signs. Although it is easy enough to rewrite a few measures, for longer pas sages repeat signs are more convenient.

Repeat signs are two large dots, one above the other, that appear at the begin ning and the end of the measures to be repeated. Double bar lines generally accom pany the repeat signs at the beginning and the end of the repeated measures in order to call attention to the repeat signs.

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 55

This example, when performed, will sound like this:

If the repeated measures include the first measure of the composition, the repeat sign occurs only at the end of the section to be repeated and is omitted from the beginning. For example,



when performed, will sound like

CLASS WORK

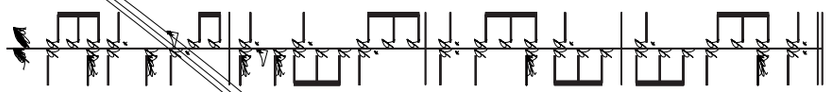
As a class, clap and count the following rhythms. Pay particular attention to the repeat signs and ties. It will also be helpful if you sing the rhythms or perform them on an instrument. Be sure to hold each note for its full value.

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 56

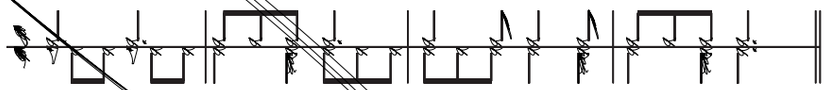
CLASS WORK

As a class, clap or perform on instruments the following two-part rhythmic examples in compound meter. If necessary, you may wish to practice some of the simpler exercises in Appendix B first. Then, experiment with tapping out the examples on a desk or tabletop, one part per hand.

1.



2.



3.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Composing

Melodies from a guitar piece by Ferdinando Carulli and a keyboard piece by the Renaissance composer Giles Farnaby follow. Both are in compound meter. You may have heard one or both of these pieces before. Clap the rhythm of each melody several times. Then, in the space provided, write a second rhythmic part that, when clapped with the rhythm of the melody, will complement it and create a two-part clapping piece. Your teacher may wish to work on this as a class or assign it as homework. If used as home work, perform these clapping pieces in class and discuss their strengths and weaknesses.

Carulli: Allegro

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 57

MUSIC IN THEORY

Farnaby: The Old Spagnoletta

MUSIC IN THEORY

Ear Training

As a class, choose several songs that everyone knows. These may be folk songs, popular songs, or the theme songs from your favorite movies. For each song, say the words aloud several times until you have the rhythm created by these words clearly in mind. Then, decide the meter of this rhythm. Is it simple or compound? Finally, determine where the downbeat occurs. To do this, begin by deciding whether the first word begins on the downbeat or on some other part of the measure. After you have done this, try writing the rhythm suggested by the words. Here, there is no one absolutely correct way of doing things, although your rhythms should always sound natural, not awkward.

Focus

Chaper 1 began with the question, What is musical rhythm? Are we now ready to begin formulating an answer to that question? So far, we have discussed the individ ual rhythmic elements, but not how these parts interact within an actual composition. It is this interaction that gives a piece of music its unique rhythmic character. On one level, this interaction is relatively easy to describe: Musical rhythm is the inherent flow and tension between the steady pulse of a particular meter and the irregular note values that occur within that meter. Unfortunately, this simplistic definition, while true, ignores the more subtle and complex aspects of the rhythm of most pieces of music.

In an actual composition, a number of factors always work together to produce its characteristic rhythm: tempo, accents, and the interaction of rhythm with melody and harmony, to name a few. Also, since the subtle rhythmic qualities of every style of music differ from each other, musicians learn to make slight adjust ments when performing, in order to accommodate the specific rhythmic demands of a particular style.

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 58

MUSIC IN ACTION

Applying Your Skills

The following three-part rhythms are taken from Appendix B. As a class, clap and count these rhythms. Then, divide into small groups and clap and count them again.

MUSIC IN ACTION

Listening

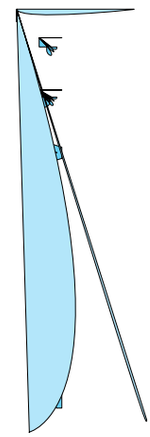
Listen once again to the works you chose for the first Music in Action in Chapter 1. This time, try to explain in more musical terms what is taking place rhythmically. Be specific when talking about the pulse, meter, and tempo. Discuss in a general way the interaction of the various rhythmic elements. For each piece, in one or more paragraphs, describe your experience of the rhythm. Does this new description show that you now have a better understanding of musical rhythm in general?

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 59

Practice Materials 3-1

In each of the following sequences, identify the meter name and the note value that represents the pulse. Then indicate measures by placing bar lines in the appropriate places in each example. When you have finished, either play each rhythmic pattern on the piano or other instrument, or sing it.

1. 6/4
2. 9/8
3. 6/16
4. 9/4
5. 12/8



	Meter Name	*Note Value*
1. 6/4		
2. 9/8		
3. 6/16		
4. 9/4		
5. 12/8		

Practice Materials 3-2

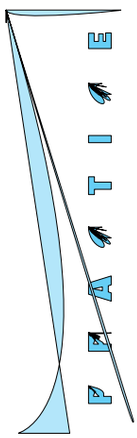
Write in the counting syllables for each of the following rhythms. Then, practice clapping and saying the syllables aloud. Be sure to keep the pulse steady.

1. 3/4
2. 6/8
3. 2/2

Duckworth_Music9e_03.qxd 12/5/05 3:32 PM Page 60

4. $\frac{9}{8}$

5. $\frac{2}{4}$



Practice Materials 3-3

Give the correct terminology for each of the following meter signatures.

EXAMPLE: $\frac{3}{2}$ simple triple

1. $\frac{3}{4}$ _____
2. $\frac{4}{2}$ _____
3. $\frac{6}{8}$ _____
4. $\frac{4}{4}$ _____
5. $\frac{12}{16}$ _____
6. $\frac{6}{4}$ _____
7. $\frac{12}{4}$ _____
8. $\frac{2}{2}$ _____
9. $\frac{9}{4}$ _____
10. $\frac{2}{8}$ _____

Practice Materials 3-4

Rewrite each of the following rhythmic patterns in the meter indicated. To do this you will have to divide some notes (for instance, h into qq) and use ties.

EXAMPLE:

1. $= \frac{6}{8}$
2. $= \frac{3}{4}$
3. $= \frac{3}{2}$
4. $= \frac{3}{8}$
5. $= \frac{4}{4}$
6. $= \frac{2}{4}$

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 61

CHAPTER FOUR

Pitch

Not all musicians are able to read music from the printed page, and music does not have to be written on paper to exist as music. Most of the world's folk music traditions are oral, with songs and instrumental pieces passing by rote from one performer to another and from one generation to the next. Even the classical music of some cultures, much of it of great complexity, is maintained primarily by an oral tradition. Moreover, some styles of music, for example, jazz and rock in America or the raga tradition in India, require improvising: written arrangements in these styles are little more than skeletons or outlines, reminding us of the actual performance when the "real" music appears.

Even though some musical traditions have existed for centuries without a highly organized notational system, European and American art music of the past 500 years cannot. In order to play the music of Bach, Chopin, Mahler, or Gershwin, for example, we need a precise set of plans—a sort of blueprint or road map telling us in specific terms not only what pitches and rhythms to perform, but also the manner, or style, in which they should be played.

There are, of course, obvious advantages in being able to write down your musical ideas. First, the musical ideas can be preserved exactly—they will not be forgotten or altered unconsciously, particularly from generation to generation. Second, complicated musical structures can be built in a standard manner easily understood by all. Third, the music can be accurately and efficiently transmitted to other musicians, both immediately and hundreds of years later. Furthermore, we can assume that it will always sound the same. This is no small accomplishment, when you think about it.

Consider the great operas, string quartets, and symphonies of the past. Could they ever have been performed in the first place, much less saved for centuries, without a system of notation? What about the music played by the swing-era bands of Count Basie or Duke Ellington? Although there was a great deal of solo improvising, the arrangements themselves were tightly organized and carefully written out.

As you continue the process of learning to read musical notation, remember that you are, in essence, learning a new language—the language of music. This language will allow you to communicate with other musicians, both those of today and those of the past.

MUSIC IN TRADITIONS

Listening

Listen to a recording of a short orchestral work by a classical composer such as Mozart or Beethoven. As you listen, consider that this music was written more than 200 years ago. It can still be performed today because the notational system conveys information to contemporary performers that allows them to re-create the music accurately. As a class, discuss the

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 62

MUSIC IN

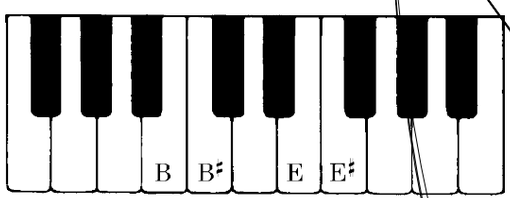
kinds of musical information a notational system for this style of music would need to contain. You may wish to look at a score, either during or after the discussion.

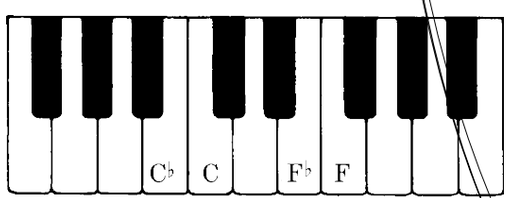
In contrast, today most rock and rap music is not notated, at least not when it was originally performed. (Some solos by great performers are transcribed later for study purposes.) Although the arrangements may be played virtually the same way each time, they are seldom written on paper and read during the performance in the manner of classical music. As a class, listen to a current rock or rap piece and discuss what kinds of information a notational system for this style of music would need, so that someone who has never heard this music could play it in a recognizable way two centuries from now.

Enharmonic Pitches

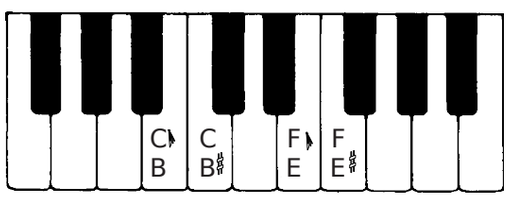
You may remember from Chapter 1 that the black keys of the piano can have more than one name. (This is even true for the white keys when double sharps and dou ble flats are used.) The fact that F sharp and G flat, or C sharp and D flat, are the same note on the keyboard may be momentarily confusing. When two different let ter names identify the same pitch, we call them enharmonic pitches. The term means that the two pitches, while written differently, actually sound the same tone. At this point, the best way of dealing with enharmonic pitches is to remember that sharped notes sound above the pitches they relate to, while flatted notes sound below. The reason for this duality in labeling will become clear when we discuss scales in a later chapter.

Every pitch can be raised (sharped) or lowered (flatted). And since there is no black key between E and F or B and C, it is possible to have two instances of white key enharmonic sharps and flats. We can, for example, identify the pitch E sharp as the key directly above E, which is white and more frequently called F. In the same way, C flat is the key directly below C, which is white and also called B.





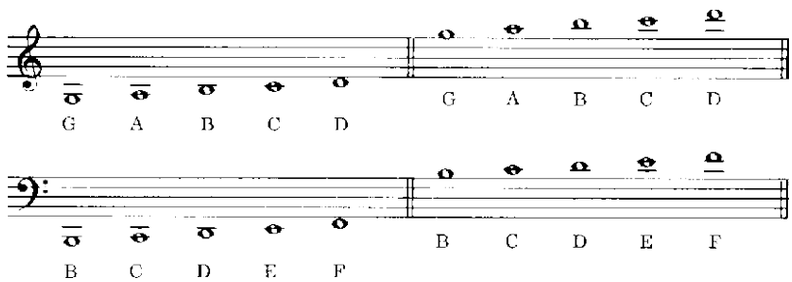
Notice the enharmonic qualities of these four white keys when they are combined on one keyboard.



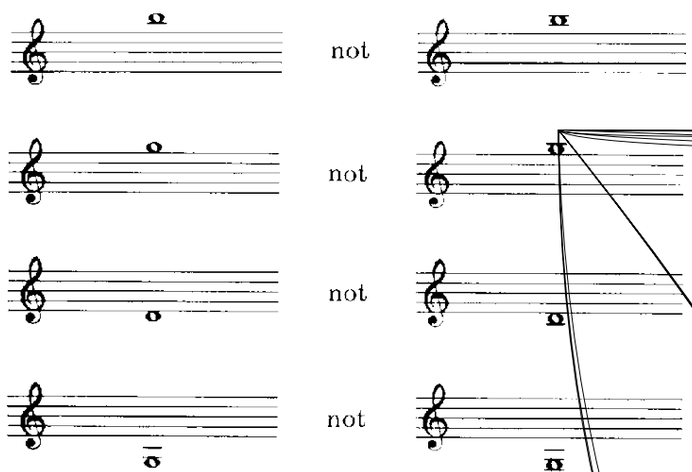
Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 63

Ledger Lines

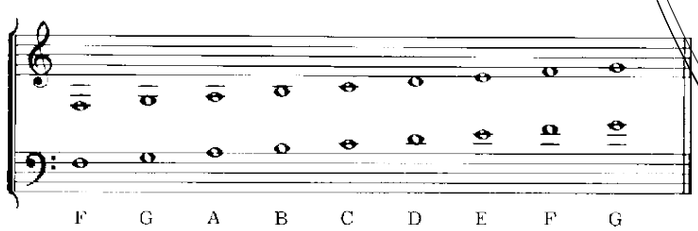
So far, almost all of the written pitches we have encountered have been located on the staff. Often, however, pitches higher or lower than the range limitations of the five-line staff need to be indicated. This is done with the use of ledger lines. Ledger lines are short, individual lines added above or below the staff, having the effect of extending the staff. Notice that ledger lines are the same distance apart as the lines of the staff and that the ledger lines for one note do not connect to the ledger lines for another note:



Notice also that you should never enclose a pitch with ledger lines.

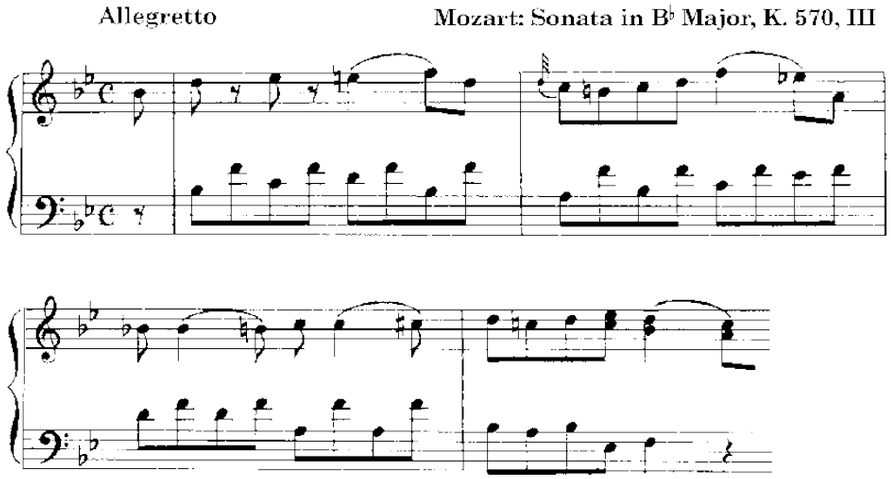


The use of ledger lines within the great staff can be momentarily confusing. In the following example, both notes in each vertically aligned pair represent exactly the same pitch. This notational overlap within the great staff is useful because it allows pitches to be clearly grouped with the musical line to which they belong.



Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 64

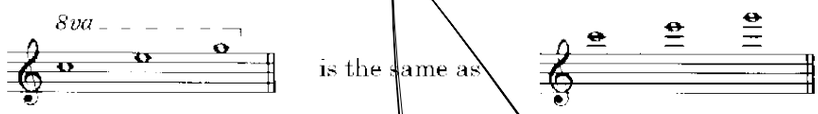
In the following piano music example, the left hand plays pitches located above middle C. To avoid confusion, however, these pitches are written with ledger lines in the bass clef.



The Octave Sign

Musicians are most comfortable reading music that is written on the staff or close to it. The excessive use of ledger lines makes music difficult to read and should be avoided. The **octave sign**, 8va ⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻| or 8 ⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻|, is another notational device that helps overcome this problem.

An octave is the distance between any note and the next note of the same name, either higher or lower. The octave sign above a group of notes, then, indicates that the notes under the sign are to be played one octave higher than written.

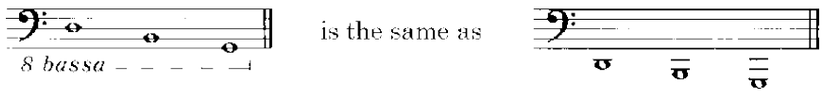


The following example shows how the octave sign can be used to keep the ascending-scale passage on or close to the staff.

Kuhlau: Rondo from Sonatina, Op. 20, No. 1

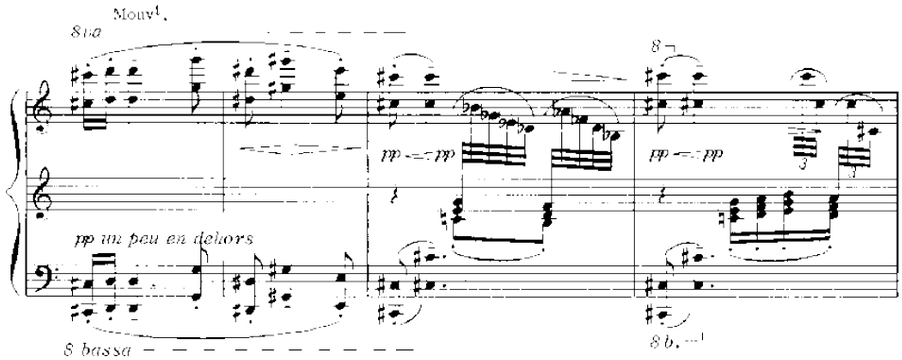
Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 65

When the octave sign appears below a group of notes, it indicates that those notes are to be played one octave lower than written. Sometimes the word bassa is added to the octave sign.



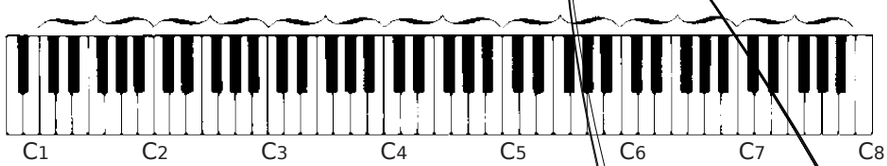
The following example, by Debussy, uses octave signs above and below pitches in order to explore the extremes of the piano range.

Debussy: “Brouillards” from Preludes, Book II

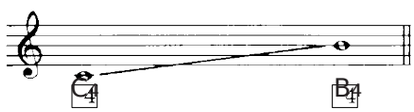


Octave Identification

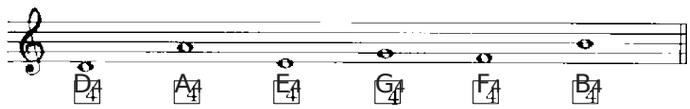
It is often useful to be able to refer to a pitch in a particular octave. To identify each octave separately, a special system is used. Unfortunately, more than one system is used today. The one shown here is for the piano and refers to middle C as C4. If you own a synthesizer or electronic keyboard, however, your manual may refer to middle C as C3. This is confusing, but it happens because most electronic keyboards don’t have all eighty-eight keys, and middle C on them is the third, not the fourth, C from the left.



We will use the system that spans the entire piano keyboard. Here, the octave beginning on middle C is labeled as follows:

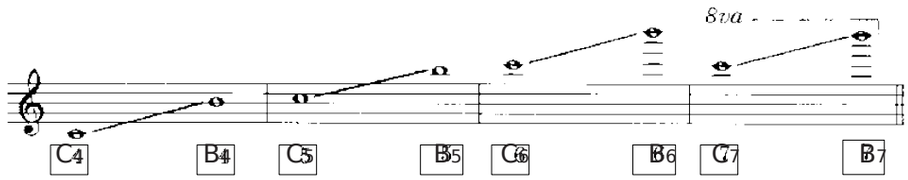


Any pitch within this range can be identified by a letter name with a superscript numeral 4.

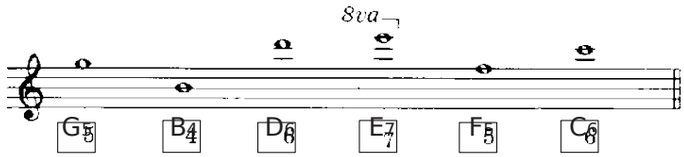


Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 66

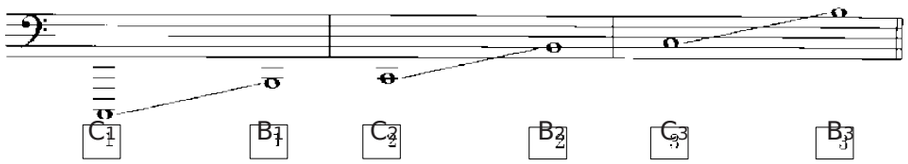
The following illustration shows how the octaves above middle C are identified.



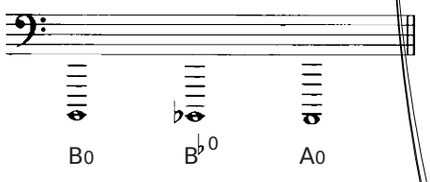
Any pitch within these ranges can be identified by a letter name and the appropri ate superscript.



The octaves below middle C are labeled with descending numerals in a similar way.



The lowest three pitches on the piano, which are below C_1, are identified by their letter name and a superscript numeral 0.



Notice how so many ledger lines make identification of these pitches difficult.

Stems

When rhythms are written on a single line, as we have done thus far, the stems of the notes may go either above the line or below it, as long as they all go in the same direction. Once we begin to deal with pitches on a five-line staff, however, the direc tion the stems take is more crucial. In general, pitches written above the middle line of the staff have stems that point downward, while pitches written below the middle line have stems that point up.

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 67

The stems of notes that occur on the middle line of the staff may go in either direction,

although the context of the surrounding pitches may indicate a preference for one direction or the other.

Dynamics

Composers indicate degrees of loudness and softness (called dynamics) by anno tating their music with specific words and abbreviations, most often in Italian, occa sionally in French or German.

Volume in music is usually either maintained at steady levels or gradually changed. The standard words and symbols for a steady volume are:

English	Italian	Abbreviation
very soft	pianissimo	
soft	piano	
moderately soft	mezzo piano	
moderately loud	mezzo forte	
loud	forte	
very loud	fortissimo	

Occasionally, extremes in volume are desired, particularly in contemporary music. In such cases, the symbols , , , and are used.

Gradual changes in volume are indicated by the following words and symbols:

English	Italian	Abbreviation	Symbol
become softer	diminuendo	dim.	
	decrescendo	decresc.	
become louder	crescendo	cresc.	

Where the symbols for diminuendo or crescendo are used, the length of the sym bol indicates the relative length of time in which the volume change is to occur. For example, *p* — — — — — — *f* indicates a gradual change from piano to forte and taking approximately twice as long as *p* — — — *f*. Furthermore, the change in the latter example will sound more obvious to the listener, because it will move through mezzo piano to mezzo forte more quickly than the first example.

Whereas the symbols that dictate gradual volume changes suggest the time in which the change is to occur, the Italian terms or abbreviations are less specific unless the Italian terms subito (suddenly) or poco a poco (little by little) are added to the volume indicator. Subito , for example, means suddenly loud, while dim. poco a poco means gradually softer.

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 68

How to Read a Musical Map

Many pieces of written music, when performed, are played straight through. That is, you begin at the top and play to the end, in the same way as you would read a newspaper column, or a paragraph on a page. But not all pieces are this straight forward. Some contain notational shortcuts—space-saving devices indicated by a variety of symbols and abbreviations. If you understand the code (recognize the symbols and abbreviations), then reading the musical map is easy. But if you don't you can become hopelessly confused.

Let's begin by looking at a piece of piano music by Muzio Clementi, a composer who was a contemporary of Beethoven. This sonatina may, at first, appear to be thirty-eight measures long, but that is not the case. In fact, when performed cor rectly it actually consists of seventy-six measures. Clementi is able, in performance, to double the amount of music contained on the printed page by using the device of repetition, a device he uses not once, but twice.

Clementi: Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 1

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 69

Clementi's first repetition occurs at the end of measure 15. The double bar with two dots before it is a repeat sign that should be familiar to you from your work in Chapter 3. It indicates that the first fifteen measures are to be repeated before con tinuing. The second repeat occurs in measure 38, at the very end. Here, as before, a repeat sign sends us back into the piece. This time, however, we do not go back to the beginning, but only back to measure 16, where a repeat sign (with the two dots now to the right of the double bar), brackets the 23 measures Clementi wants repeated.

Now, let's look at "Siciliana," from Robert Schumann's Album for the Young.

Schumann: "Siciliana" from Album for the Young

This example, which represents a more complicated musical map, contains three different kinds of repetition. The first kind occurs at the end of measure 8, and is similar to the ones we saw in the Clementi sonatina. The second device, how ever, is new. It occurs at measure 16 and is called the 1st and 2nd endings. This

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 70

device is in some ways similar to the repeat sign for the first eight measures. Notice that the double bar and the two dots in measures 8 and 16 indicate that the musical material between measures 9 and 16 is to be repeated. In this case, however, there are two different final measures. The first time the passage is performed the first ending is played, but on the repetition, only the second ending is used. That is, measures 9–15 are played, measure 16A is omitted, and measure 16B is played in its place.

The third device is even more complicated. Notice the Italian phrase Da capo al fine senza repetizione below measures 35 and 36. This phrase indicates that the performer is to return to the beginning of the piece (da capo = the head, the beginning) and play to the end (fine = the end) without repeating either measures 1–8 or 9–16 (senza repetizone = without repetition). The actual end of the piece, therefore, is at measure 25, not at measure 36 as it may have appeared originally.

These devices may at first seem to be extremely confusing ways to organize a score, but if you perform very much music, you will quickly grow used to them. In fact, this example contains all of the commonly used devices except one: Dal segno al fine. This phrase, which is similar to Da capo al fine, is used when the composer wishes to return to the middle of the piece rather than to the very beginning. In this case the symbol 𝄋 is placed at the point where the repetition is to begin, and the performer is expected to return to the sign (Dal segno) and play to the end (al fine).

Not all pieces of music utilize devices of repetition, and even those that do can vary in slightly different ways. But if you study the following chart carefully, you should be able to find your way through almost any piece of music without too much difficulty.

Device of Repetition	Abbreviation	Meaning
Repeat signs	𝄆 𝄇	Perform the measures located within these signs twice.
1st and 2nd endings	1. 2.	Perform the indicated measures twice—the first time using the first ending, the second time using only the second ending.
Da capo al fine	D.C. al fine	Return to the beginning and play to the indicated end.
Dal segno al fine	D.S. al fine	Return to the sign and play to the indicated end.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Score Reading

Ask several members of the class who perform to locate one or more scores that use various devices of repetition. As a group, discuss these pieces. Can you identify the devices and what they mean? Can you work your way through the score successfully?

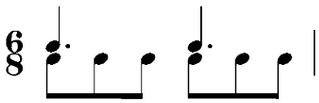
Rhythm Revisited: Pulse and Beat

Thus far, we have used the word pulse to indicate the steady recurring rhythm of the meter. But as everyone knows, music of any complexity can have more than one pulse occurring simultaneously, some going faster than the basic pulse, some slower. In 𝄴 meter, for example, the basic pulse is the quarter note although a faster secondary pulse may occur if some instrument is playing steady eighth notes, and a

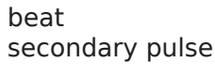
Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 71

slower secondary pulse may result from another instrument that is playing steady half notes. To highlight this distinction, musicians call the primary pulse the beat and continue to refer to the secondary pulses as pulses.

In simple meters, the beat, or primary pulse, is almost always the note value indicated by the meter signature, that is, the quarter note in Y, T, and +; the half note in , , and ; and the eighth note in , , and .



In compound meter, however, the distinction between the beat and the pulse can be seen more clearly. There, the secondary pulse of $\frac{6}{8}$, for example, is the six eighth notes, while the beat, or primary pulse, is represented by the two dotted quarter notes.



This same distinction between the beat and the secondary pulse is true for all the compound meters.

Focus

Pitch identification is a major component of musical notation. So far you have been introduced to and given practical experience with pitch notation in the treble and bass clefs, as well as on the great staff. It is important that you become familiar with pitch notation as quickly as possible, because the rest of the book is based on knowing this information. One of the easiest ways to fall behind in the study of music fundamentals is to be uncertain of and too slow at pitch identification.

Musical sound has four characteristics—duration, pitch, timbre, and volume. While this book concentrates on developing your skills with duration and pitch, tim bre and volume should not be ignored altogether. At this point, you may wish to look at Appendix I, “A Brief Introduction to Timbre.” Later, your teacher may ask you to study this section in more detail. For now, keep in mind that being musical involves more than just playing the right notes in the correct rhythms.

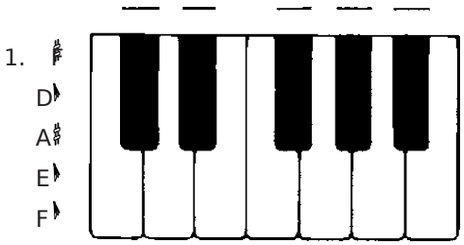
Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 72

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 73

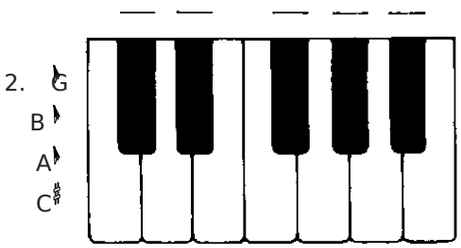
Practice Materials 4-1

Locate the specified pitches on the following keyboards, and write each pitch in the correct place. If the pitch is a white key, write it directly on the keyboard. If it is a black key, use the answer line given above the keyboard. Then practice finding and playing each of the pitches at the piano.

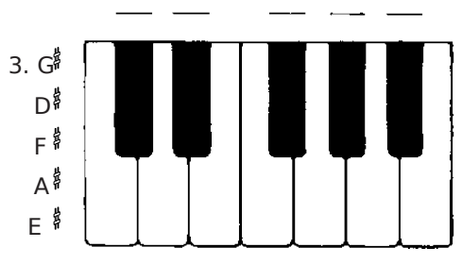
1. F♯ D♭ A♯ E♭ F♭



2. G♭ B♭ A♭ C♯



3. G♯ D♯ F♯ A♯ E♯

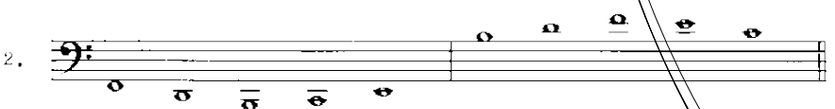


Practice Materials 4-2

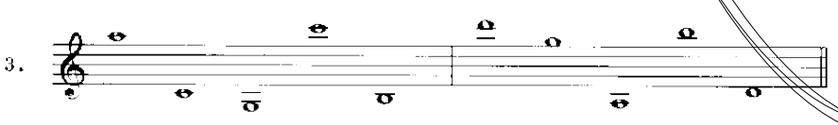
Identify the following pitches by letter name.

1.

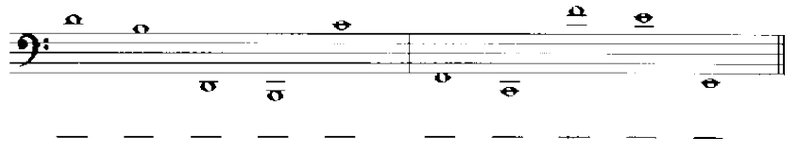
2.



3.



Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 74

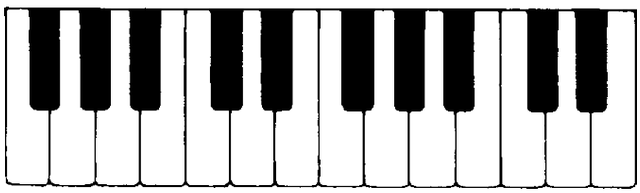
4. 

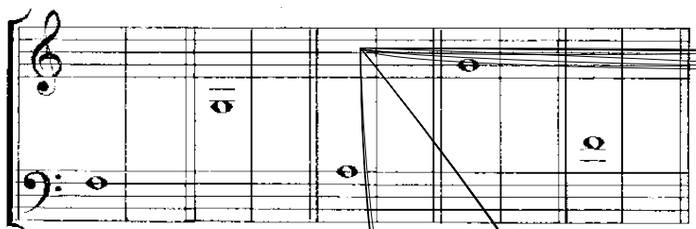
Practice Materials 4-3

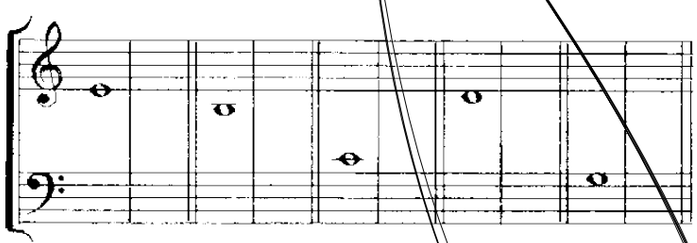
First identify the given pitch; then rewrite the same pitch, but in the other clef. A keyboard is provided to help you visualize the pitches.

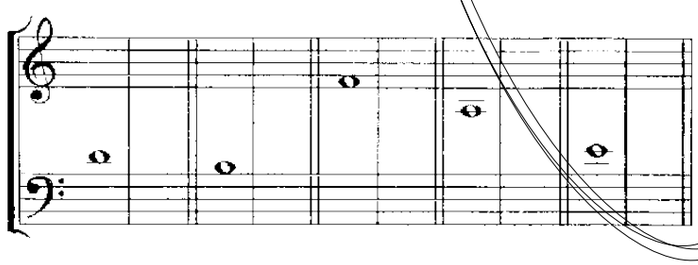
EXAMPLE:

B

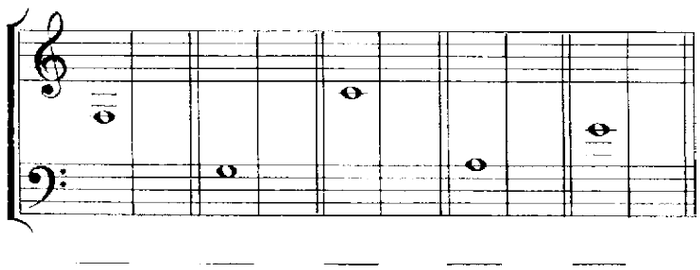


1. 

2. 

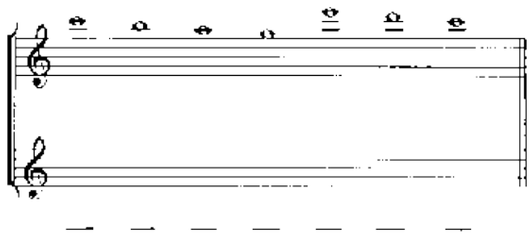
3. 

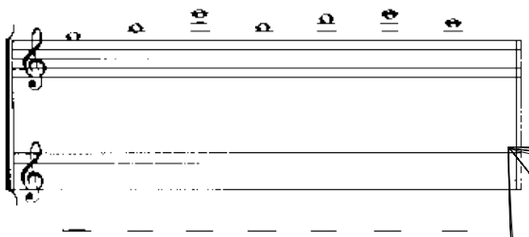
Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 75

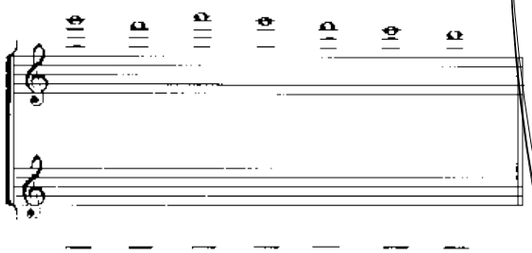
4. 

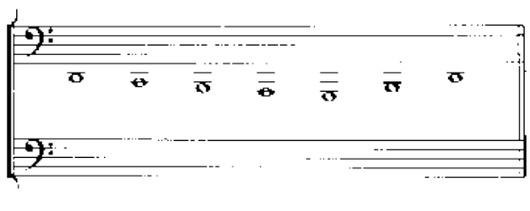
Practice Materials 4-4

Name the pitches given below. Then rewrite the passages using the octave sign to avoid the use of ledger lines.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

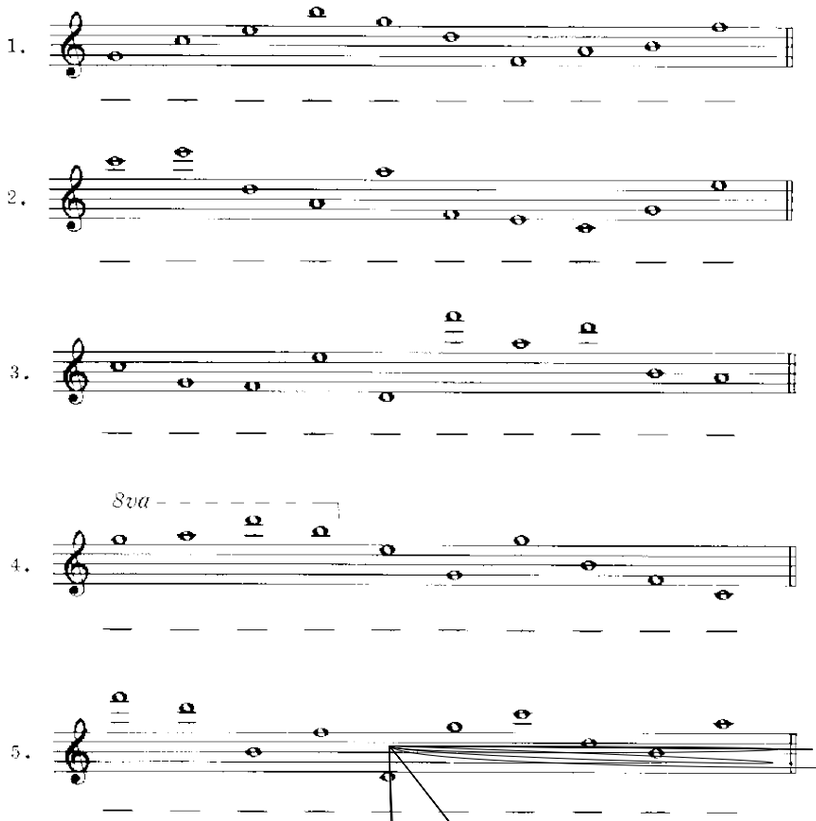
5.

Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 76

PRACTICE

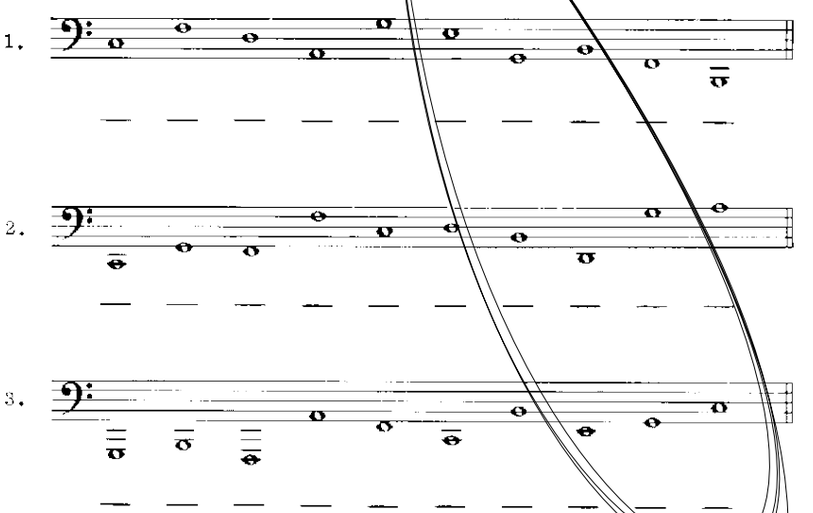
Practice Materials 4-5

Give the correct name and octave identification for the following pitches.



Practice Materials 4-6

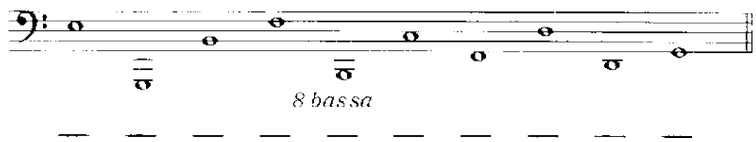
Give the correct octave identification for the following pitches in the bass clef.



Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 77

4.

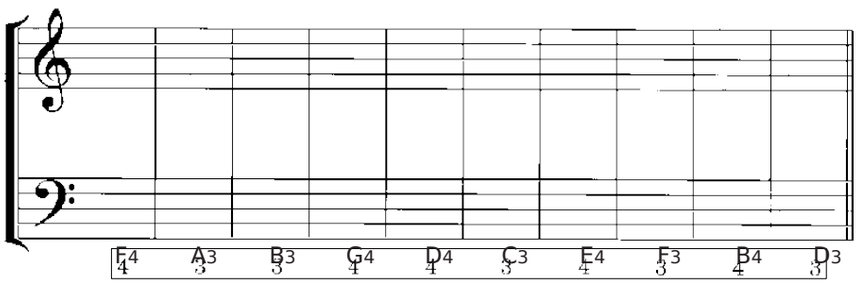
5.



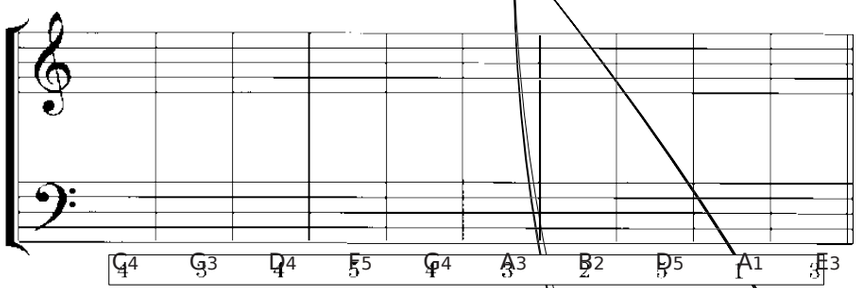
Practice Materials 4-7

Write each indicated pitch in the correct octave. The octave sign may be used where necessary.

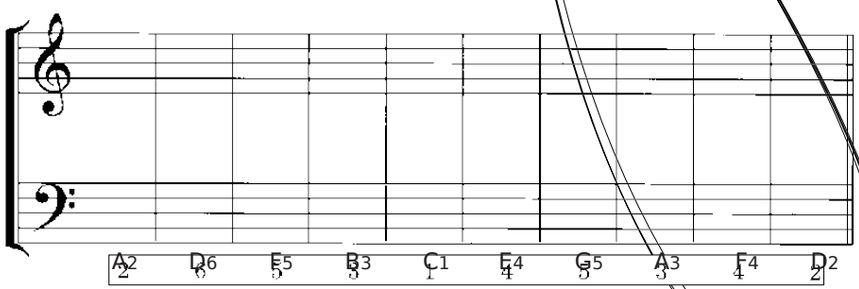
1.



2.



3.



Duckworth_Music9e_04.qxd 12/5/05 3:37 PM Page 78

Duckworth_Music9e_FII.qxd 11/18/05 1:14 AM Page 79

The following questions cover Chapters 3 and 4. If you have difficulty with any of them, review the relevant sections before beginning Chapter 5.

1. Mentally identify (a) the meter and (b) the note value that represents the pulse. Then mark off measures by placing bar lines in the appropriate places in each example.

a.

b.

c.

2. Rewrite the following rhythmic patterns by beaming the eighth notes and sixteenth notes appropriately.

a.

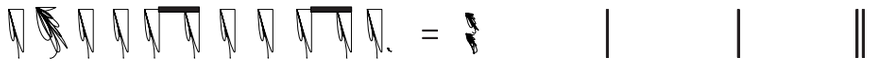
b.

Duckworth_Music9e_FII.qxd 12/5/05 10:21 PM Page 80

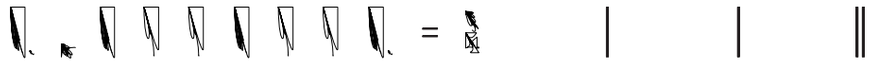
c.

3. Rewrite each of the following rhythmic patterns in the meter indicated. To do this correctly you may need to divide some of the notes and use ties.

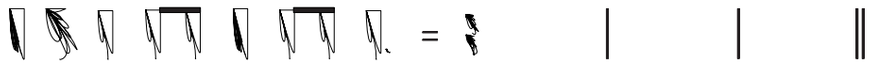
a.



b.

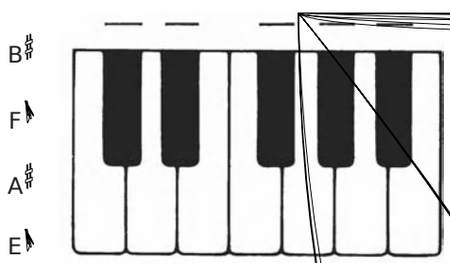


c.

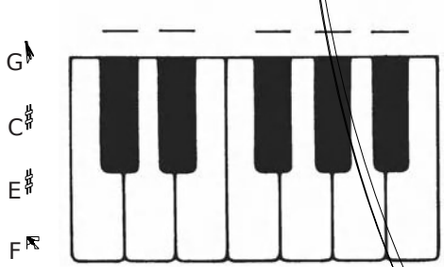


4. Locate the specified pitches on the following keyboards, and write each pitch in the correct place. If the pitch is a white key, write it directly on the keyboard. If it is a black key, use the answer line given above the keyboard.

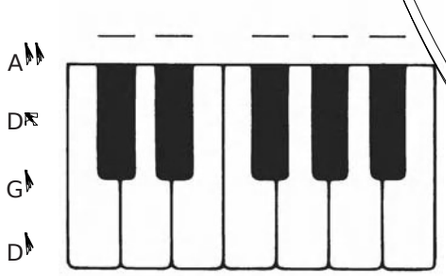
a.



b.

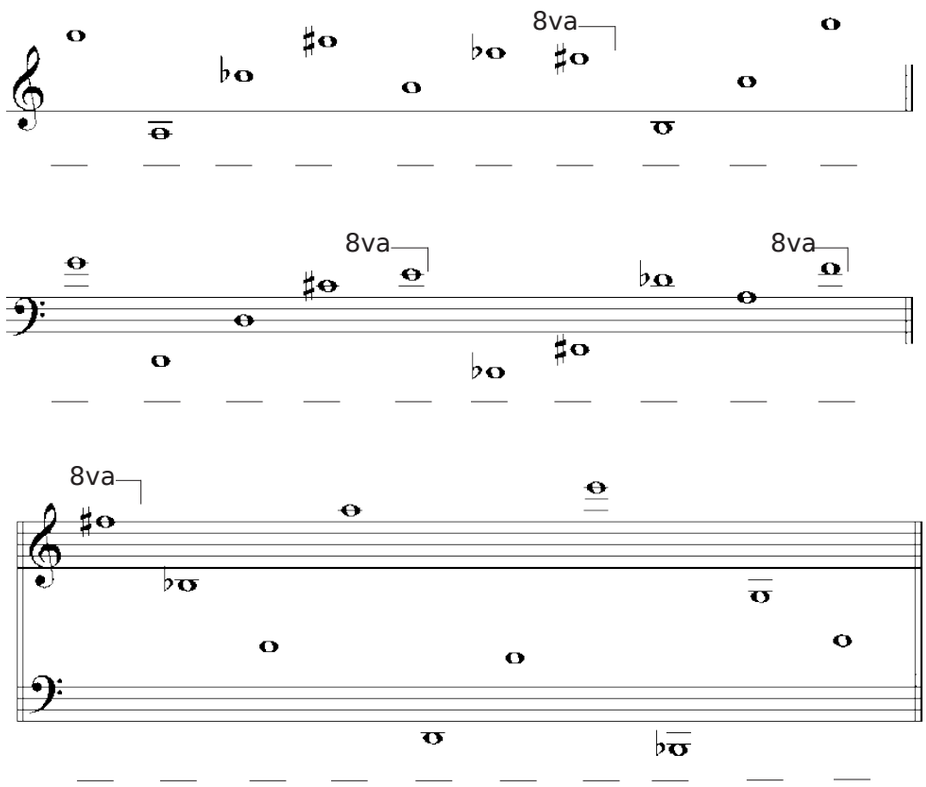


c.

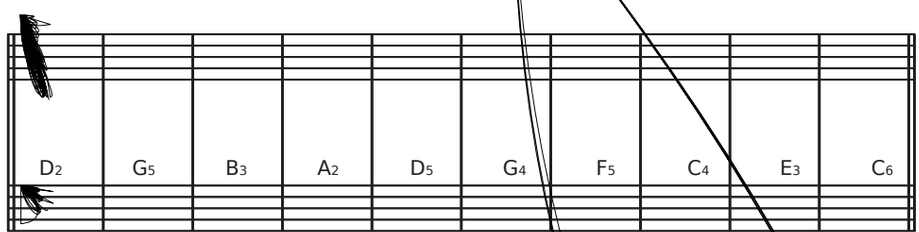


Duckworth_Music9e_FII.qxd 11/18/05 1:14 AM Page 81

5. Identify the following pitches by letter name and octave designation.



6. Write each indicated pitch in the correct octave. Use half notes and make sure that each stem is going in the proper direction. The octave sign may be used where necessary.



Duckworth_Music9e_FII.qxd 11/18/05 1:14 AM Page 82

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 83

CHAPTER FIVE Major Scales

All of the world's melodies are made using some kind of basic pattern of pitches. In the West we call these patterns scales. A scale is a group of pitches—usually numbering from five to eight—that are most often arranged in ascending or descending patterns of whole steps and half steps. The scale is a fundamental building block of music, much as the skeleton is the foundation of the human body. The fact that music of one culture often sounds unfamiliar to people of another culture is largely due to an unfamiliarity with the scales upon which the music is built.

A great variety of scales are used throughout the world today. Most of them date from antiquity, and we don't really know how they came into being. Some of them use intervals smaller than the half step; others have gaps that are larger than a whole step. But these scales all have in common the ability to define and color music in a fundamental way.

Today, Western music is based almost entirely on two scales, the major scale and the minor scale. Both of them are built out of whole and half steps. The music written with these two scales is called tonal music and includes widely divergent styles such as the music of Bach, Miles Davis, and U2, as well as the music we hear most frequently on television and at the movies.

It would be a mistake to assume that just because the major and minor scales are the most familiar to us, all of the other scales are unimportant. As you will see in Chapter 10, some of these other scales have appeared repeatedly within Western tonal music. Also keep in mind that much of the world's music is still written in pitch patterns other than major and minor scales.

Scales as Interval Patterns

Western music divides the octave into twelve equal half steps. A scale formed by dividing the octave in this way is called a chromatic scale.

Ascending chromatic scale (usually written with sharps):

Descending chromatic scale (usually written with sharps):

Notice that these are all the notes on the keyboard—black and white—within one octave.

Because the chromatic scale consists entirely of half steps, it seldom functions in itself as a musical scale. Rather, it is the source from which a huge variety of other scales are drawn. Most scales are made of a combination of whole and half

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 84

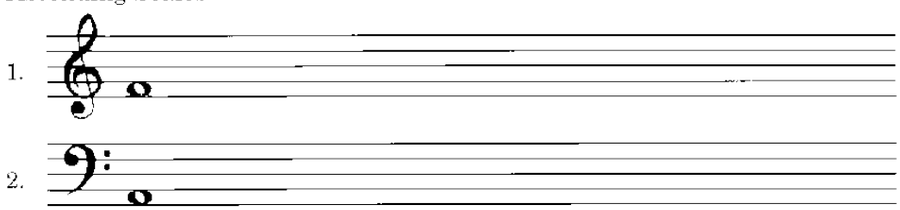
steps, although some scales use one or more intervals larger than the whole step. This variation in interval size gives each scale, and the resultant music in that scale, a particular color or quality, because the unique interval patterns of a scale are transferred to the melody and the harmony of music written in that scale.

The major scale and the natural minor scale (which will be discussed more fully later) are both seven-note scales having five whole steps and two half steps, yet they sound strikingly unlike each other because the pattern of whole steps and half steps is different. The concept of a scale as an interval pattern that reflects the interval patterns of melody and harmony is fundamental to understanding tonal music.

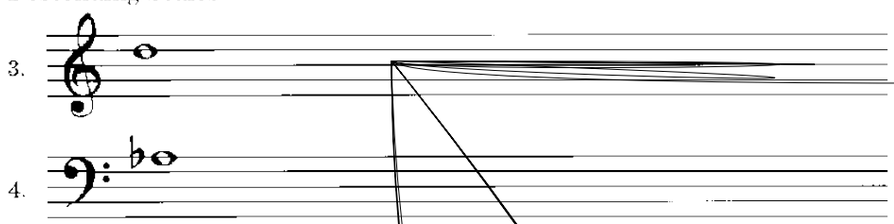
CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help write one-octave chromatic scales beginning on the pitches indicated. Remember to use sharps for the ascending scale and flats for the descending scale. Remember also to keep the notated pitch sequences B–C and E–F intact, since the interval between them is already a half step.

Ascending Scales

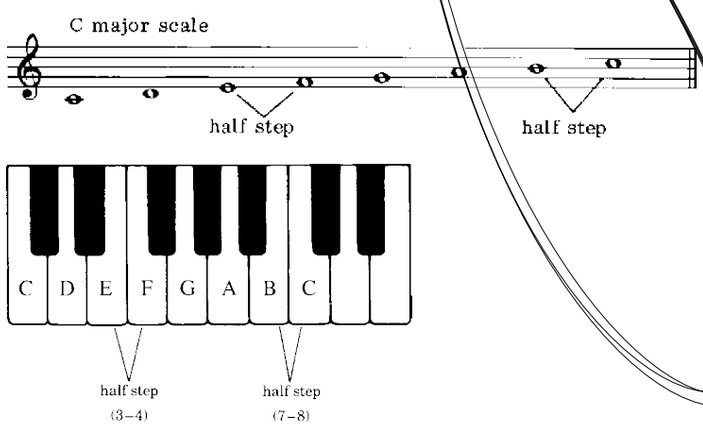


Descending Scales



Elements of the Major Scale

The major scale is an interval pattern of five whole steps and two diatonic half steps. The half steps always occur between the third and fourth tones and the sev enth and first tones of the scale. On the keyboard, the major scale falls on all white keys when it begins on the pitch C.



Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 85

This pattern of whole steps and half steps gives the major scale its characteristic quality. The half step between the seventh and first tones creates a strong pull toward the first tone. This first tone is called a tonic. The tonic, sometimes also called the home note, is the pitch to which the other tones of the scale seem to be related. As you sing or play a major scale, notice how the tonic becomes the focus for a group of seemingly related pitches, similar to a center of gravity.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Finding the Tonic

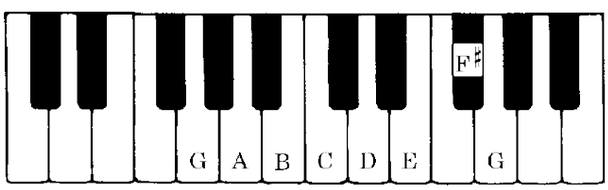
As a group, make a list of five melodies that most class members know well. These can be themes from your favorite television shows or songs from the movies, as well as melodies from classical, popular, or folk music. Two things are important in making your choices. The first is to choose only songs in major keys (your teacher will help you if necessary). The second is to choose melodies that the class knows well and can sing.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

As a group, sing the melodies you have chosen and identify the tonic of each by sound. Notice how often and in what places the tonic occurs. Are these places restful or active?

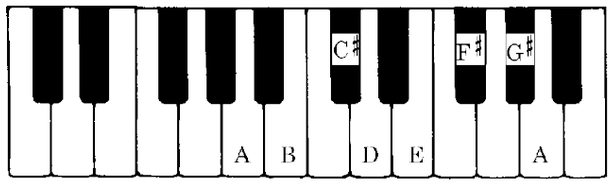
After you have sung each melody and located the tonic, sing a major scale beginning on the tonic of that melody. Do you notice the relationship between the scale and the melody?

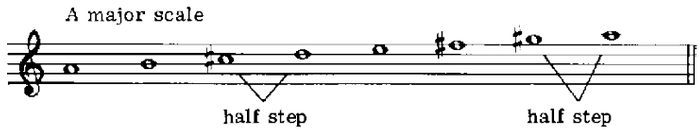
The pattern of whole steps and half steps that produces a major scale can be moved to any other beginning pitch and, if the pattern is kept intact, will form a different major scale. In all, there are fifteen different major scales—seven that use flatted notes, seven that use sharped notes, and one natural scale. In the G major

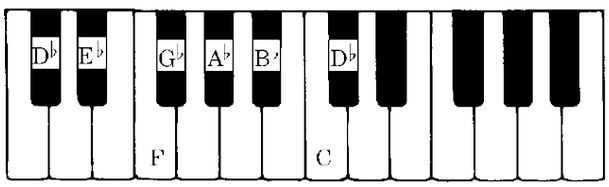


seventh degrees and the half step between the seventh and first degrees:

# # #


C♯
F♯
G♯
A
B
D
E
A


A major scale
half step
half step


D♭
E♭
G♭
A♭
B♭
D♭
F
C

D♭ major scale
half step
half step

produce the correct pattern:

In the following example, five flats are required to produce the correct pattern of whole steps and half steps.

As you practice writing scales, remember that as long as you reproduce the pattern of whole steps and half steps exactly, the result will be a major scale, regardless of the pitch you begin on. Remember, also, that major scales are alphabetical sequences of pitches. All major and minor scales use only diatonic, not chromatic, half steps.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Keyboard

The keyboard can be a valuable aid in helping you understand scale construction. The whole-step and half-step patterns and the scales that these patterns form can be visualized and recalled more easily when practiced on the keyboard.

Practice playing and singing one-octave, ascending major scales starting from the following pitches. It is not necessary to use the proper scale fingering at this time; however, you should not use just one finger. A good rule is to avoid using a thumb on a black key. (If you prefer to learn the correct fingerings now, they are given in Appendix E.)

1. G major
2. D major
3. G♭ major
6. B♭ major
7. D♭ major
8. F♯ major

5. E^{f} major

10. A major

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 87

MUSIC IN THE Major

Keyboard

Practice playing and singing one-octave, descending major scales from each of the following pitches. It is not necessary to pay attention to the correct fingerings at this time, but they are given in Appendix E if you wish to use them.

1. F major
8. G♯ major

#

4. B major
5. A major
6. E major
7. C major
11. D♯ major
12. E♯ major
13. A♯ major
14. B♯ major

Sight Singing

The ability to sing melodies at sight is a valuable tool for both the professional musician and the serious amateur. A number of methods exist that help develop this ability. Probably the most common system, called movable do, assigns a specific syllable to each pitch of the scale. In this system, the tonic of a scale is always do. Study the following illustration and practice singing the major scale, both ascending and descending, using the syllables. Then, practice singing the exercises that follow the illustration. These exercises may seem difficult at first, but stick with them—they are intended to help you become familiar with the syllables in various combinations.

1.
do re mi
re mi fa
mi fa sol
fa sol la
sol la ti
la ti do
ti do re do;
*
do ti la
ti la sol
la sol fa
sol fa mi
fa mi re
mi re do
re do ti do

2.
do mi
re fa
mi sol
fa la
sol ti
la do
ti re do;
*
do la
ti sol
la fa
sol mi
fa re
mi do
re ti do

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 88

MUSIC IN

Although movable do is perhaps the most commonly used sight-singing system, it is not the only one in use today. Others include substituting the numbers 1 to 7 for the scale degrees, or using the actual pitch names. In fact, many schools teach a form of sight singing called fixed do. In this system, C is always do, D is always re, etc. Consequently, your teacher may prefer that you use an alternative system from the one recommended here.

MUSIC IN

Sight Singing

Sing each of the following melodies, using a neutral syllable like la, the letter names of the pitches, or the scale-degree numbers. Locate the tonic by sound. Then write the sight-singing syllables below each note. Finally, notate the major scale on which each melody is built.

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 89

MUSIC IN

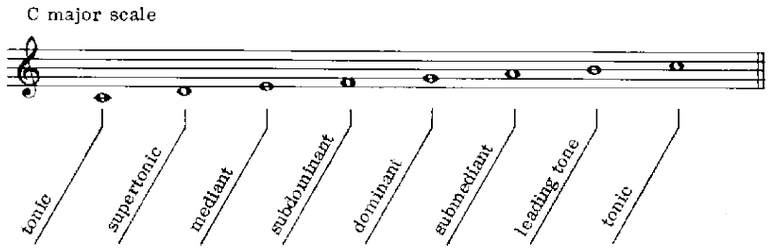
T và ÉÇ

Elements of the Major Scale

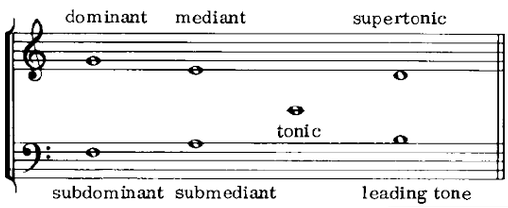
Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 90

Naming Scale Degrees

Each scale degree has a specific name. The scale degrees, in ascending order, are: tonic, supertonic, mediant, subdominant, dominant, submediant, leading tone, and tonic. These scale-degree names always remain the same regardless of the octave in which the pitch of that name appears.



At first, these names might appear arbitrary. If, however, you consider the tonic as the tonal center of gravity, then the names logically describe the relationship between the scale degrees. Notice how the tonic becomes the central pitch when the scale degrees are arranged in the following way:



CLASS WORK

Name the following scale degrees.

1. third degree _____
2. fifth degree _____
3. sixth degree _____
4. first degree _____
5. seventh degree _____
6. second degree _____
7. fourth degree _____

It may seem momentarily confusing to you that the individual pitches of a scale may be referred to in more than one way. The following chart may be helpful in clearing up the confusion. The pitch names on the far left are an ascending C major scale; the terms to the right indicate three different ways each particular scale degree can be referred to or labeled. Although the third option (numbers) has not been previously discussed in this book (the concept is easily understood), it is used frequently in written analytical discussions of music, and all musicians should become familiar with it.

C	do	tonic	1ˆ
D	re	supertonic	2ˆ
E	mi	mediant	3ˆ
F	fa	subdominant	4ˆ
G	sol	dominant	5ˆ
A	la	submediant	6ˆ
B	ti	leading tone	7ˆ

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 91

MUSIC IN ACTION

Playing Scales

Instrumentalists should be able to play one- and two-octave major scales, both ascending and descending. If you cannot do this, you should begin at once to develop this facility. Improving your ability to play scales will be of immediate benefit, since many of the patterns of tonal music are directly related to the scales on which they are based. To begin, practice the easier scales slowly and evenly, concentrating on accuracy and quality of tone. After you have mastered these, move on to more difficult scales.

MUSIC IN ACTION

Ear Training

Sing in your mind any of the following melodies that you know. Put a check mark by the ones that are based on a major scale. Then, as a class, sing aloud all the melodies you can. If you don't know a particular melody, listen as it is sung and decide if it is in a major key.

1. "The Simpsons" TV show theme _____
2. "Titanic" theme _____
3. "South Park" TV show theme _____
4. "Star Wars" theme _____
5. "2001" theme _____
6. "Moon River" _____

Ear Training

All musicians need to hear music as completely as they can. This involves listening not to the emotional content but to the actual mechanics of the music. Identifying the instruments, distinguishing the number of lines or voices, and accurately notating rhythms are all part of developing your ear. But when most people think of training themselves to hear better, they think first of pitch and pitch discrimination.

Some people have excellent ears. That is, they have an astonishing ability to make extremely fine aural discriminations. Some people can even name pitches as they hear them played or sung. This ability to recognize pitches is often called *perfect pitch*. Although there is nothing inherently "perfect" about it since the pitch standard has varied from century to century and from place to place over time. Furthermore, there are degrees of ability within perfect pitch—some people can name all the pitches in a cluster of notes played on the piano, others can only name the notes when played individually, or on a particular instrument.

Although perfect pitch cannot be learned, a similar ability, however, can be developed with practice. This ability is called *relative pitch*. Relative pitch involves learning the sounds of the various intervals and applying this knowledge when listening and performing. People with highly developed relative pitch can also name notes that they hear, if they are given a beginning pitch. If you improvise or play jazz, rock, or pop music by ear, you may already have good relative pitch. But it can be made even better with practice. If you want to play by ear, write music, or just better understand the music you like to listen to, remember that these abilities can be developed and expanded with practice.

Ear training is the term musicians give to the process of developing their ability to hear better. We have already done some of this in the Music in Action sections of this book, and we will do more from time to time. If this is a skill that you feel

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 92

you need to develop, keep in mind that progress may be slow at first, and success may, as with most skills, seem to come in plateaus. Keep in mind too that everyone begins at a different level of ability. You should not be discouraged by other people's abilities. If you work consistently, you will see your own abilities grow and develop.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Ear Training

Your teacher or another member of the class will play a major scale. Then he or she will play one pitch that will be either the tonic or the dominant from that scale. In the spaces below, indicate which pitch is being played.

1. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 6. _____
3. _____ 7. _____
4. _____ 8. _____

Now try the same thing using three pitches—tonic, dominant, and sub mediant.

1. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 6. _____
3. _____ 7. _____
4. _____ 8. _____

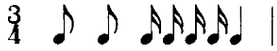
Finally, see if you can identify one of four different pitches—tonic, domi nant, submediant, or subdominant.

1. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 6. _____
3. _____ 7. _____
4. _____ 8. _____

Rhythm Revisited: Beams

You may be surprised to find a section on rhythm in a chapter on major scales, but just because we have completed the chapter on rhythm doesn't mean we can forget about it and move on. Rhythm is too important and too fundamental to music to learn superficially and settle for less than the best you can do. And the best we can do, as we all know, comes from repeated practice. Look at the average teenager's skills with videogames, skate boards, and cell phones to see the results of continued concentrated practice. Becoming a better musician works the same way. And for the vast majority of us, it's the only way. Continuing to develop skills in both rhythm and pitch requires your continued attention if you're going to get better. So from time to time, we will revisit rhythm, both to learn something new and to practice skills we already know.

Although it is still common in vocal music (where it is important to align notes precisely with the lyrics) to see individual eighth notes or sixteenth notes with sep arate flags, in instrumental music these notes rarely appear individually. Instead, two or more eighth or sixteenth notes will be grouped together, according to beats, with a connecting beam. A vocal rhythmic pattern such as



Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 93

will appear in instrumental music as

Notice that eighth notes are grouped by a single beam, and sixteenth notes by a double beam.

When connecting notes with beams, it is important in all but the simplest pat terns to begin each beat with a separate beam. A musician trains his or her eye to see such patterns of beats within a measure. A poorly written arrangement, such as the following, is momentarily confusing:

This pattern is confusing rhythmically because the beaming has hidden the second, third, and fourth beats of the measure. The following shows a much clearer way of writing the same pattern:

Here, each of the four beats beings with a new beam. Remember, the reason we beam notes together is to make the rhythmic patterns easier to recognize, not more difficult.

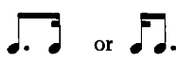
Extra care must be taken when beaming irregular divisions of the beat, partic ularly dotted rhythm patterns, because these can be especially tricky. First, decide whether the pattern is in simple or compound meter. Knowing this will tell you whether the basic beat is divided into subgroups of two or three. Second, try to determine where each basic beat begins. This is more or less a process of adding up the note values. Third, combine groups of notes so that each basic beat is beamed together. Make sure, however, that you do not combine two beats into one group. Each beat should be beamed separately.

The following examples may make the above explanation clear. In a simple meter, such as $\frac{2}{4}$, the basic beat is the quarter note. This quarter note can be divid ed into two eighth notes or four sixteenth notes.

But the quarter note can also be divided into any combination of eighth notes and sixteenth notes that total one beat. In simple meters, for instance, there are three ways that the combination of one eighth note and two sixteenth notes can be written.

Notice that in each case the combination of notes is equal to one beat in simple meter. Notice also that the beaming (one beam for eighth notes, two for sixteenth notes) clearly indicates the beginning of each beat.

The beaming of dotted notes in simple meter is simply an extension of this same principle. Since a dotted eighth note is the equivalent of three sixteenth notes, the dotted-eighth-and-sixteenth pattern is frequently found and can be written one of two ways:

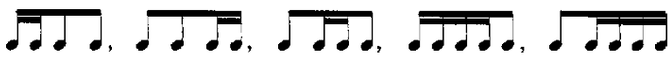


Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 94

Notice that in both cases a complete beat is combined under one beam.

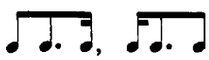
A similar process is employed in compound meter, with one major difference: The basic beat is divided into three pulses rather than two. In a compound meter such as $\frac{6}{8}$, the basic beat is normally felt as two pulses per measure, and the note representing this beat, the dotted quarter note, is divisible into three eighth notes or six sixteenth notes.

As in simple meter, any combination of eighth notes and sixteenth notes that adds up to a complete beat should be beamed together. The following are some of the more common combinations.



Similarly, dotted rhythms in compound meter are also grouped by beat. The common dotted rhythm pattern in compound meter is:

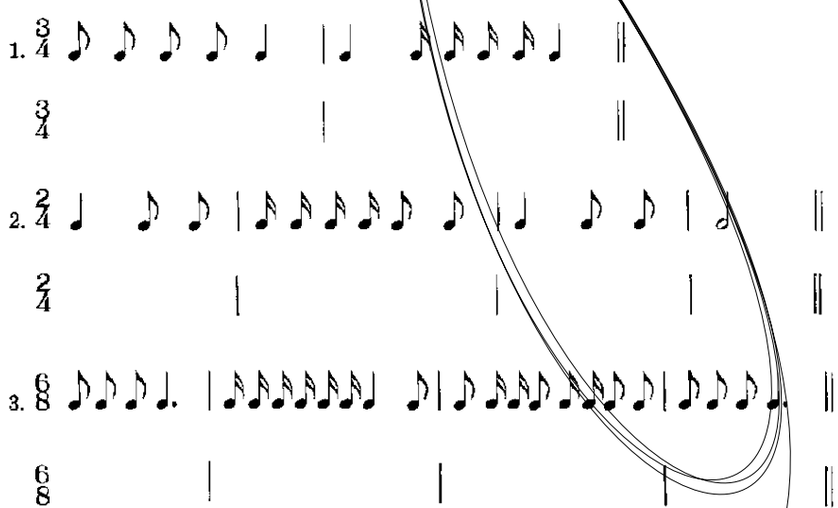
The following two patterns also occur from time to time, but less frequently.



In all cases, whether in simple or compound meter, it is important to keep the beginning of each beat clearly visible by beaming together all the notes that occur within that beat.

CLASS WORK

As a class, clap and count each of the rhythms given below. Then, rewrite them by beaming the eighth notes and sixteenth notes together, taking care not to place beams across beats. Next, clap the patterns you have written. Does being able to see clearly the beginning of each beat make it easier to read the patterns?



Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 95

Focus

The major scale is known to all of us. In fact, it may be too familiar. Most people over the age of ten can sing a major scale, complete with the correct syllables, thanks to the musical The Sound of Music. But this very familiarity may be a prob lem for beginning music students, who may be led to believe that the major scale is a simple entity—a stepping-stone to more interesting musical material.

You should not allow yourself to become complacent about scales, however. A thorough knowledge of scales is basic to understanding and performing music. The major scale seems familiar because so many of the melodies and so much of the har mony you have heard throughout your life are based on it. To deal theoretically with music based on major scales, you must both understand the major scale as an interval pattern and acquire skill and facility in writing, playing, and singing this common pattern.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Sight Singing

Below are several melodies in major keys from Appendix D. Practice singing these melodies, both on la and with moveable do. Once you are familiar with the melodies, practice playing them at the keyboard.

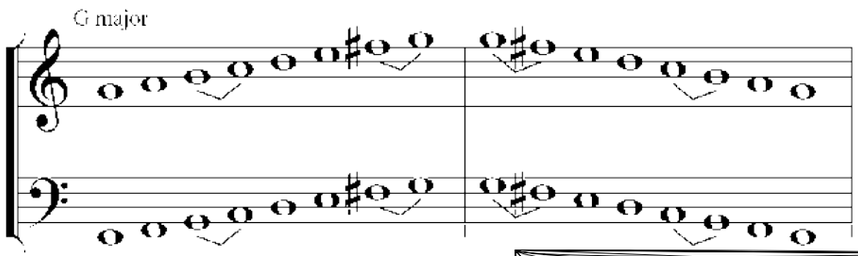
Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 96

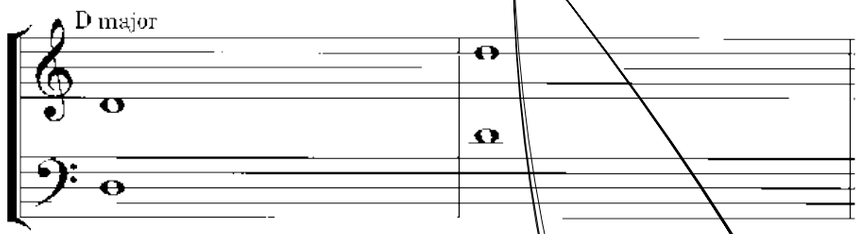
Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:13 PM Page 97

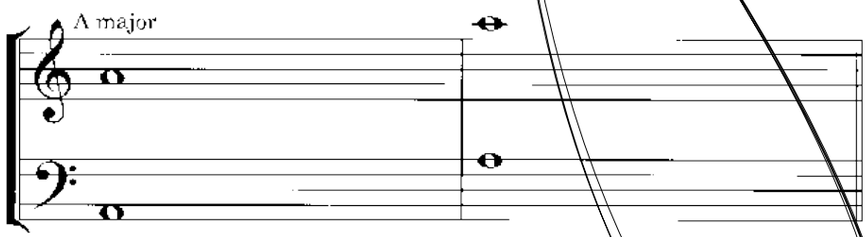
Practice Materials 5-1

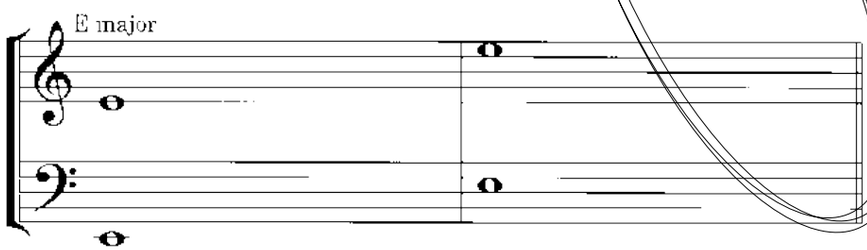
Write ascending and descending major scales, in both treble clef and bass clef, from each starting pitch. When writing major scales, there should be only one pitch of each letter name. For example, it is incorrect to have both G and G in the same
♯

EXAMPLE:



1. 

2. 

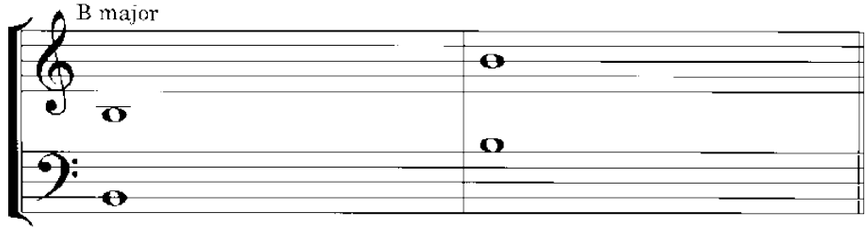
3. 

arranged so that each succeeding scale requires only one additional sharp.)

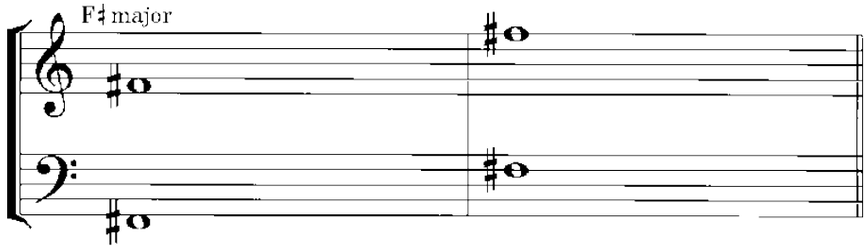
When you have written the scales, check that the half steps occur between the third and fourth degrees and between the seventh and first degrees. Indicate the half steps for each scale. A keyboard is given to help you visualize the whole steps and half steps.

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 98

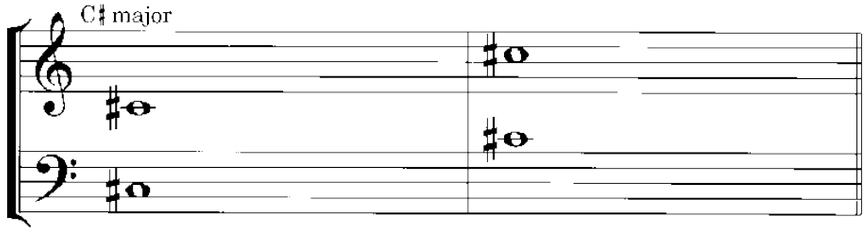
4. B major



5. F♯ major



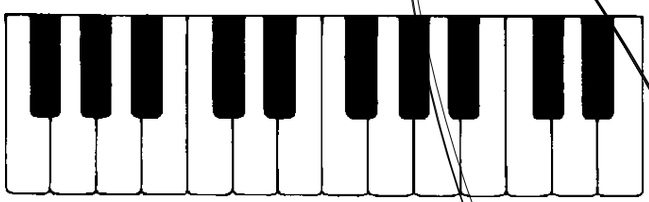
6. C♯ major



Practice Materials 5.2

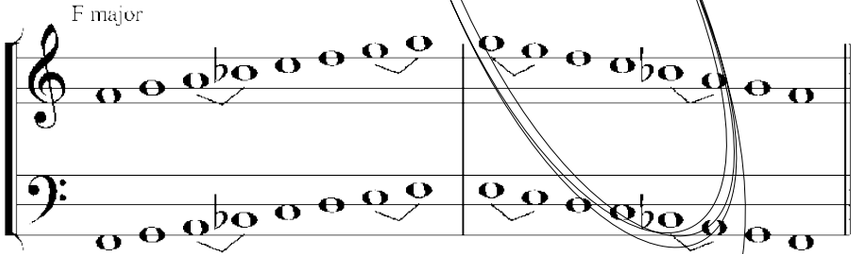
Write ascending and descending major scales from each starting pitch. (The sequence of scales in this exercise is arranged so that each succeeding scale requires one additional flat.)

When you have written the scales, check that the half steps occur between the third and fourth degrees and between the seventh and first degrees. Indicate the half steps for each scale. A keyboard is given to help you visualize the intervals.

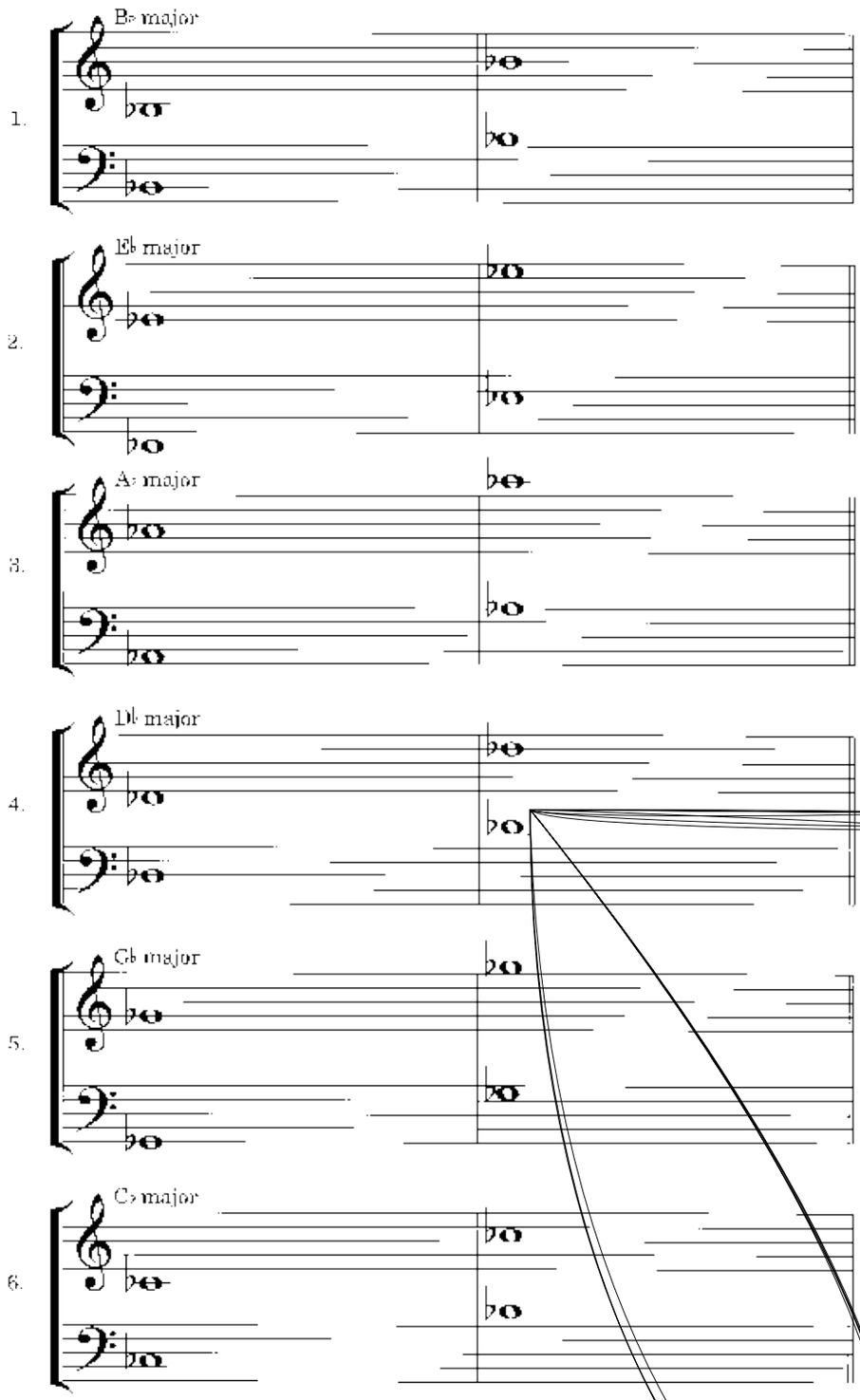


EXAMPLE:

F major



Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 99



Practice Materials 5-3

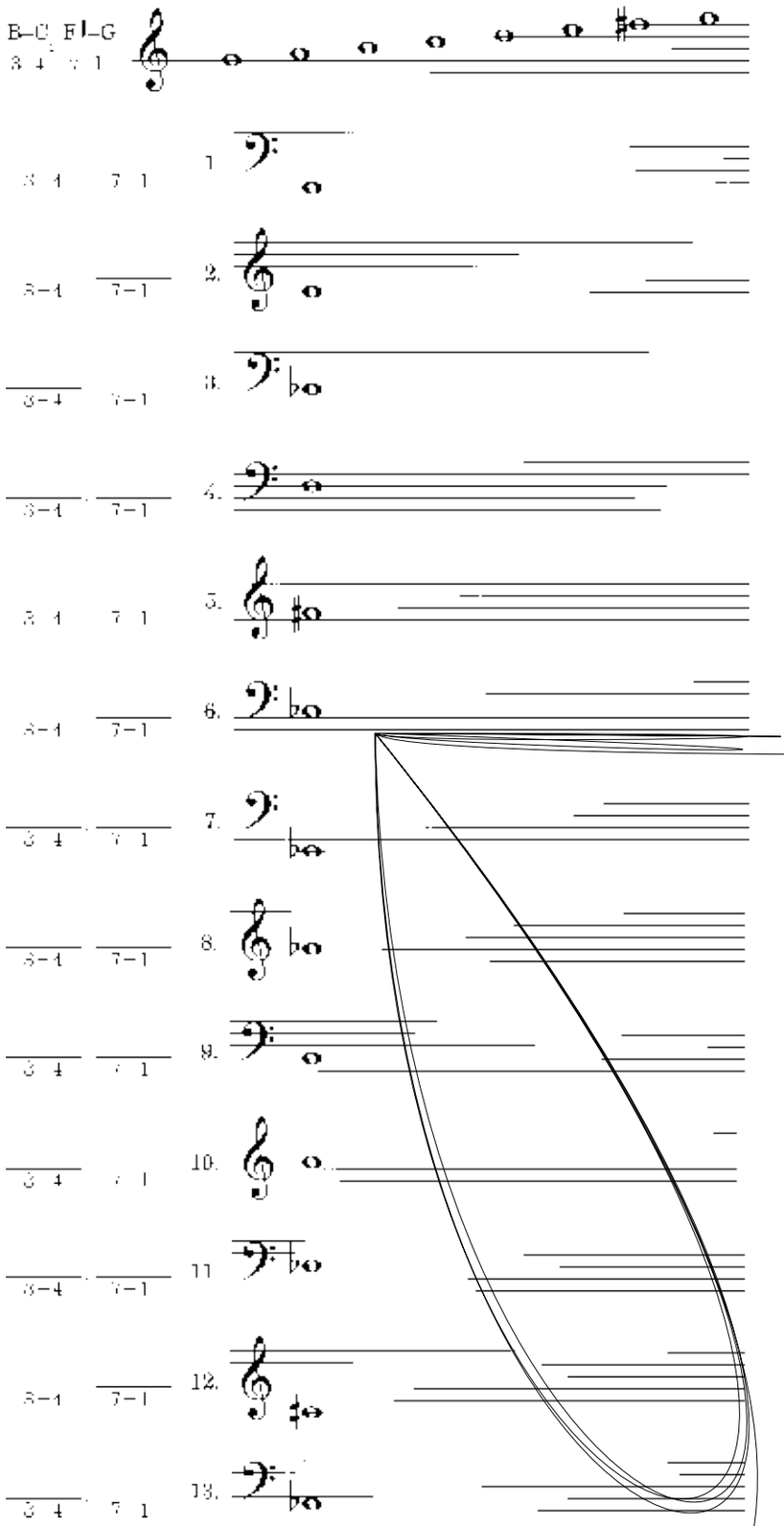
Write ascending major scales starting from the given tonic pitches. These are the same scales as in Practice Materials 5-1 and 5-2, but here they are in no particular order. Remember to use only one pitch of each letter name. When you have written each scale, bracket the third and fourth scale degrees and the seventh and first degrees and write their names in the chart to the left. Are both intervals half steps?

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 100

PRACTICE

EXAMPLE:

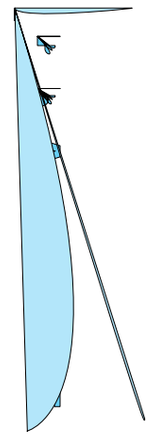
Half steps



Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 101

Practice Materials 5-4

Starting from the given tonic pitches, write major scales in descending form. This exercise is essentially the same as Practice Materials 5-3, except it is in reverse—that is, you must start on the eighth scale degree and work down—7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2—to the first degree. Remember to use only one pitch of each letter name. Remember also that the pitches of a major scale remain the same whether the scale is in ascending or descending form. When you have written each scale, bracket the half-steps and write the names of the first and seventh scale degrees and the fourth and third degrees in the chart to the left.

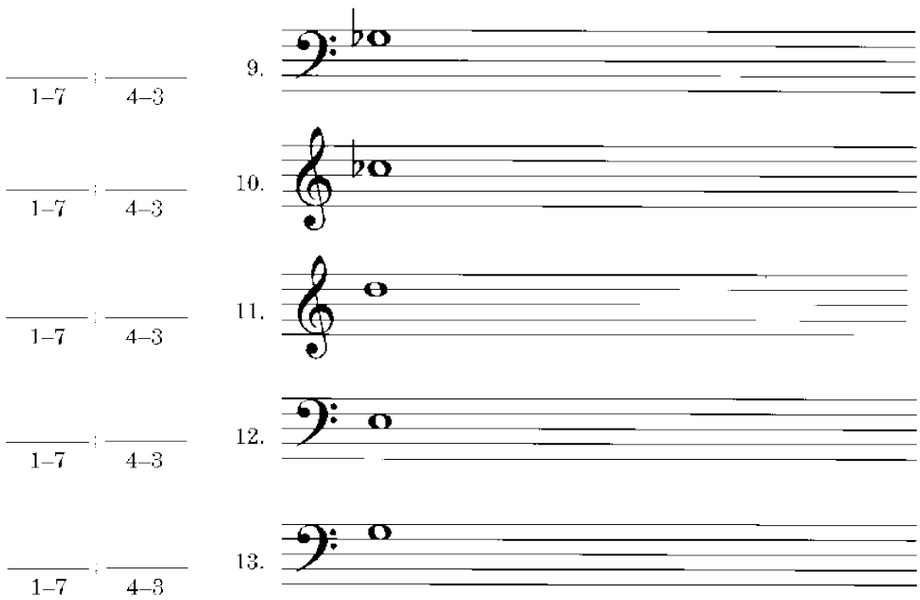


EXAMPLE:

Half steps

1. 1–7 : 4–3
2. 1–7 : 4–3
3. 1–7 : 4–3
4. 1–7 : 4–3
5. 1–7 : 4–3
6. 1–7 : 4–3
7. 1–7 : 4–3
8. 1–7 : 4–3

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 102



Practice Materials 5-5

Spell the following ascending major scales using letter names and any necessary accidentals. Mark the position of half steps as shown in the example. Practice spelling major scales, beginning on any pitch.

EXAMPLE: ___A ___B ___C$_s$ ___D ___E ___F$_s$ ___G$_s$ ___A

1. ___^{f}A ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
2. ___C ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
3. ___^{f}E ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
4. ___D ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
5. ___F ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
6. ___^{s}C ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
7. ___B ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
8. ___^{f}C ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
9. ___^{f}B ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
10. ___G ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
11. ___^{f}D ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
12. ___^{f}G ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
13. ___F$_s$ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
14. ___E ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

Practice Materials 5-6

Identify by letter name the following scale degrees.

1. mediant of the F major scale _____
2. supertonic of the D major scale _____

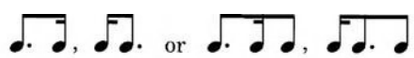
Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 103

3. subdominant of the ^{f}B major scale _____
4. leading tone of the G major scale _____
5. mediant of the ^{f}D major scale _____
6. subdominant of the ^{f}A major scale _____
7. mediant of the C major scale _____
8. submediant of the D major scale _____
9. supertonic of the F major scale _____
10. subdominant of the ^{s}C major scale _____
11. mediant of the B major scale _____
12. submediant of the ^{f}C major scale _____

Practice Materials 5-7

Complete the following:

#

EXAMPLE:  or

1.

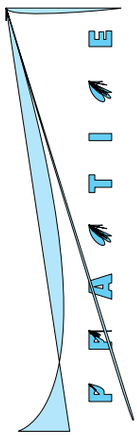
2.

2. C is the submediant of the _____ major scale.
3. E^{f} is the subdominant of the _____ major scale.
4. D is the mediant of the _____ major scale.
5. A is the leading tone of the _____ major scale.
6. B^{f} is the subdominant of the _____ major scale.
7. F_{s} is the dominant of the _____ major scale.
8. E is the subdominant of the _____ major scale.
9. G is the mediant of the _____ major scale.
10. D is the submediant of the _____ major scale.
11. C is the leading tone of the _____ major scale.
12. F is the dominant of the _____ major scale.

Practice Materials 5-8

Rewrite the following rhythmic patterns by beaming the eighth notes and sixteenth notes together. Remember not to place beams across beats. Remember also that dot ted eighth and sixteenth notes that occur within one beat are joined in one of the ways shown in the example.

Duckworth_Music9e_05.qxd 11/17/05 10:14 PM Page 104



3. 2/4 ♪ | ♩. ♪ | ♪ ♪ ♪ ♪ | 𝅗𝅥 ‖

2/4 | | | ‖

4. 3/4 ♩. ♪ ♪ ♪ | ♪. ♪♩ ♪ ♪ | ♩. ♪ ♩ ‖

3/4 | | ‖

5. 6/8 ♩ ♪♩ ♪♪♪♩ ♪ | ♪. ♪♪♪♪♪ | ♪. ♪♪♩. ‖

6/8 | | | ‖

6. 4/4 ♪. ♪♪. ♪♩. ♪ | ♪ ♪♪♪♪ 𝅗𝅥 ‖

4/4 | ‖

7. 9/8 ♩. ♩. ♪♪♪ | ♩ ♪♪♪♪♪. ♪♪ | ♪♪♪♪♩ ♩. ‖

9/8 | | ‖

8. 2/4 ♪. ♪♪ ♪♪ | ♪♪♪ ♪. ♪ | ♪ ♪♪♪. ♪ | 𝅗𝅥 ‖

2/4 | | | ‖

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 105

CHAPTER SIX

Major Key Signatures

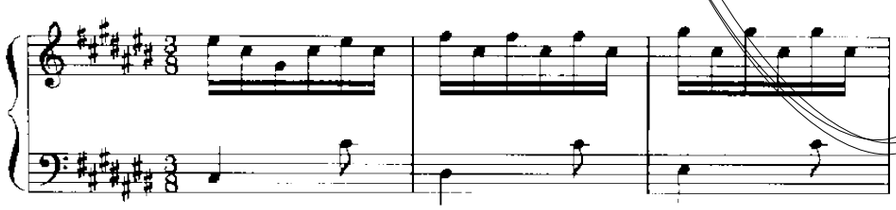
The Key Signature

In the previous chapter, you were asked to use individual accidentals when writing scales. This practice is useful in learning scale construction, but it makes performing, particularly sight-reading, extremely complicated. Consider the difficulty reading a piece of music in a key in which every pitch has a sharp sign, as in the following example.

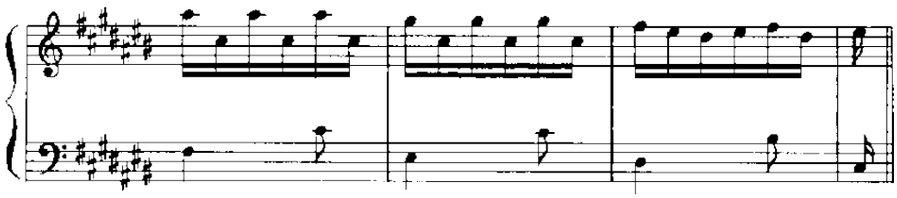
Bach: "Preludio III" from *Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book I
(key of C♯ major written without key signature)

Since every scale has the same consistent interval structure, a musical short hand has been developed to indicate, just once for an entire composition, the pitches requiring accidentals. It is called the key signature. The key signature is a group ing, at the beginning of each staff, of all the accidentals found in the scale on which the piece is based. The following illustration shows how a key signature would be used with the previous example.

Bach: "Preludio III" from *Well-Tempered Clavier*, Book I
(with key signature)



Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 106

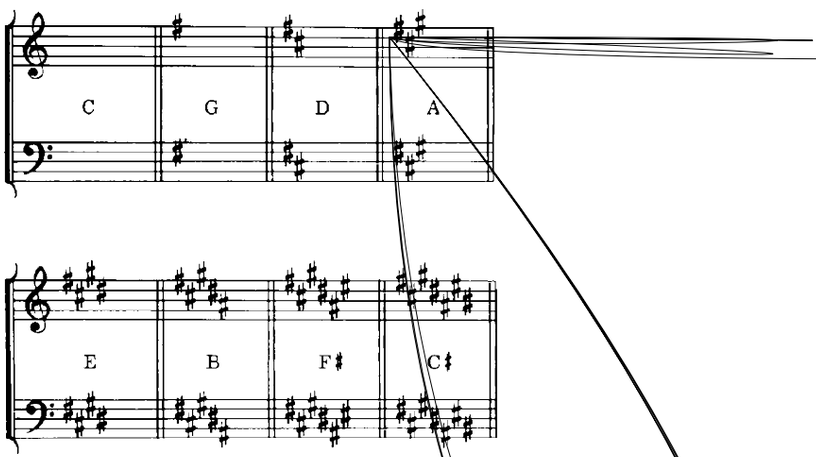


An important point to remember is that an accidental appearing in the key signature applies to that note in all octaves. For instance, an F♯ in the key signature indicates that all Fs encountered in the piece are to be played or sung as F♯s. A similar rule holds for chromatic alterations within a measure. That is, once an accidental is introduced in a measure, it remains in force for the entire measure unless cancelled by a natural sign. But unlike an accidental in the key signature, an accidental within a measure affects only the same note in the same register and in the same voice. This is an important distinction between the sharps or flats of a key signature and those introduced as accidentals.

Sharp Keys

The number and placement of sharps and flats in a key signature is not arbitrary; there is a definite order that makes key signatures easy to read and remember. The following shows the order for the sharp major keys. Study it carefully and learn it.

Key Signatures: Sharp Major Keys

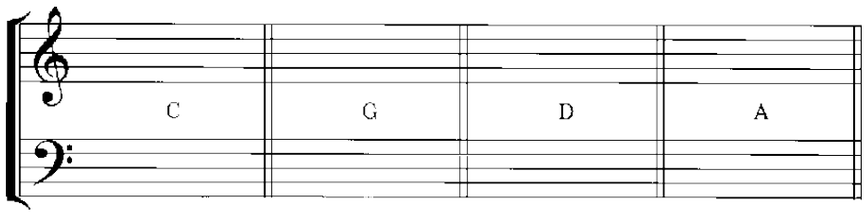


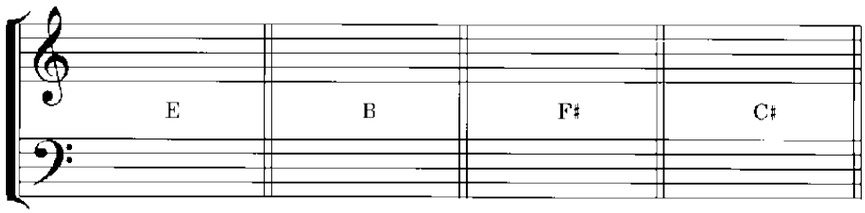
Notice the invariable pattern for sharp key signatures. If there is only one sharp, that sharp is always F♯; if two sharps, they are always F♯ and C♯, and so on. The complete order of sharps is F♯–C♯–G♯–D♯–A♯–E♯–B♯. You should learn both the order and the location of the sharps in both the treble and bass clefs. Fortunately, once you've learned them, you know them; they never change.

CLASS WORK

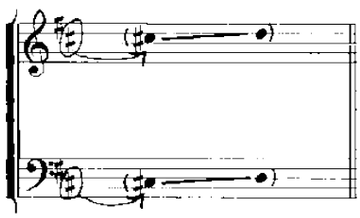
On the stave below, copy the pattern of sharps for the sharp major keys. Make sure that the sharps are clearly centered, either on a line or in a space. Also make sure that you are placing each of them in the right octave.

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 107





In identifying major key signatures that use sharps, the key is always the pitch a half step above the last sharp indicated in the signature. This is because the last added sharp is always the leading tone of that key.



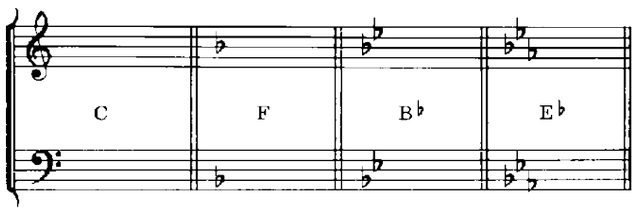
This method of identifying sharp keys is useful, but you should also memorize the number of sharps associated with each major key—information that is given in the following chart. Study the chart carefully until you can identify the sharp key signatures using either method.

Major key	Number of sharps
C	0
G	1
D	2
A	3
E	4
B	5
F_s	6
C_s	7

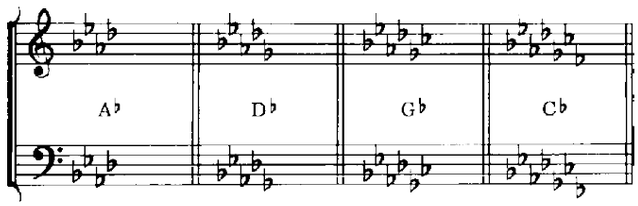
Flat Keys

The order of flats in major key signatures is as follows:

Key Signatures: Flat Major Keys



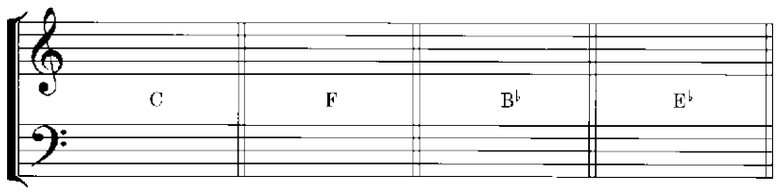
Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 108

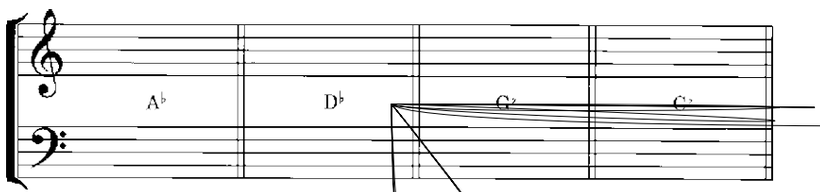


Flat key signatures, like sharp key signatures, have a consistent order and location on the staff. Notice that the last added flat is always the subdominant of that key. The complete order of flats is B^{f}–E^{f}–A^{f}–D^{f}–G^{f}–C^{f}–F . Both the order and the location of the flats should be learned for both the treble and bass clefs.

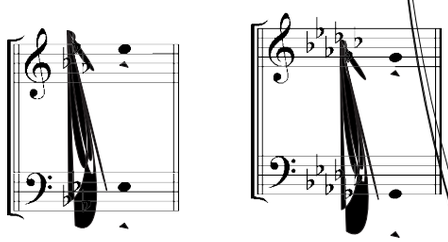
CLASS WORK

On the staves provided, copy the pattern of flats for the flat major keys. Make cer tain that the flats are clearly centered on a line or in a space, and that they are in the correct octave.





When identifying major key signatures that use flats, we cannot use the system that we learned for major keys that use sharps. Instead, with the flat key signatures the name of the key is the same as the name of the next-to-last flat. (Obviously, this does not apply to the key of F major, since F major has only one flat.)



As with the sharp key signatures, this method of identification should merely supplement the information contained in the following chart.

Major key	Number of flats
C	0
F	1
B^{f}	2
E^{f}	3
A^{f}	4
D^{f}	5
G^{f}	6
C^{f}	7

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 10:16 PM Page 109

Enharmonic Keys

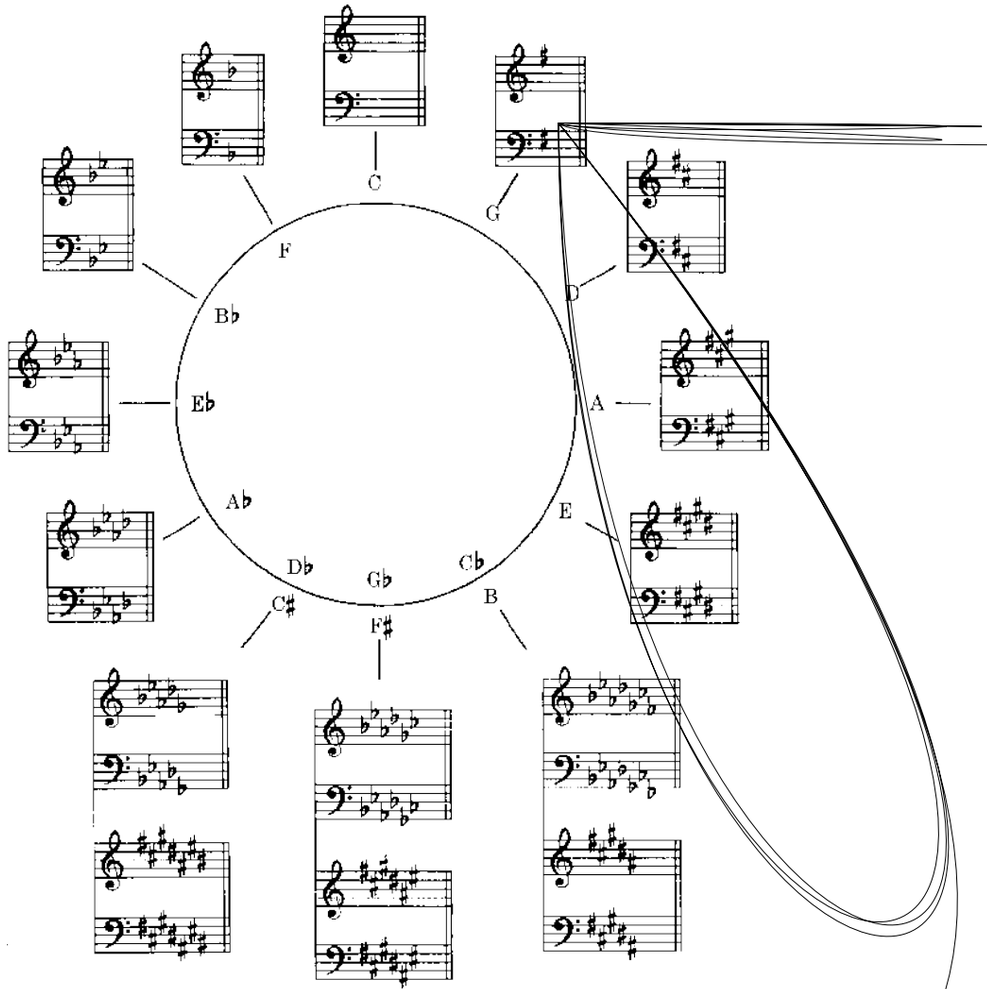
You may have noticed that three of the sharp major scales (B, F , and C) are enharmonic with three of the flat major scales (C , G , and D). Thus, although they are written differently, they sound the same.

B (5 s) sounds like C (7 s)
F (6 s) sounds like G (6 s)
C (7 s) sounds like D (5 s)

In actual practice, the key of B major is found more frequently than the key of C major; the keys of F major and G major occur with about equal frequency; and the key of D major appears more often than does the key of C major.

The Circle of Fifths: Major Keys

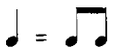
The interval of the perfect fifth—an interval of seven half steps that we will study in the next chapter—is important in understanding a special relationship among major key signatures. If the major key signatures are arranged in order of increas ing number of sharps, they progress, one to the next, by a perfect fifth. Thus, C major has no sharps (or flats), G major (a perfect fifth higher) has one sharp, D major (a perfect fifth above G) has two sharps, and so on. In the flat keys, the pro gression by perfect fifths works in reverse order, by the number of flats. (The circle of fifths for minor keys is discussed in Chapter 8.)

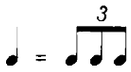


Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 110

Rhythm Revisited: Triplets and Duplets

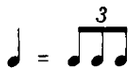
Sometimes, a note in simple meter is subdivided as if it were in compound meter. That is, a note normally subdivided into two equal parts is now momentarily subdivided into three equal parts. This is called borrowed division.


normal subdivision



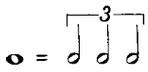
borrowed division

The 3 above the beam indicates that three even eighth notes occur within the time normally taken by two. When a borrowed division of this type occurs, it is called a triplet. A note of any value may be subdivided into a triplet. The three most com mon are:



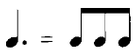
eighth-note triplet

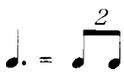
quarter-note triplet



half-note triplet

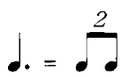
Less frequently, a note in compound meter is subdivided as if it were in simple meter:


normal subdivision

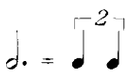


borrowed division

When this occurs, it is called a duplet. The two most common duplets are:



eighth-note duplet



quarter-note duplet

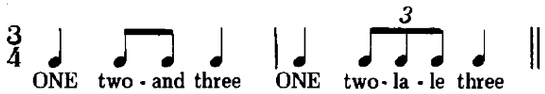
Notice that (1) in both duplets and triplets a numeral is used to alert the performer to an unusual subdivision, and (2) where no beam exists, a bracket indicates exact ly which notes belong to the triplet or duplet figure.

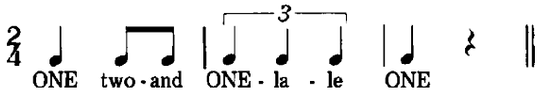
Triplets and duplets are best employed as rhythmic exceptions, to be used spar ingly in a particular piece of music. If more frequent use is necessary, it makes more sense for the entire piece to be written in the corresponding compound or simple meter.

A Counting Method for Triplets and Duplets

The way most people count triplets is to momentarily shift their thinking from sim ple meter into compound meter. Notice in the following example that the syllables change from those of simple meter to those for compound meter at the point where the triplet occurs.

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 111

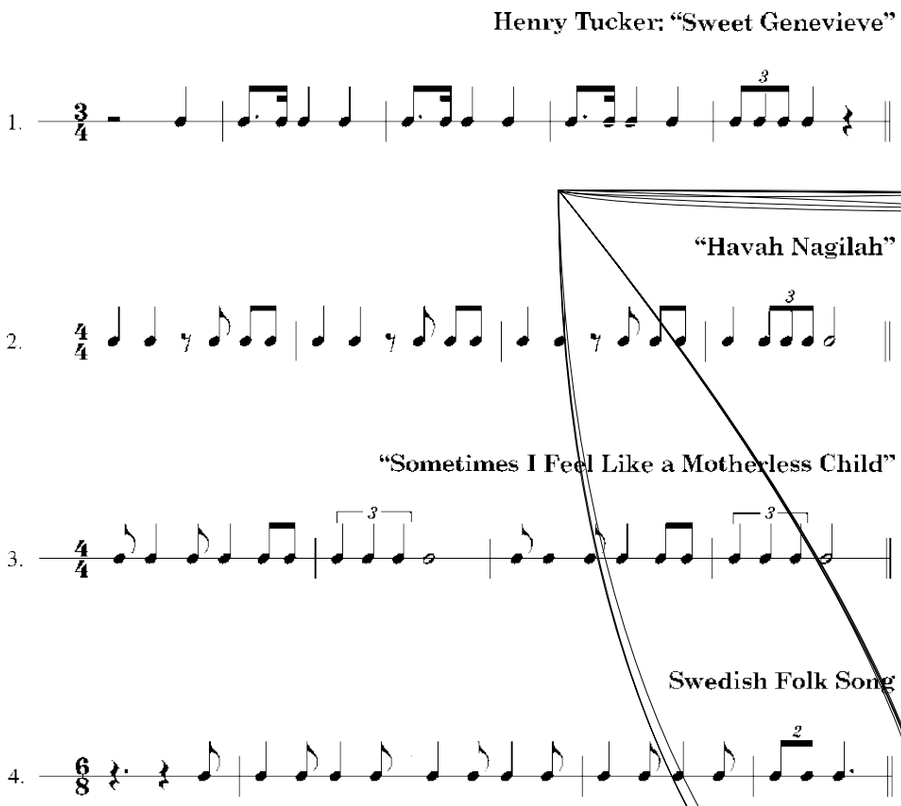




Duple rhythms work the same way, only in reverse. Duple rhythms normally occur in compound meters. So at the point where they occur, the thinking (and the sylla bles) change from those for compound meter to those for simple meter.

CLASS WORK

As a class, clap and count the following rhythmic examples. Pay particular atten tion to the triplet or duplet, and be sure to switch syllables for it. Remember, always keep the basic beat steady.



Focus

If you play an instrument, you have undoubtedly had the experience of playing a wrong note when you momentarily forgot the key signature. This happens to every one. At such a time, you might have felt that key signatures are a nuisance, and

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 112

that music would be easier to play without them. But this is not the case. Without key signatures, most music would be sprinkled with an incredible number of accidentals, and the resulting clutter would make the music more difficult to read and perform, not easier. And although key signatures are often perplexing at the beginning, they never change, and are quickly mastered with practice. As you become comfortable with the shorthand of key signatures you will begin to find them a help rather than a hindrance, and it will become impossible to imagine reading tonal music without them.

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 113

Practice Materials 6-1

Identify the major key represented by each of the following sharp key signatures. Begin by drawing a circle around the sharp that represents the leading tone of that key.

Practice Materials 6-2

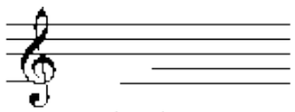
Identify the major key represented by each of the following flat key signatures.

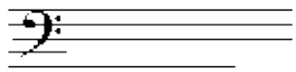
Practice Materials 6-3

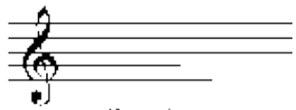
Write out the indicated major key signatures, using either sharps or flats as required. A helpful mnemonic device for keeping all the sharps and flats in order in your mind is to remember that the order of flats—B–E–A–D–G–C–F—is the reverse of the order of sharps—F–C–G–D–A–E–B.

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 114

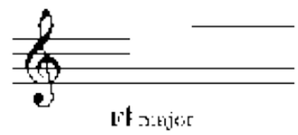
PRACTICE

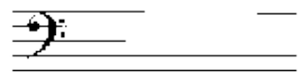
1. 
A major

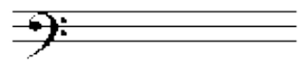
2. 
E major

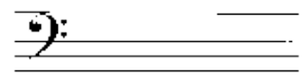
3. 
B♭ major

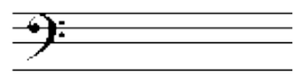
4.
D♭ major

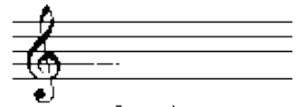
5. 
F major

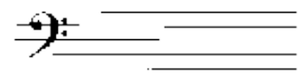
6. 
A♭ major

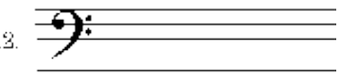
7. 
F♯ major

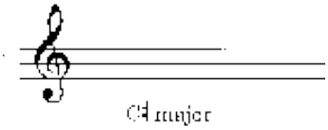
8. 
C♯ major

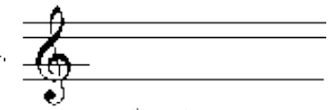
9. 
D major

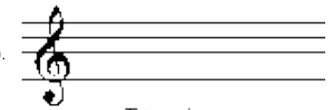
10. 
G♭ major

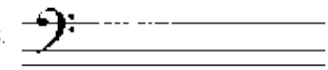
11. 
E♭ major

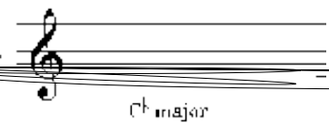
12. 
B major

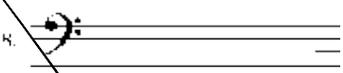
13. 
C♯ major

14. 
C major

15. 
F♯ major

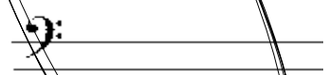
16. 
G♭ major

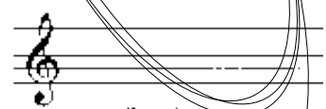
17. 
C♭ major

18. 
G major

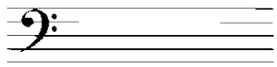
19.
A♭ major

20.
E♭ major

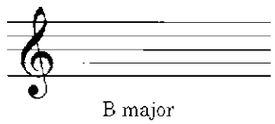
21. 
A major

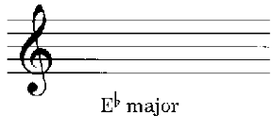
22. 
D major

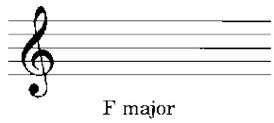
Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 115

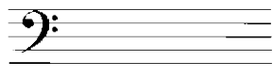
23. 
F♯ major

24.
C♭ major

25. 
B major

26. 
E♭ major

27. 
F major

28. 
E major

Practice Materials 6-4

Identify the correct major key, based on the number of sharps or flats indicated.

1. three sharps _____
2. six sharps _____
3. one sharp _____
4. four sharps _____
5. three flats _____
6. six flats _____
7. two sharps _____
8. two flats _____
9. seven flats _____
10. one flat _____
11. five sharps _____
12. five flats _____
13. four flats _____
14. seven sharps _____

Duckworth_Music9e_06.qxd 12/5/05 3:43 PM Page 116

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 117

CHAPTER SEVEN

Intervals

Musical intervals require a lot of practice and memorization. Must we really understand them in order to understand tonal music? This is a good question that deserves to be answered. Look at it this way: Intervals measure musical distances. How could you be a musician without knowing how to do that? Think of your work with intervals as learning the basic language skills of tonal music. It's a step you can't afford to slight. Intervals are fundamental. Besides, with the right approach, learning intervals can be quite manageable.

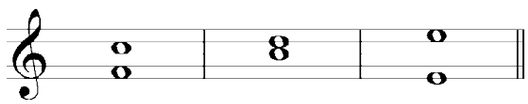
Here is something else to consider. Perhaps you or someone you know studies piano or synthesizer. If so, the chances are good that you or they spent a lot of time playing scales. But too often, beginning students play scales mechanically, without much appreciation for why it's an important thing to do. Scale practice isn't just something music teachers inflict on their students to develop technique. Scales contain the fundamental patterns on which tonal music is built. By practicing these patterns—in the form of scales—the performer becomes musically acquainted with material that will appear repeatedly in the music itself.

But what, exactly, are these patterns contained in scales? They are interval patterns. The interval patterns of scales become the interval patterns of melody and harmony. What we hear and define as music is actually combinations of interval patterns. The interval, therefore, is one of the basic units of tonal music. In this chapter, we will learn a way to recognize and identify intervals that will also be used in future chapters concerned with triads and harmony. So remember, not only do you not want to skip this, the knowledge will be of little use to you if it is only half learned. Make sure you understand intervals thoroughly before moving on.

Interval Identification

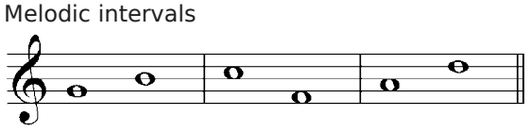
As we learned earlier, an interval is the musical distance between two pitches. If the two pitches are sounded simultaneously, the interval is called a harmonic interval.

Harmonic intervals



If the two pitches are sounded in succession, like two tones of a melody, the interval is called a melodic interval.

Melodic intervals

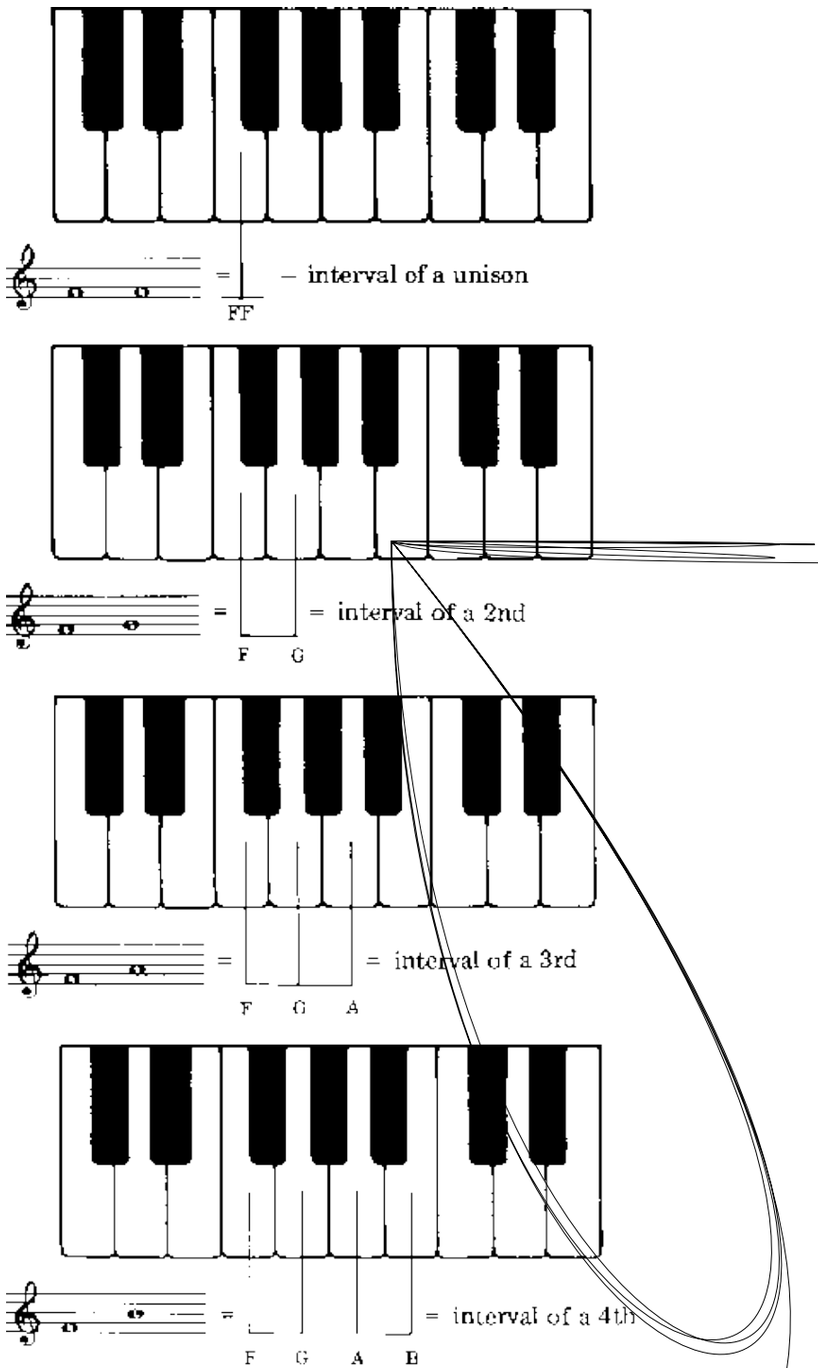


Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 118

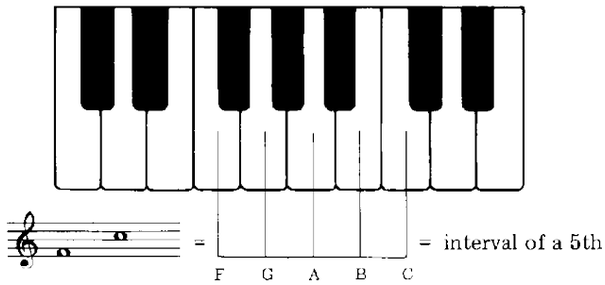
In either case, it is the distance between the two pitches that is identified and measured. Two elements are considered in identifying intervals: size and quality.

Interval Size

The first step in identifying an interval is to determine the size of the interval. This is done by counting the letter names of the two pitches whose interval we are trying to determine plus the letter names of all the pitches in between.

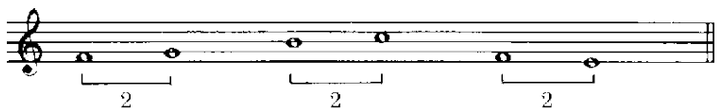


Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 119



As the preceding illustration shows, each letter name is counted only once. Thus, in the second example, the enharmonic pitch between F and G ($\overset{5}{F}$ or G) was not counted in determining the size of the interval. For this reason, it is easier to measure interval size on the staff than on the keyboard. Furthermore, the staff facilitates interval recognition because of the following rules concerning the position of intervals on the staff:

The notes of a second always appear on adjacent lines and spaces.



The notes of a third always appear on consecutive lines or spaces.

Fourths always have one pitch on a line and the other in a space, with a space and a line between.

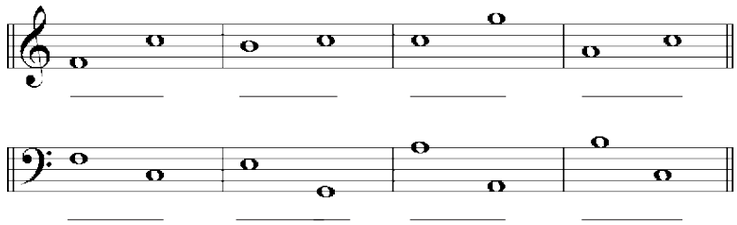
Fifths always have either (1) both pitches on lines, with one line between, or (2) both pitches in spaces, with one space between.

This pattern continues for sixths, sevenths, octaves (the term for the arithmetic distance of an eighth), and so on. As the pitches become farther apart, however, the pattern becomes increasingly difficult to recognize. Until you become familiar with the overall appearance of the wider intervals, it is probably wise to count the lines and spaces between the pitches of the interval.

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 120

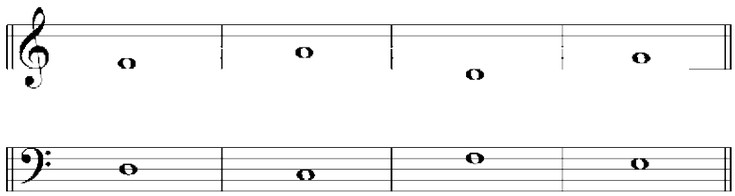
CLASS WORK

Identify the following intervals by interval size.



CLASS WORK

Complete the indicated intervals by writing the pitch that is the correct interval size above the given pitch.



Interval Quality

The second step in recognizing an interval is to identify the sound quality or color of the interval. The quality or color of an interval is related to the number of half steps contained between the two pitches. In the following example, all four inter vals are thirds. But if you play them on a keyboard or sing them, you will find that each has a distinctly different quality or color. This is because they are different kinds of thirds.

The following terms are used to describe the quality of intervals:

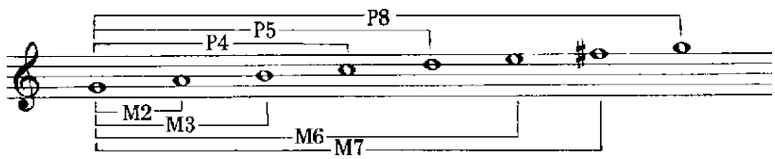
Interval	Abbreviation
Perfect	P
Major	M
Minor	m
Augmented	A or +
Diminished	d or °

Determining the quality of an interval may be done in one of two ways. One way is to memorize the number of half steps contained in the various kinds of intervals, and then to use this information when confronted with a new interval. The problem

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 121

with this method is that it involves both a lot of memorizing and a lot of counting half steps.

The other way to determine interval quality is to remember the types of inter vals that occur between the first note of a major scale and each of the other notes in the scale, and then to gauge new intervals against this information.



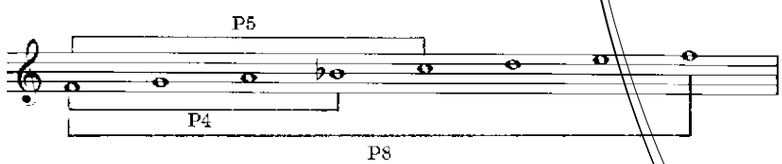
Although both ways of identifying intervals work equally well, the major-scale method (when you know your scales well) is probably faster and more accurate. Counting half steps can involve too much rote learning and is subject to error.

Perfect Intervals

Only four kinds of intervals are called perfect intervals: the unison, the fourth, the fifth, and the octave. They are labeled perfect because in Medieval and Renaissance music they were considered the only intervals suitable for momentary or perma nent stopping places (called cadences) in a piece. The following illustration shows (1) the number of half steps in each type of perfect interval and (2) the standard way of identifying intervals, using letters for quality and numbers for arithmetic distance.

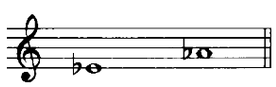
For any particular interval, both the size and the quality must be correct in order for the interval itself to be correct. Remember that the size is the total count of let ter names included in the interval, while the quality is determined by counting half steps. In the case of a perfect fifth, for example, the size must be a fifth, and the interval must contain exactly seven half steps.

In a major scale, the quality of the intervals between the tonic and the sub-dominant, dominant, or octave is always perfect.



Therefore, you can quickly check the quality of any of these intervals by assuming that the lower pitch of the interval is the tonic, and asking yourself if the upper pitch is in the scale of the lower pitch. If it is, and if the interval size is a fourth, fifth, or octave, the interval is perfect in quality.

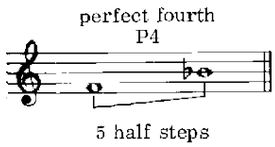
Consider the following example:

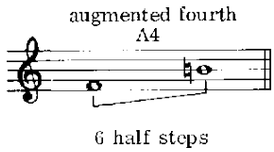


Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 122

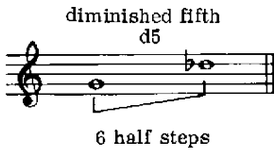
The interval size is a fourth. To determine the quality, we assume that the ^{f}E is the tonic of a major scale. Is ^{f}A in the ^{f}E major scale? Since the answer is yes, this is a perfect fourth. If the upper pitch were not in the scale, then the quality of the interval would be something other than perfect.

Perfect intervals can also be augmented or diminished in quality. A perfect interval is made augmented by retaining the interval size while, at the same time, expanding the interval by a half step.





A perfect interval is made diminished by retaining the interval size while decreas ing the interval by a half step.



Notice that although the augmented fourth and the diminished fifth both contain six half steps, one is identified as a fourth and the other as a fifth. This is because the interval size of the two is not the same. Another point to remember is that although a unison can be augmented by adding a half step, it cannot be made diminished.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Recognizing Perfect Intervals

Locate and identify all the perfect intervals in the following piece.

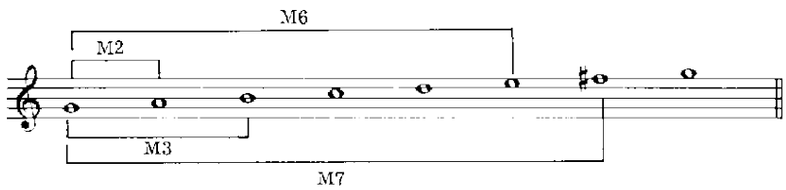
When you have identified the perfect intervals, play the piece, or sing it with the class. Discuss where the perfect intervals occur, and the type of sound they contribute to the piece.

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 123

Major and Minor Intervals

While any interval can be augmented or diminished in quality, perfect intervals can never be major or minor in quality. The intervals of major and minor quality are the second, the third, the sixth, and the seventh. The following illustration shows the number of half steps contained in each of the four types of major intervals.

In a major scale, the quality of the intervals between the tonic and the supertonic, mediant, submediant, and leading tone is always major.



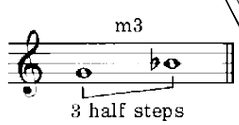
The same procedure for identifying perfect intervals can be applied to seconds, thirds, sixths, and sevenths as well. We simply assume that the lower pitch is the tonic; if the upper pitch is in the major scale of the lower pitch, the interval is major.

Another good way to learn this information is contained in the following chart. It lists the intervals found within a major scale and the number of half steps in each interval. Although you should be familiar with both ways of identifying and writing intervals, you can use whichever way seems easiest to you.

Intervals of the Major Scale

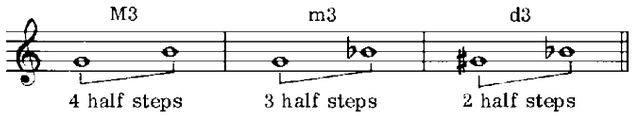
Interval	Number of half steps
Perfect unison	0
Major 2nd	2
Major 3rd	4
Perfect 4th	5
Perfect 5th	7
Major 6th	9
Major 7th	11
Perfect 8ve	12

The number of half steps in each of the major intervals should be memorized. It then becomes simple to change the quality of major intervals to minor, augmented, or diminished. For example, a major interval decreased by a half step becomes minor in quality.



A minor interval further decreased by a half step becomes diminished. A major interval can be diminished by decreasing it a whole step (two half steps) while maintaining the correct interval size.

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 124



A major interval increased by a half step becomes augmented.

Notice that both the augmented third and the perfect fourth contain five half steps. Even though they have the same sound, they are not written the same because of their different sizes. The augmented third must look like a third, and the perfect fourth must look like a fourth.

CLASS WORK

Complete the indicated intervals by writing the correct pitch above each given pitch.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Recognizing Intervals

In the following two excerpts identify the harmonic intervals created between the upper and lower voices. Write your answers in the spaces provided. Remember that the interval changes when one voice moves while the other voice remains stationary.

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 125

MUSIC IN

T và ÉÇ

As a class, sing or play each excerpt; then discuss the following questions:

1. What is the largest interval and how frequently does it occur?
2. What is the smallest interval and how frequently does it occur?
3. How are the perfect intervals used? How important are they?
4. Are there any repetitions of interval patterns?
5. Did you have trouble performing the figure at the end of the Landini excerpt? It is a borrowed division. Do you remember what these are and how they are to be counted? If not, refer back to the "Rhythm Revisited: Triplets and Duplets" section of Chapter 6.

Now that you know all the possible intervals within an octave, it may be useful to look at that information in chart form. The following chart gives the sizes of all the intervals in progressive order, along with the number of half steps in each. Notice the relationship between the growing sizes of the intervals and the number of half steps they contain.

Intervals within an Octave

Interval	Number of half steps
P1	0
m2	1
M2	2
m3	3
M3	4
P4	5
A4 (d5)	6
P5	7
m6 (A5)	8
M6	9
m7	10
M7	11
P8	12

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 126

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Sight Singing and Keyboard

It is important that you practice singing intervals and playing them at the keyboard. You can do both at once, using a piano or synthesizer to check your singing. Keep in mind that a few minutes' practice each day is far more beneficial than a lengthy practice session only once or twice a week.

You can practice interval skills any number of ways, but keep your exercises simple so that you can build on your successes. Use the following exercises as samples from which to develop your own. Perhaps each member of the class could design one singing exercise and one playing exercise for class use; these could then be shared so that every class member would have a sizable collection of practice exercises.

Sight-Singing Practice

Begin by singing ascending intervals in the major scale, as follows:

do re
do mi
do fa
do sol
do la
do ti
do do

When you can do this comfortably and accurately, try descending intervals, beginning an octave above where you began before:

do ti
do la
do sol
do fa
do mi
do re
do do

Here is another useful ascending-interval exercise:

do mi sol
re fa la
mi sol ti
fa la do
sol ti re
la do mi
ti re fa
mi

This can also be done in reverse order, beginning at the top of the scale and working down:

mi do la
re ti sol
do la fa
ti sol mi
la fa re
sol mi do
fa re ti
do

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 127

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

The exercises on this page and on page 126 can also be sung using scale-degree numbers. Doing this will give you a slightly different perspective on the major scale and the intervals that it contains.

Keyboard Practice

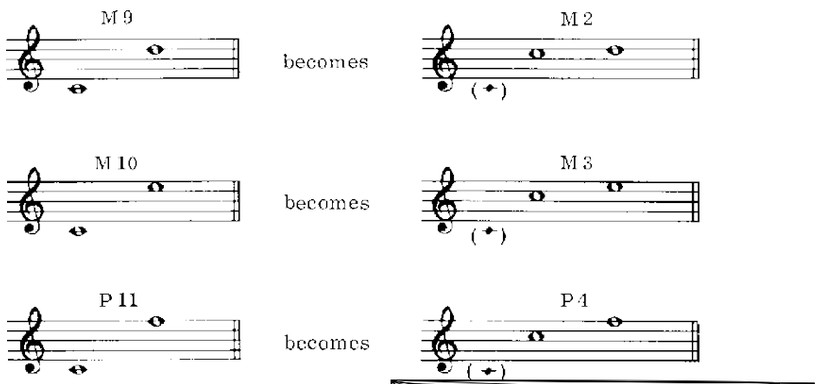
1. a. Play C_4.
   b. Play a pitch a P4 higher. Name this pitch. (Remember that you must always consider the arithmetic distance as well as the number of half steps.)
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch a m2 lower.
   d. What is the name of the pitch you have reached? _____
2. a. Play $E_5^{\flat}$.
   b. Play a pitch a P5 higher. Name this pitch. (Remember to consider the arithmetic distance.)
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch a M3 lower. Name this pitch.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a P5 lower.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____
3. a. Play $D_2^{\sharp}$.
   b. Play a pitch a M6 higher.
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch a m3 higher.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a m7 lower.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____
4. a. Play $F_4^{\sharp}$.
   b. Play a pitch a P4 higher.
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch a M3 higher.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a P5 lower.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____
5. a. Play $A_4^{\sharp}$.
   b. Play a pitch a M3 higher.
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch P4 higher.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a M6 higher.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____
6. a. Play $G_3^{\sharp}$.
   b. Play a pitch a m7 lower.
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch M3 lower.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a P5 higher.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____
7. a. Play $B_1^{\flat}$.
   b. Play a pitch a M6 higher.
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch a m2 higher.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a P4 higher.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____
8. a. Play $D_4^{\flat}$.
   b. Play a pitch a M3 higher.
   c. From the new pitch, play a pitch a m3 higher.
   d. From this new pitch, play a pitch a A4 higher.
   e. What is the name of the pitch you are on now? _____

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 128

Compound Intervals

Intervals that are one octave or smaller in size are called simple intervals, while intervals larger than an octave are known as compound intervals. The following example illustrates a major ninth, a major tenth, and a perfect eleventh:

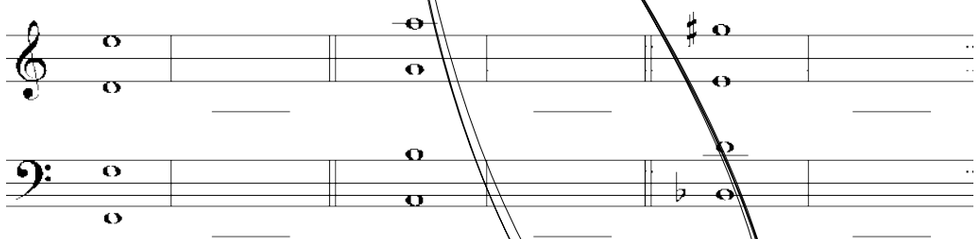
Of course, the larger the interval, the more difficult it can be to read and identify correctly. For the purposes of identification it is easier to reduce the compound interval by one octave. Thus, a major ninth becomes a compound major second; a major tenth, a compound major third; and a perfect eleventh, a compound perfect fourth.



Compound intervals are major, minor, augmented, diminished, or perfect, depending on the quality of the corresponding simple interval. Remember that the quality always stays the same because all you are doing when you reduce a compound interval to a simple interval is subtracting one octave.

CLASS WORK

Identify the following compound intervals by reducing them by one octave and labeling the simple interval that results.

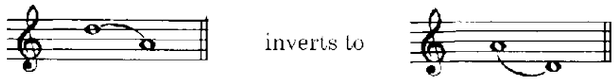


Harmonic Inversion of Intervals

Intervals are inverted harmonically by reversing the pitches from top to bottom. That is, the higher pitch is moved one octave lower so it is below the other pitch. The same interval results if the lower pitch is moved one octave higher. The point to

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 129

remember when inverting intervals is that one pitch remains stationary and the other moves an octave.

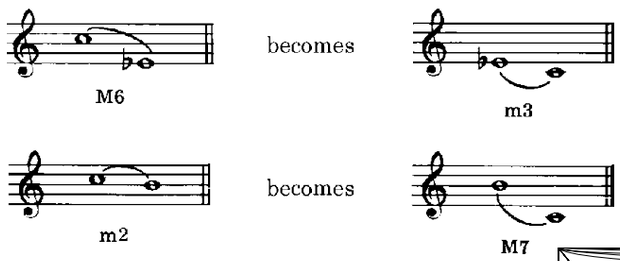


The interval size always changes when an interval is inverted. A fifth inverts to a fourth, a sixth to a third, and a seventh to a second. Notice also that the sum of the interval plus its inversion always equals nine.

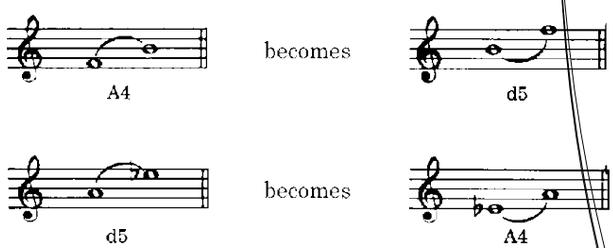
The quality of inverted intervals changes in the following ways:

Perfect intervals always invert to perfect intervals.

Major intervals always invert to minor intervals; minor intervals always invert to major intervals.



Augmented intervals always invert to diminished intervals; diminished intervals always invert to augmented intervals.



Another important point to remember is that inverted intervals can, in some ways, be con sidered to belong to the same interval family. That is, although the two pitches have changed location, and the interval between them has changed, the pitches themselves have not changed.

MUSIC IN T

Ear Training

Your teacher or another student from the class will play various intervals, beginning on different pitches, for you to recognize by ear. These will be played as either harmonic (sounding simultaneously) or melodic (sounding in succession) intervals. The intervals have been grouped in limited combi nations according to size and quality in order to make your beginning work

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 130

MUSIC IN

easier. As you practice, remember that ear training is a continuous process; it grows easier as you continue. If time permits, your teacher may wish to return to this exercise several times in the future. An alternative to this would be for you and a friend from the class to practice on your own.

Major 2nds and Major 3rds only

1. _____	4. _____	7. _____
2. _____	5. _____	8. _____
3. _____	6. _____	9. _____

Major 3rds and Perfect 5ths

1. _____	4. _____	7. _____
2. _____	5. _____	8. _____
3. _____	6. _____	9. _____

Perfect 4ths and Perfect 5ths

1. _____	4. _____	7. _____
2. _____	5. _____	8. _____
3. _____	6. _____	9. _____

Major 2nds, Perfect 4ths, and Major 6ths

1. _____	4. _____	7. _____
2. _____	5. _____	8. _____
3. _____	6. _____	9. _____

All intervals from the major scale, including the Major 7th

1. _____	4. _____	7. _____
2. _____	5. _____	8. _____
3. _____	6. _____	9. _____

Focus

In this chapter, we have concentrated on identifying and writing musical intervals. This work can, at times, seem both mathematical and time-consuming, but it is absolutely necessary for you to be familiar with intervals. Intervals are a funda mental element of music; interval patterns are the building blocks of tonal music.

Even if the mechanics of writing and recognizing intervals becomes tedious, as it can at times, keep in mind that acquiring these skills is essential in advancing your understanding of tonal music. In the same way that musicians practice scales to acquaint themselves with scale patterns, they work with intervals to become familiar with interval patterns. Perhaps the following Music in Action will help to illustrate that melodies are patterns of intervals.

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 131

MUSIC IN THEORY

Ear Training

In your mind, sing the beginning of any of the following songs that you know. Beside the name of each, write the interval that occurs between the first and second notes of the song. This may seem difficult at first, but two hints may help: (1) Only the intervals found in a major scale are used—P1, M2, M3, P4, P5, M6, M7, P8. (2) Songs that don't begin on the tonic quite often begin on the dominant. If you continue to have trouble, try singing up or down the scale from the tonic to the other note.

1. "The Simpsons" TV show theme _____
2. "Titanic" theme _____
3. "South Park" TV show theme _____
4. "Star Wars" theme _____
5. "2001" theme _____
6. "Moon River" _____

MUSIC IN THEORY

Composing

Create a small band of four or five people from among the members of the class and write a short "sound" score for this group. Use hand claps and a variety of everyday objects found in the classroom to make percussive sounds. In your score, use examples of repeated measures, 1st and 2nd endings, and either D.C. al fine or D.S. al fine. If necessary, review these scoring devices in the "How to Read a Musical Map" section of Chapter 4. When completed, perform the various pieces for the class.

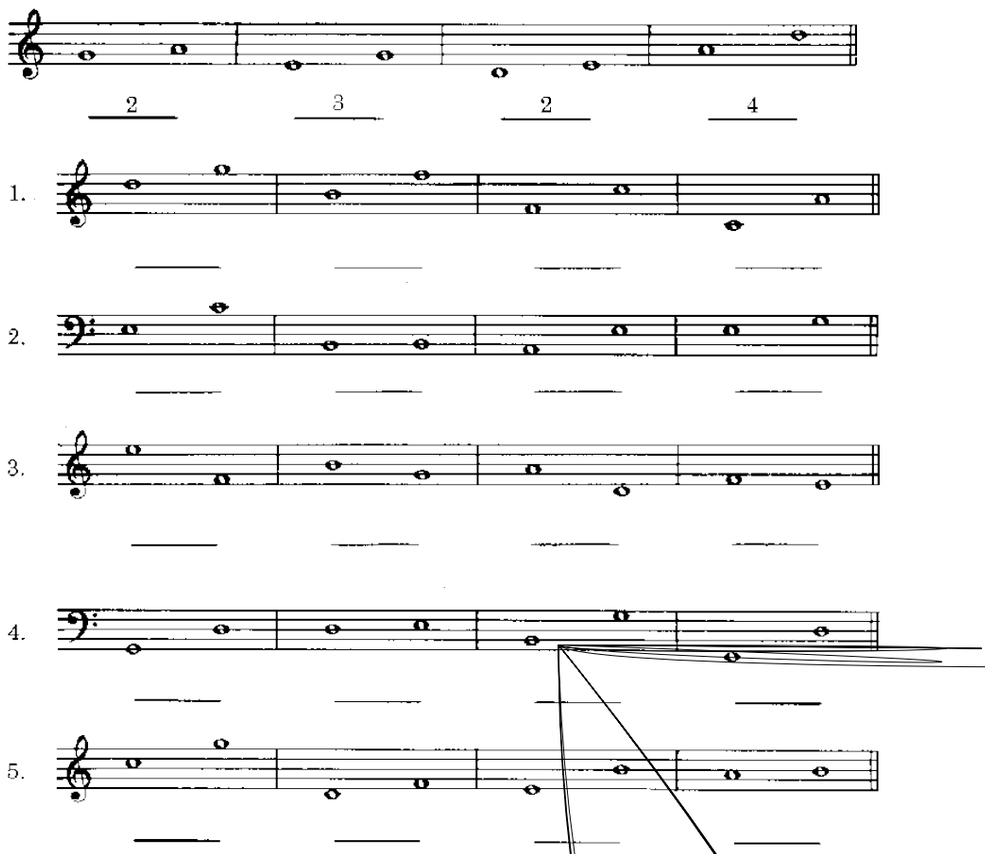
Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 132

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 133

Practice Materials 7-1

Identify the interval size of the following melodic intervals. Use the appropriate numeral, as indicated in the example, to indicate the interval size.

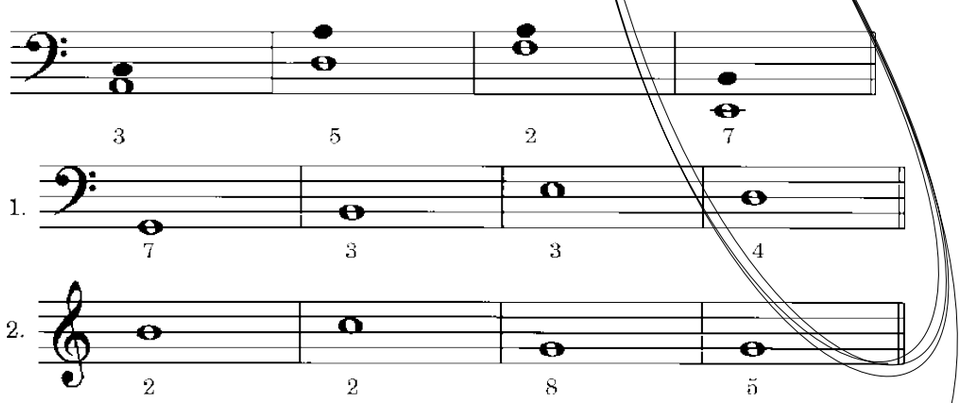
EXAMPLE:



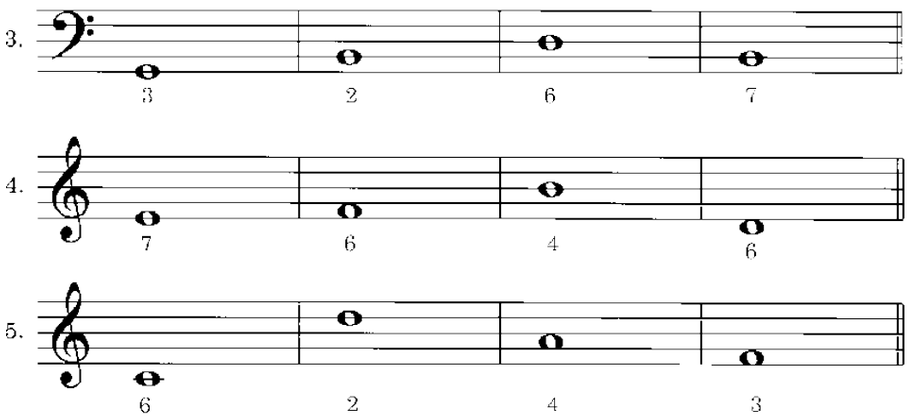
Practice Materials 7-2

Complete the following harmonic intervals by writing in the pitch that is the correct interval size above the given pitch.

EXAMPLE:



Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 134

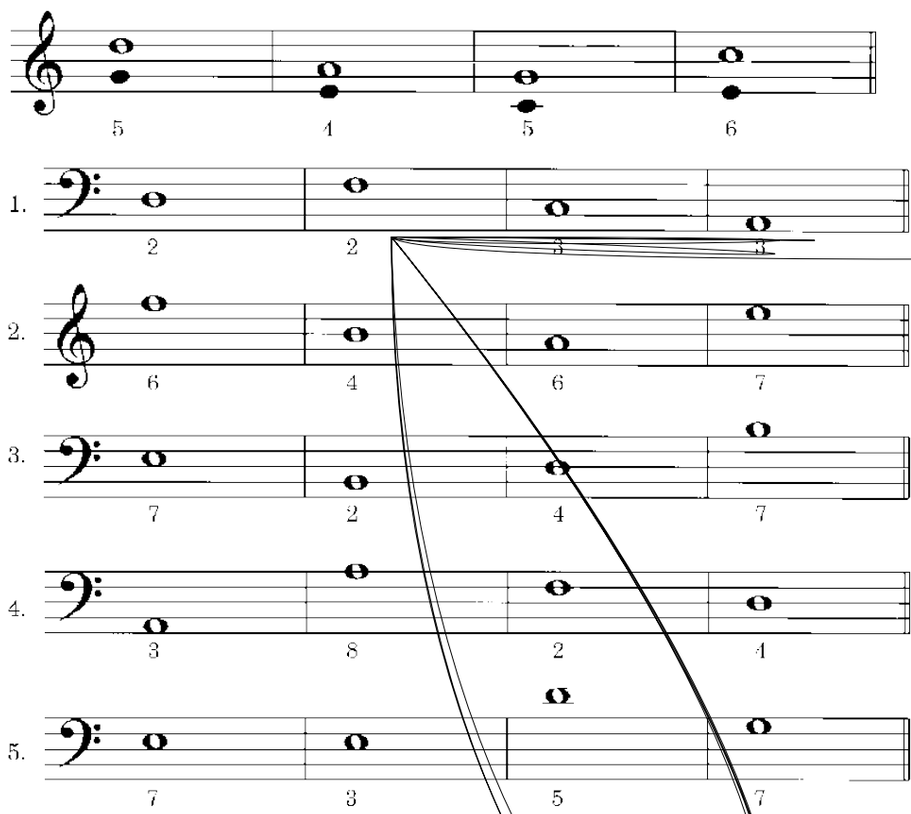


PRACTICE

Practice Materials 7-3

Complete the following harmonic intervals by writing in the pitch that is the correct interval size below the given pitch.

EXAMPLE:



Practice Materials 7-4

Identify the interval size between the pitches in each of the following sets. In lines 1–3, consider the second pitch to be above the first pitch.

1. E–F _____ D–A _____ G–B _____ F–E _____

2. F–A _____ F–B _____ A–B _____ C–B _____

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 135

3. G–E B–E D–F A–D

In lines 4–6, consider the second pitch as below the first pitch.

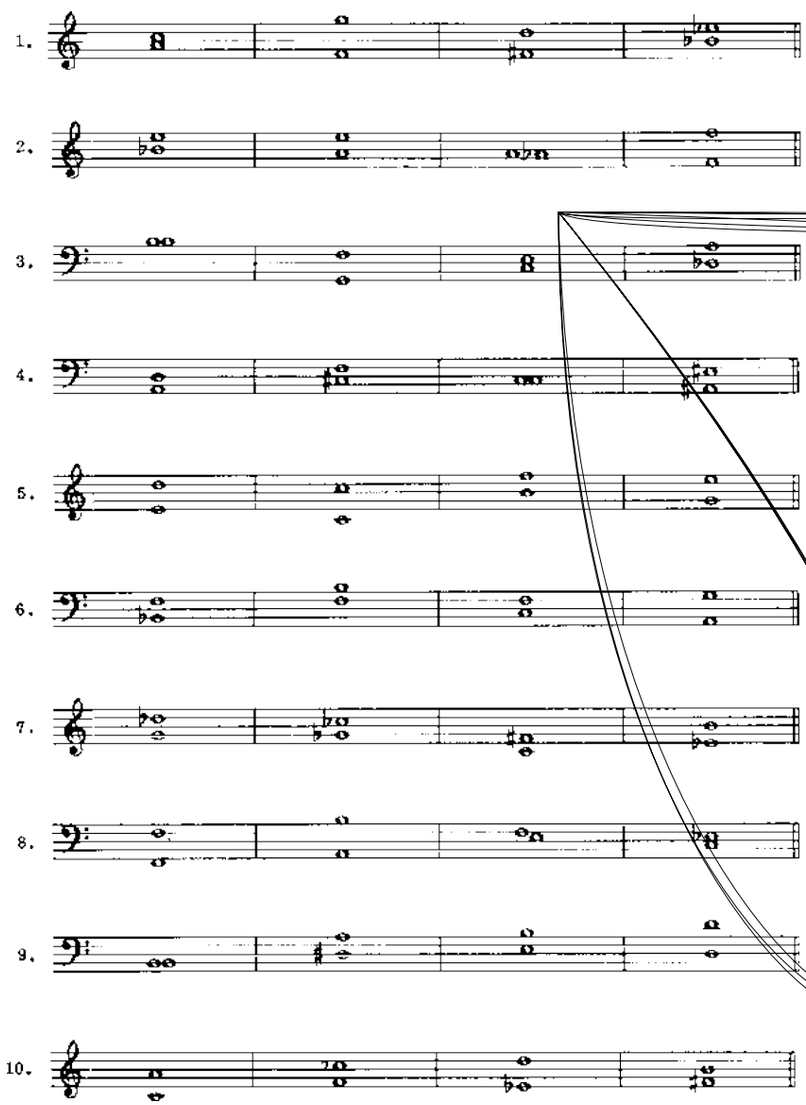
4. E–A G–B F–G F–A

5. G–C G–F A–D A–F

6. E–B D–B E–A G–D

Practice Materials 7-5

In the following harmonic intervals, circle the perfect unisons, fourths, fifths, and octaves. (Refer to the illustration on page 121 if you need to.) Remember to ask yourself if the upper pitch is in the major scale of the lower pitch.

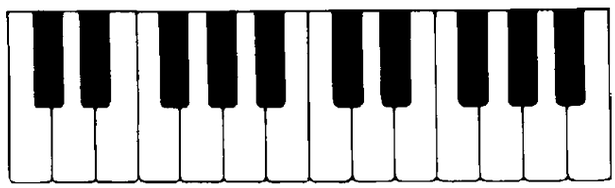


Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 136

REVIEW

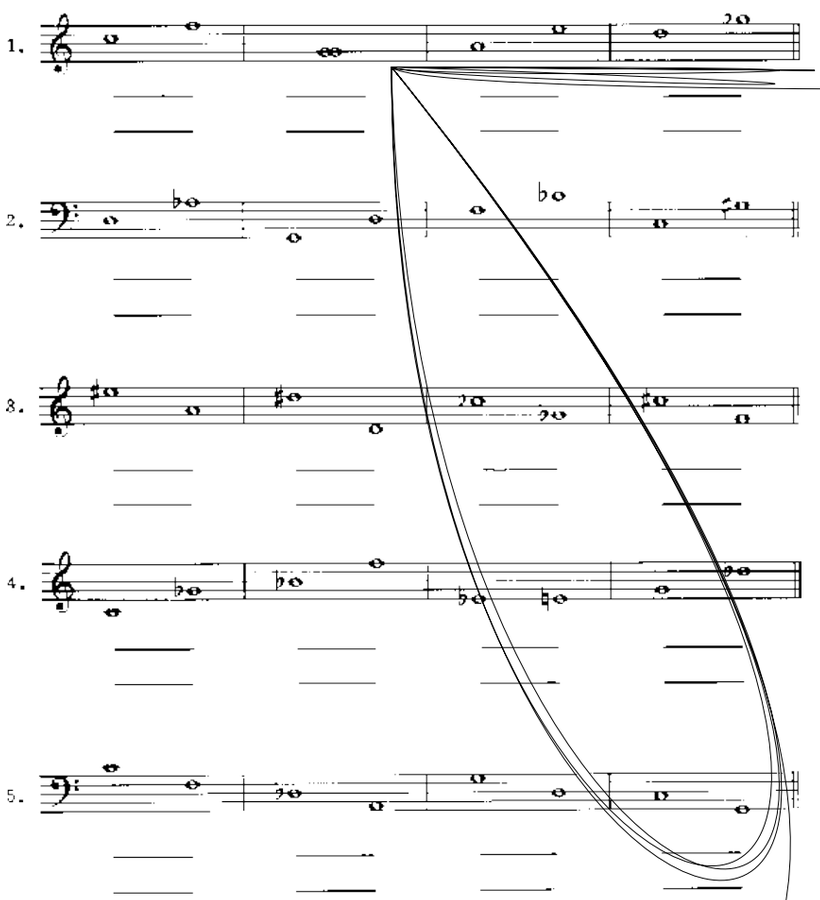
Practice Materials 7-6

Identify each of the following melodic intervals as either a unison, a fourth, a fifth, or an octave, and as either perfect (P), augmented (A), or diminished (d). A keyboard is provided to help you visualize the half steps. Remember that the major scale contains perfect fourths, fifths, and octaves, and that augmented intervals will be a half step larger than these, diminished intervals a half step smaller, except for the unison, which cannot be made diminished.

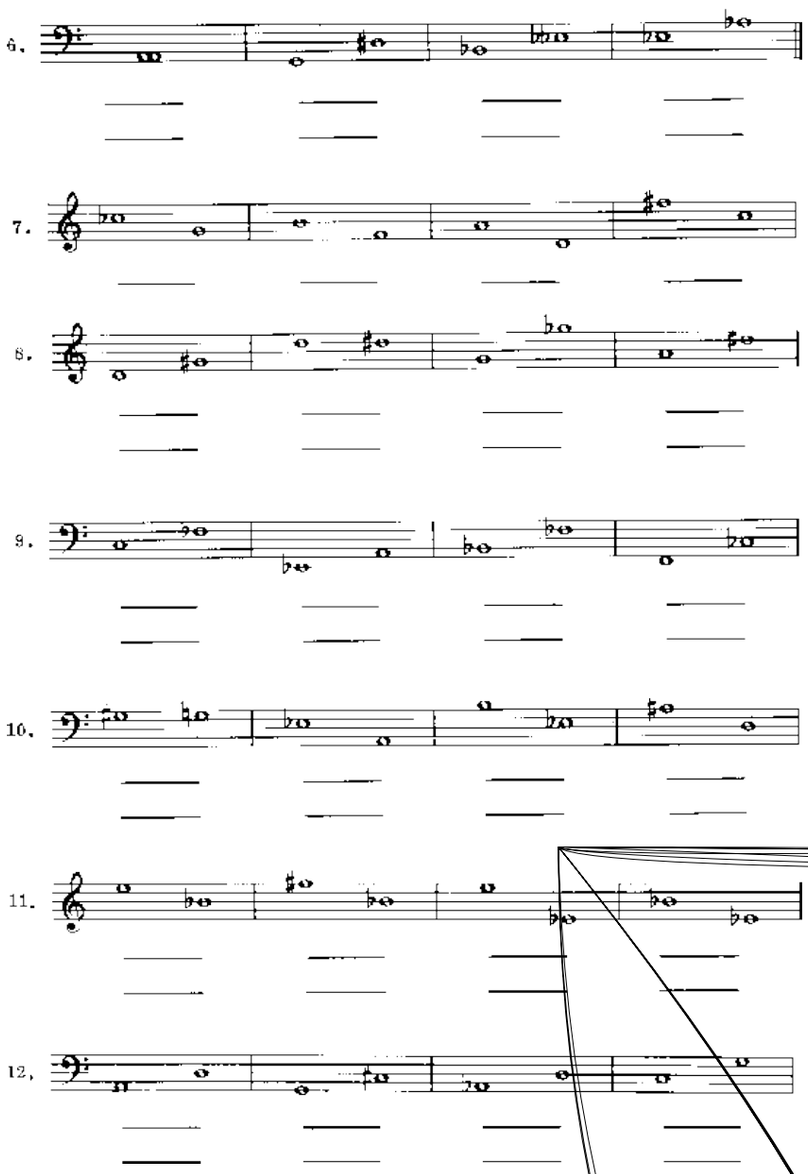


EXAMPLE:

half steps	5	4	1
interval	P4	d4	A1

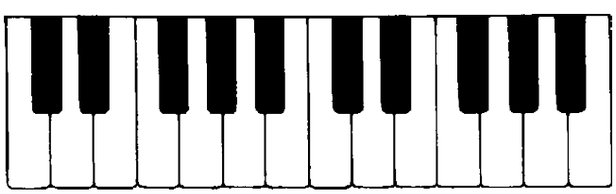


Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 137

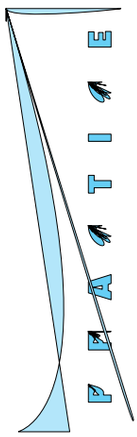


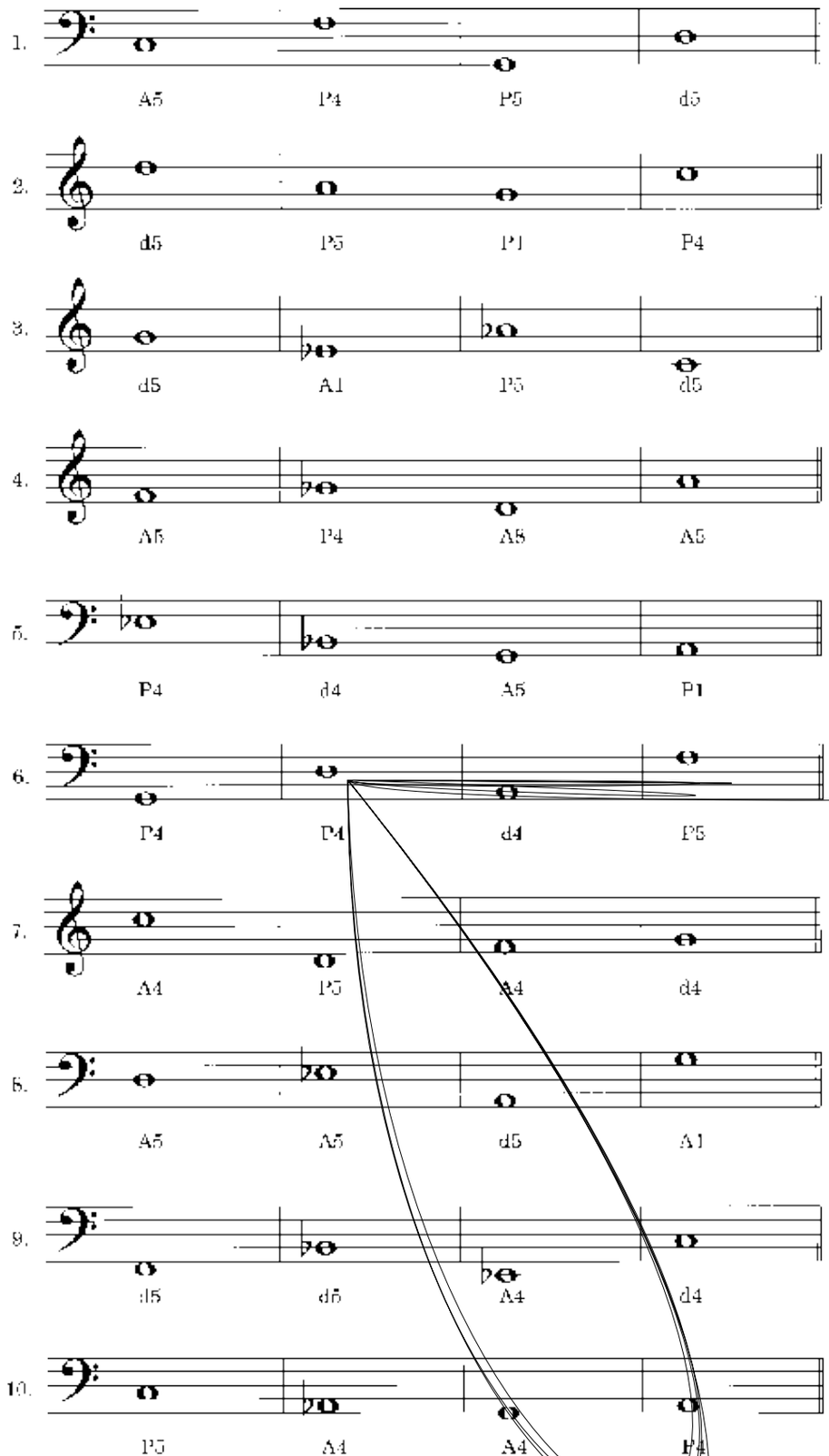
Practice Materials 7-7

Complete each of the indicated intervals by notating the correct higher pitch. You may write them as either melodic or harmonic intervals. This exercise deals with unisons, fourths, fifths, and octaves only. Use the keyboard to help you visualize the half steps. Remember to maintain the correct interval size. Begin by thinking of the major scale for each given pitch; this will give you the perfect interval.



Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 138

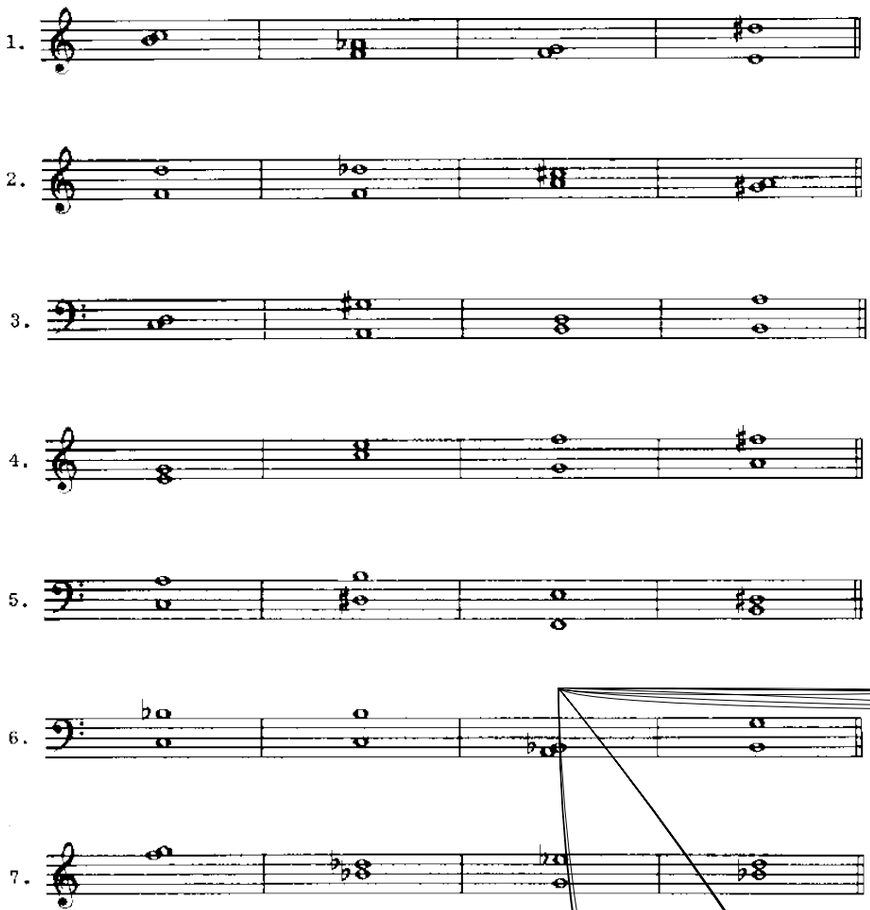




Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 139

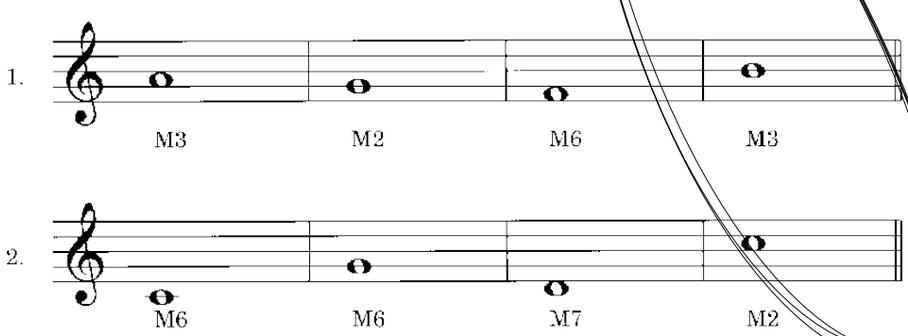
Practice Materials 7-8

Identify and circle the major seconds, thirds, sixths, and sevenths in the following set of harmonic intervals. Remember to ask yourself if the upper pitch is in the major scale of the lower pitch, or to use the chart of half steps.

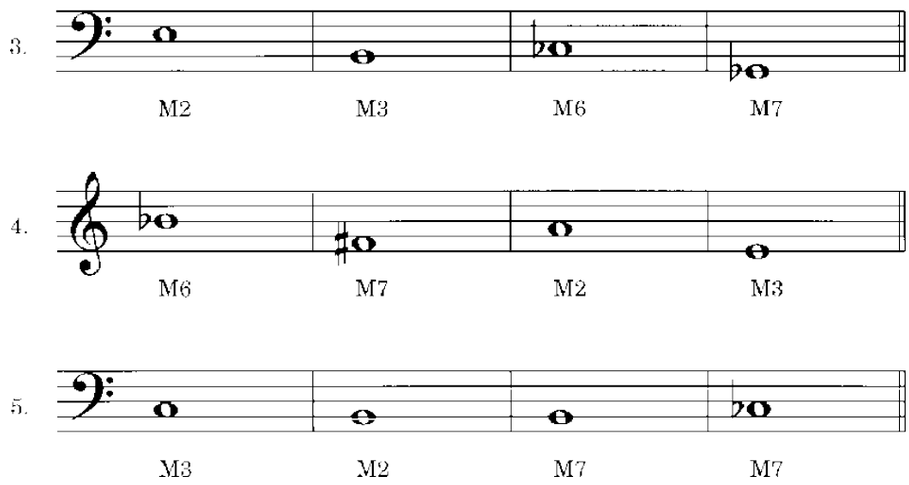


Practice Materials 7-9

Construct the indicated major interval, either harmonic or melodic, by writing the correct higher notehead. Begin by thinking of the major scale for each given pitch.



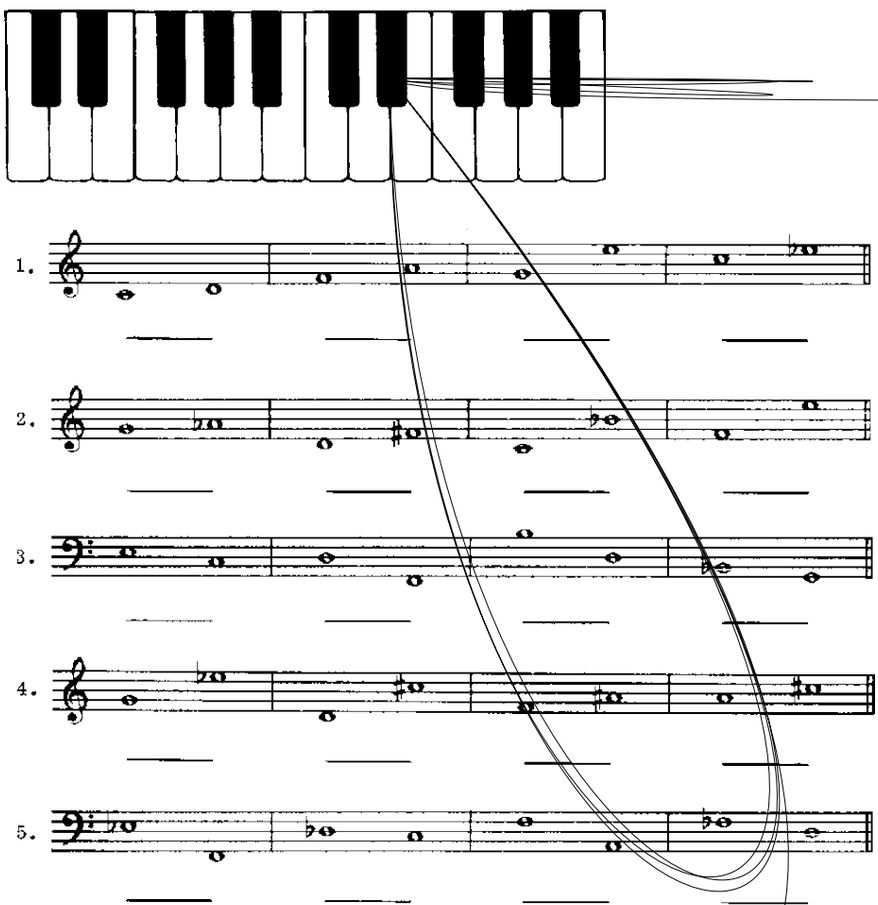
Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 140



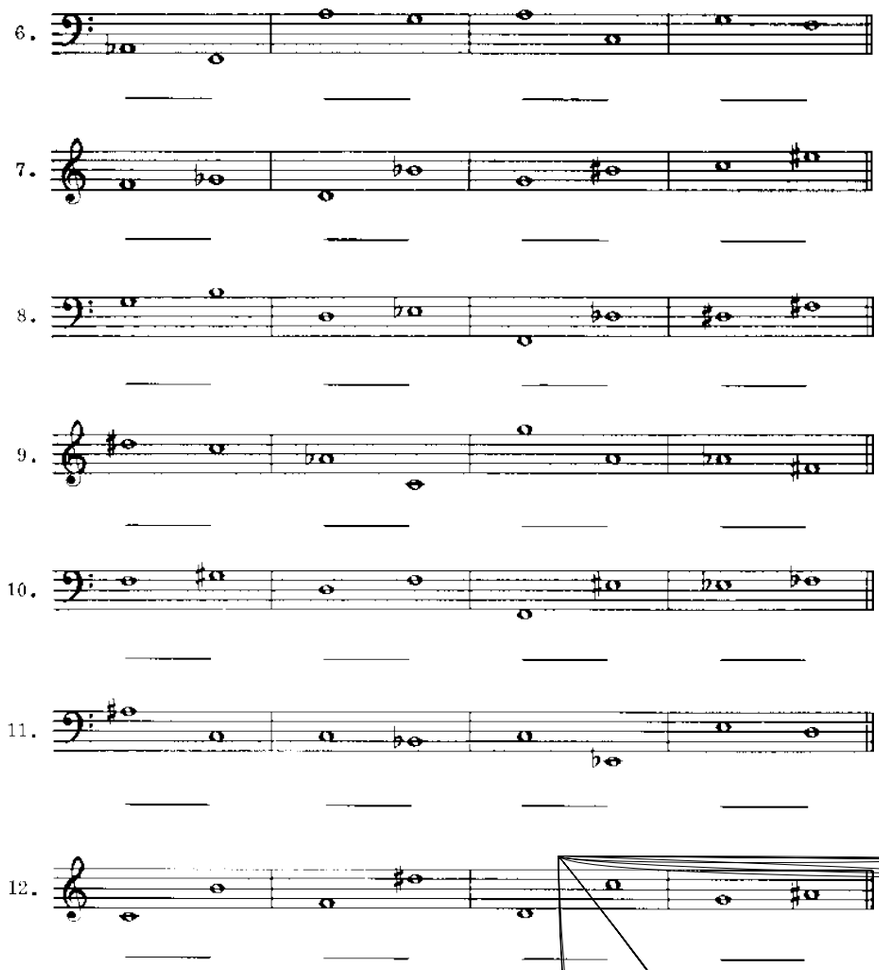
PRACTICE

Practice Materials 7-10

Identify the following melodic intervals as either a second, a third, a sixth, or a seventh, and as either augmented (A), major (M), minor (m), or diminished (d) in quality. (Capital and lowercase Ms can often be confused unless you print them carefully. For this reason, your teacher may prefer that you use MA for major and MI for minor.) Use the keyboard to help visualize the half steps. Remember that the major scale produces major seconds, thirds, sixths, and sevenths above the tonic.

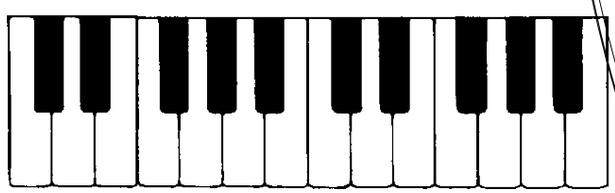


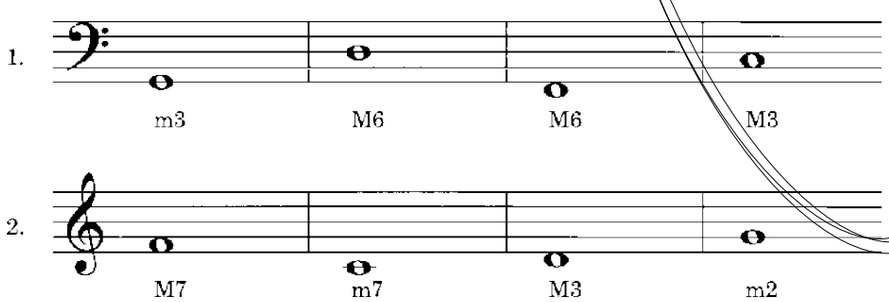
Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 141



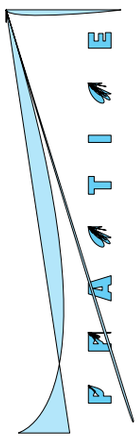
Practice Materials 7-11

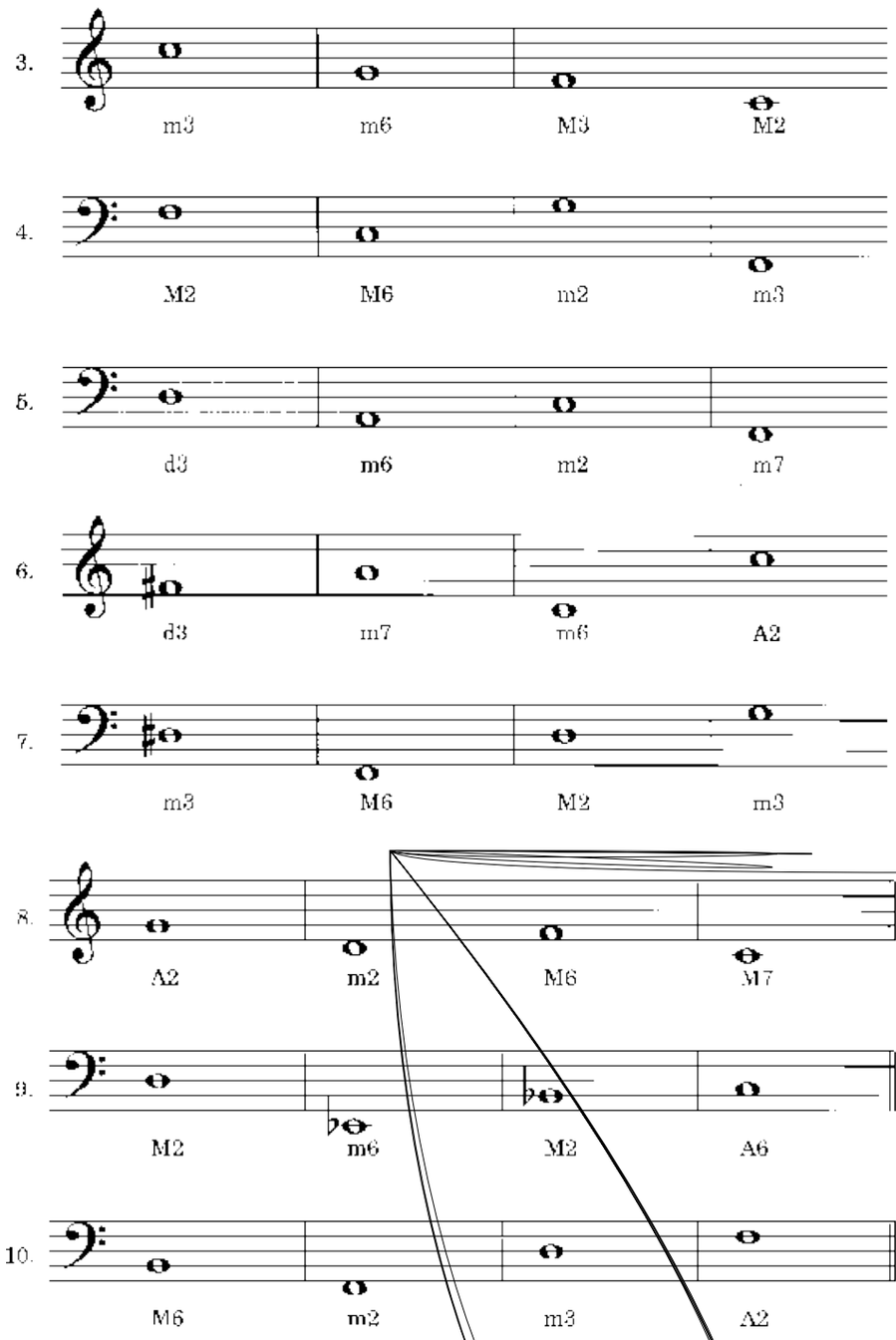
Construct the indicated harmonic or melodic intervals by writing the correct higher notehead. This exercise deals only with seconds, thirds, sixths, and sevenths. Remember to keep the correct interval size. Use the keyboard to visualize the intervals. Begin by thinking of the major scale that starts on each given pitch.





Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 142



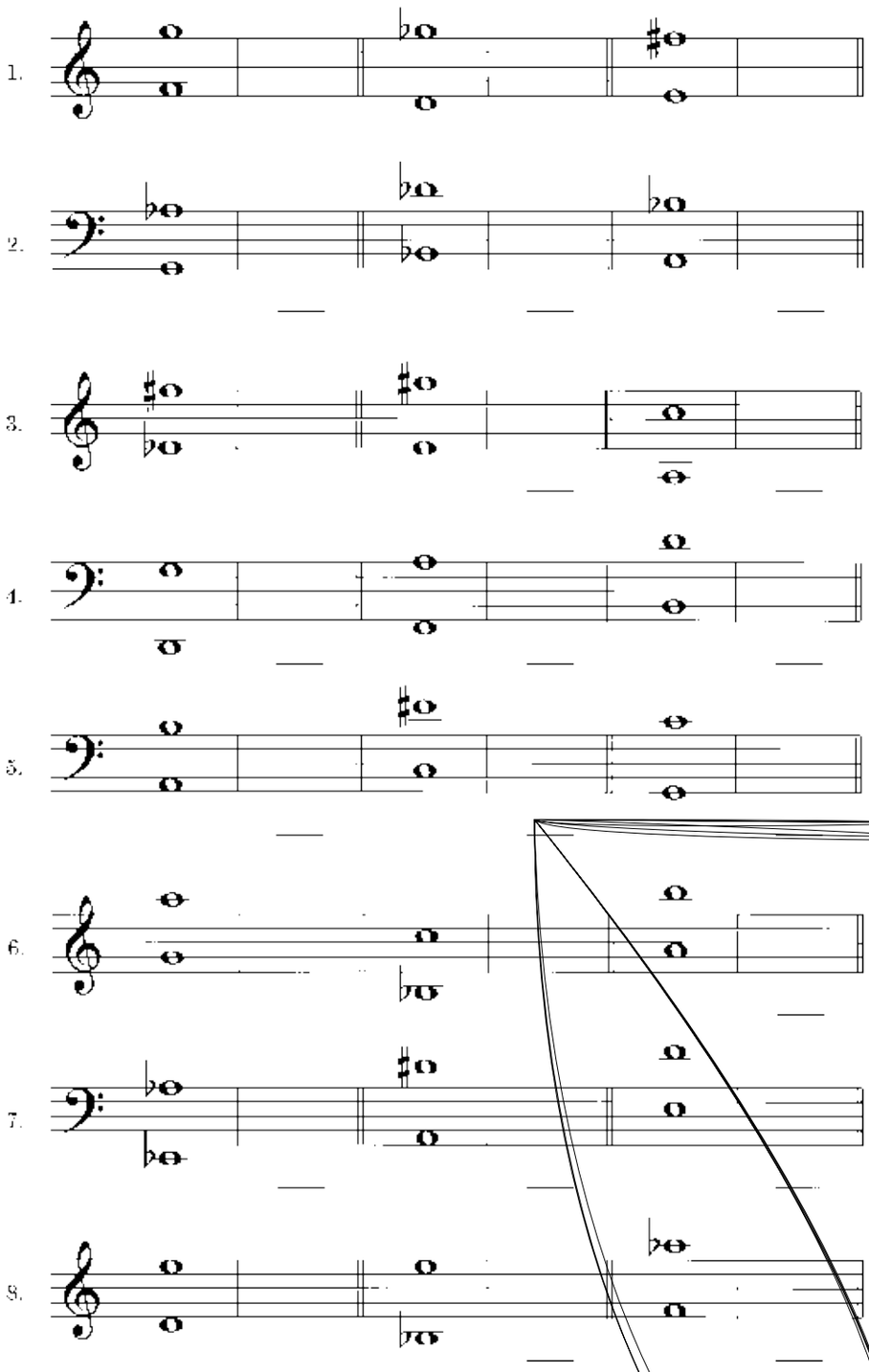


Practice Materials 7-12

Identify the following compound harmonic intervals by reducing them by one octave and labeling the simple interval that results:

EXAMPLE:

Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 143



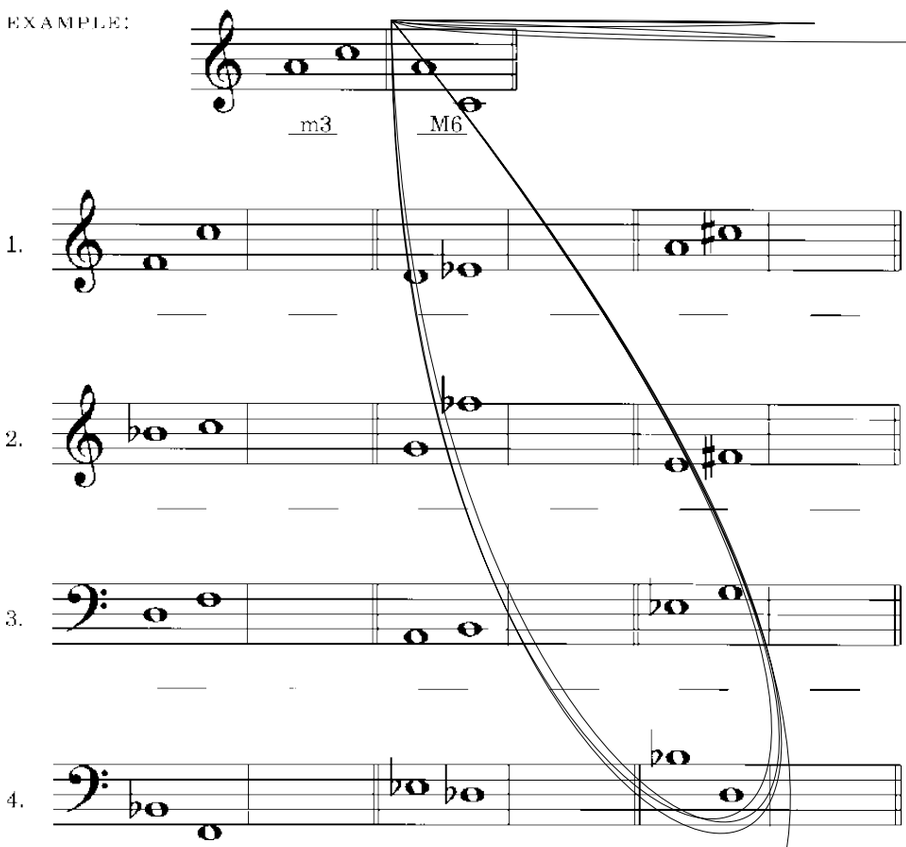
Practice Materials 7-13

Identify the following compound harmonic intervals. Even though you are not asked to reduce each interval by an octave this time, you may find it helpful to do so mentally. Remember also that the quality of the compound interval is the same as the quality of the corresponding simple interval.

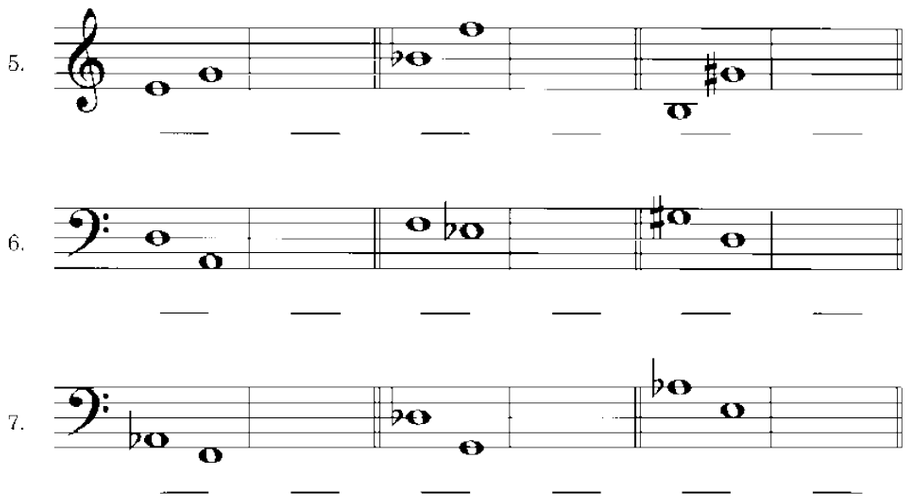
Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 144

Practice Materials 7-14

First label the given melodic interval, then invert it and identify the interval that results. Remember that the sum of any interval plus its inversion always equals nine.



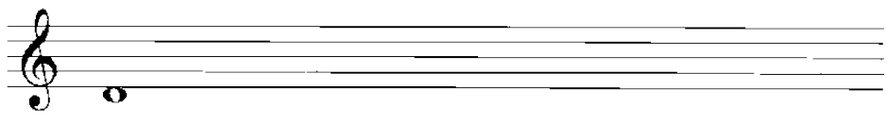
Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 145



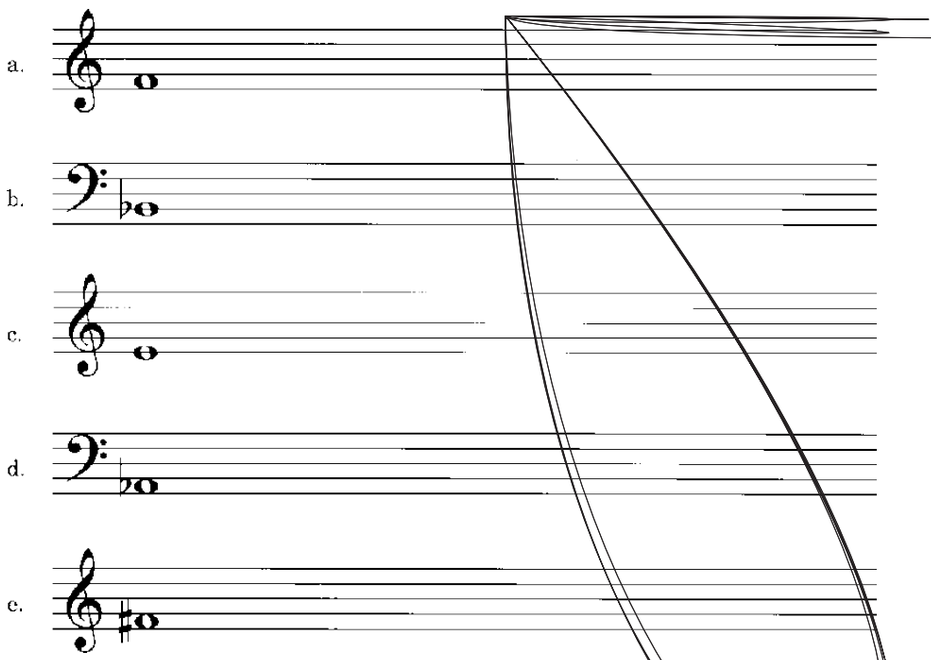
Duckworth_Music9e_07.qxd 11/17/05 10:58 PM Page 146

The following questions cover Chapters 5 through 7. If you have difficulty with any of them, review the relevant sections before beginning Chapter 8.

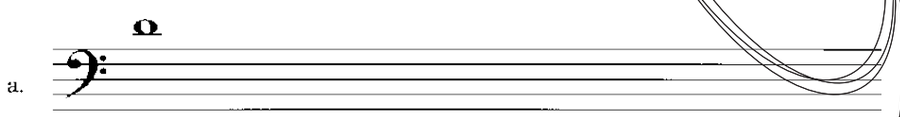
1. Write a one-octave chromatic scale, ascending and descending, starting from the following pitch.



2. Write ascending major scales starting from the following pitches.



3. Write descending major scales starting from the following pitches.

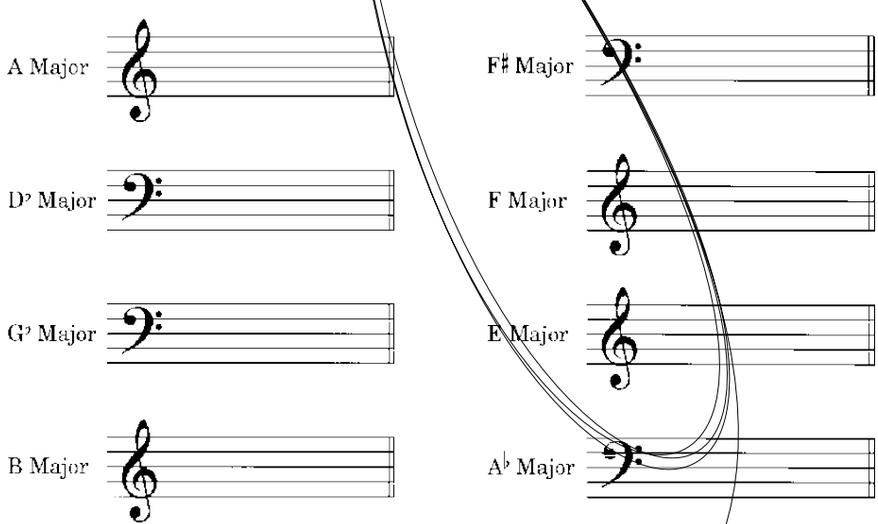


Duckworth_Music9e_FIII.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page 148

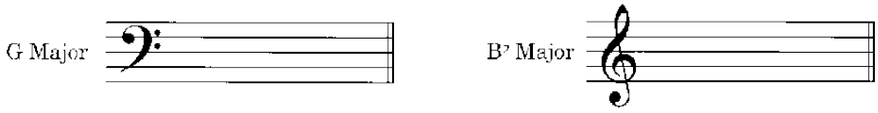
4. Complete the following sentences.

a. The dominant of the ^{f}B major scale is _____.
b. The submediant of the D major scale is _____.
c. The supertonic of the ^{f}G major scale is _____.
d. The mediant of the ^{f}A major scale is _____.
e. The supertonic of the G major scale is _____.
f. The submediant of the E major scale is _____.
g. The leading tone of the F major scale is _____.
h. The dominant of the E major scale is _____.
i. The subdominant of the C$_{s}$ major scale is _____.
j. The mediant of the ^{f}D major scale is _____.
k. A is the mediant of the _____ major scale.
l. D is the subdominant of the _____ major scale.
m. E is the dominant of the _____ major scale.
n. F$_{s}$ is the submediant of the _____ major scale.
o. B^{f} is the subdominant of the _____ major scale.

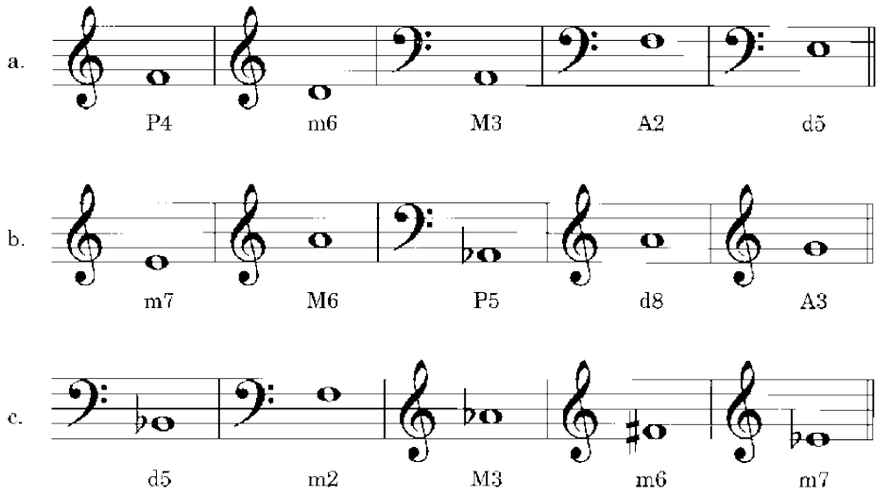
5. Write out the following major key signatures.



Duckworth_Music9e_FIII.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page 149



6. Write the pitch that completes the indicated intervals above each given pitch.



Duckworth_Music9e_FIII.qxd 12/5/05 3:39 PM Page 150

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 151

CHAPTER EIGHT

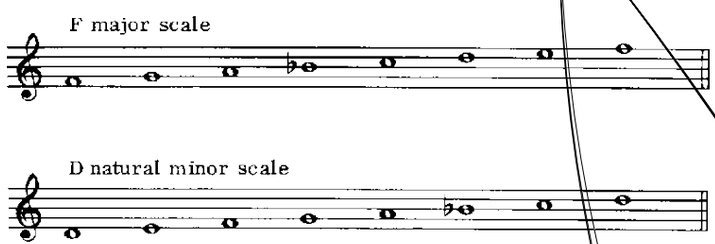
Minor Key Signatures

Learning the minor keys does not require learning a whole new set of key signatures because the minor keys are directly related to the major keys that you already know. This chapter presents the minor key signatures and explains how they are related to the major key signatures. In the next chapter we will study the minor scales themselves.

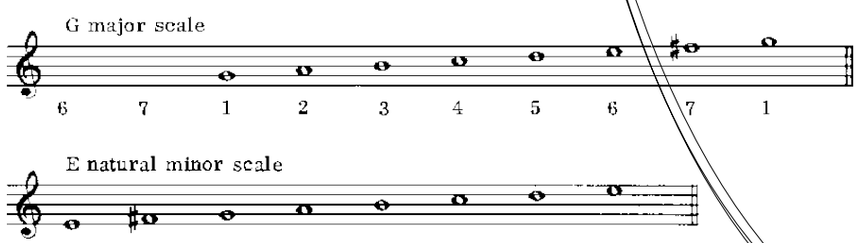
At this point, it is important to keep in mind that although there is more than one form of the minor scale, there is only one set of minor key signatures. Learning the various forms of the minor scale, which are presented in Chapter 9, will be easier after you become familiar with the minor key signatures.

Related Keys

There is a simple and important relationship between major and minor keys. Notice, for instance, the relationship of accidentals between the following two scales.



Both scales have one and the same accidental—B♭. In fact, if you begin on the sixth degree of any major scale and follow its note pattern for one octave, the result will always be a new, natural minor scale. Here's another example:



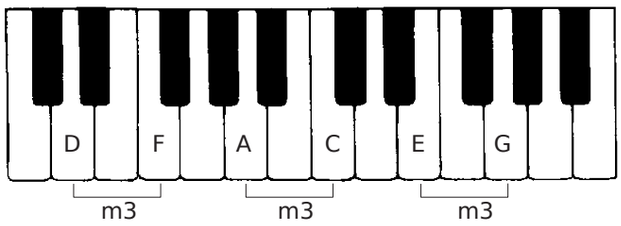
This relationship, which is constant for all of the major keys, means that there are pairs of keys—one major, one minor—related by the same pitch content, hence by the same key signature. Such keys are called related keys. The term relative minor

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 152

refers to the minor key or scale that is related to a particular major scale by having the same key signature. The term relative major refers to the major key or scale with the same key signature as a particular minor scale.

The relative minor-major relationship may be remembered in two ways: (1) The relative minor scale always begins on the sixth degree of the major scale. (2) The relative minor scale always begins three half steps (a minor third) below its related major scale. Most students find the second way easier. Either way, remember that related scales always have the same key signature but different tonics.

The major-minor relationship



F Major/D minor
Key signature
of 1 flat

C Major/A minor
Key signature
of no sharps
or flats

G Major/E minor
Key signature
of 1 sharp

CLASS WORK

Identify the relative minor key for the following major keys.

1. B major _____
2. A major _____
3. E♭ major _____
4. D♭ major _____

CLASS WORK

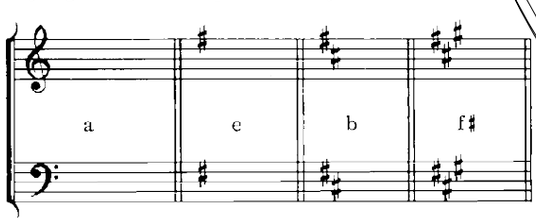
Identify the relative major key for the following minor keys.

1. F minor _____
2. A♯ minor _____
3. B♭ minor _____
4. C♯ minor _____

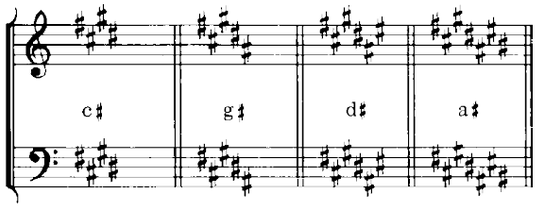
Minor Key Signatures

The minor key signatures, for sharp keys and flat keys, are given below, followed by the number of accidentals associated with each key. Notice that lowercase letters are used to indicate minor keys, which is an acceptable practice. Notice also that the last sharp added to each sharp key is the supertonic, and the last flat added to each flat key is the submediant. As you study these minor key signatures, make a mental association with the relative major for each key.

Key signatures: sharp minor keys

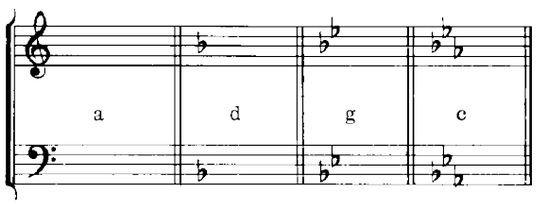


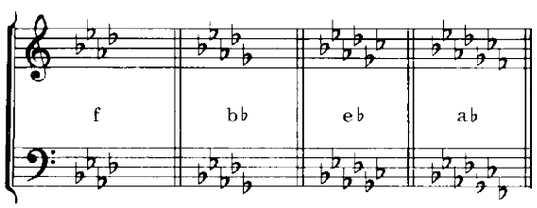
Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 153



Minor key	Number of sharps
a	0
e	1
b	2
f^{s}	3
c^{s}	4
g$_{s}$	5
d$_{s}$	6
a$_{s}$	7

Key signatures: minor flat keys





Minor key	Number of flats
a	0
d	1
g	2
c	3
f	4
b^{f}	5
e^{f}	6
a^{f}	7

The primary concept to remember is that each key signature is shared by one major scale and one minor scale. Furthermore, because they share a key signature, the two scales are thought of as related to each other. The terms relative major and rel ative minor refer to this relationship. The following chart may help to make this point clearer.

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 154

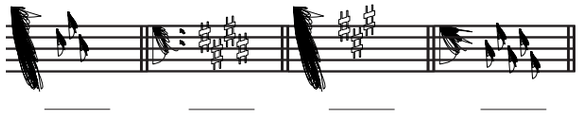
Major scale	Shared key signature	Minor scale
C major		a minor
G major		e minor

A major	fs minor
E major	cs minor
B major	gs minor
Fs major	ds minor
Cs major	as minor
F major	d minor
B^f major	g minor
E^f major	c minor
A^f major	f minor
D^f major	$\underline{b}^f$ minor
G^f major	$\underline{e}^f$ minor
C^f major	$\underline{a}^f$ minor

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 155

CLASS WORK

Identify the minor keys represented by the following key signatures.



CLASS WORK

Write the following minor key signatures.

A♭ Minor C♯ Minor D Minor E♭ Minor

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Ear Training

Have your teacher or another student select and play on the keyboard several of the musical excerpts that are listed below with their location in this book. After listening to each excerpt, decide whether it is in a major or minor key.

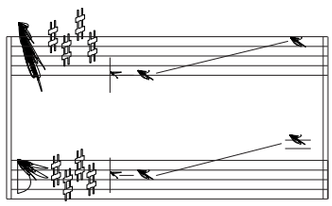
Composer	Title	Page(s)
1. Bach	Chorale from Cantata No. 180	15
2. Bach	Courante from French Suite No. 2	15
3. Bach	Minuet in G Minor	38
4. Kuhlau	Rondo from Sonatina, Op. 20, No. 1	64
5. Mozart	Sonata in B♭ Major, K. 570, III	64
6. Scarlatti	Sonata in C Minor	177
7. Schumann	Choral from Album for the Young	221
8. Traditional	"St. James Infirmary"	240

Parallel Keys

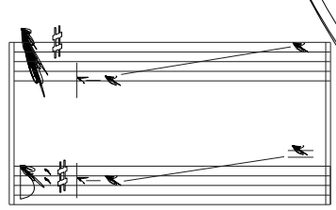
In addition to the relative major-relative minor relationship between keys, in which two keys share the same key signature (but different tonics), there is also a parallel major-parallel minor relationship. This relationship between parallel keys occurs when two keys—one major and one minor—share the same tonic (but utilize different key signatures).

parallel keys

E major

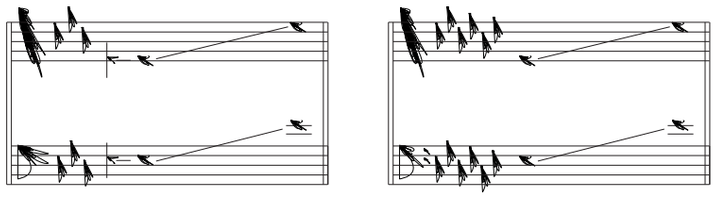


e minor



Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 156

E♭ major e minor



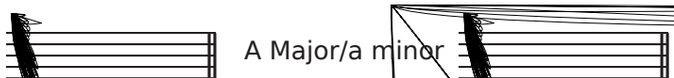
Notice in these examples that the key signatures between parallel major and par allel minor vary by three accidentals, that is, E major has 4 sharps, e minor has 1 sharp; E♭ major has 3 flats, e♭ minor has 6 flats. This difference of 3 accidentals holds true for all of the parallel major-parallel minor relationships.

Both the parallel and the relative major/minor relationships are used frequently by composers, particularly in larger works such as sonatas and symphonies. The parallel relationship between keys allows the composer to switch a section of a work from major to minor (or vice versa) without changing the tonic note (called a change of mode), whereas the relative relationship allows them to keep the same key signature but utilize a different tonic (called a modulation).

CLASS WORK

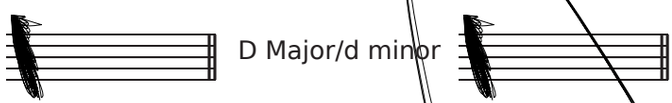
Write the key signatures for the following parallel keys.

A Major/a minor

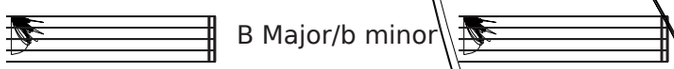


C Major/c minor

D Major/d minor



B Major/b minor

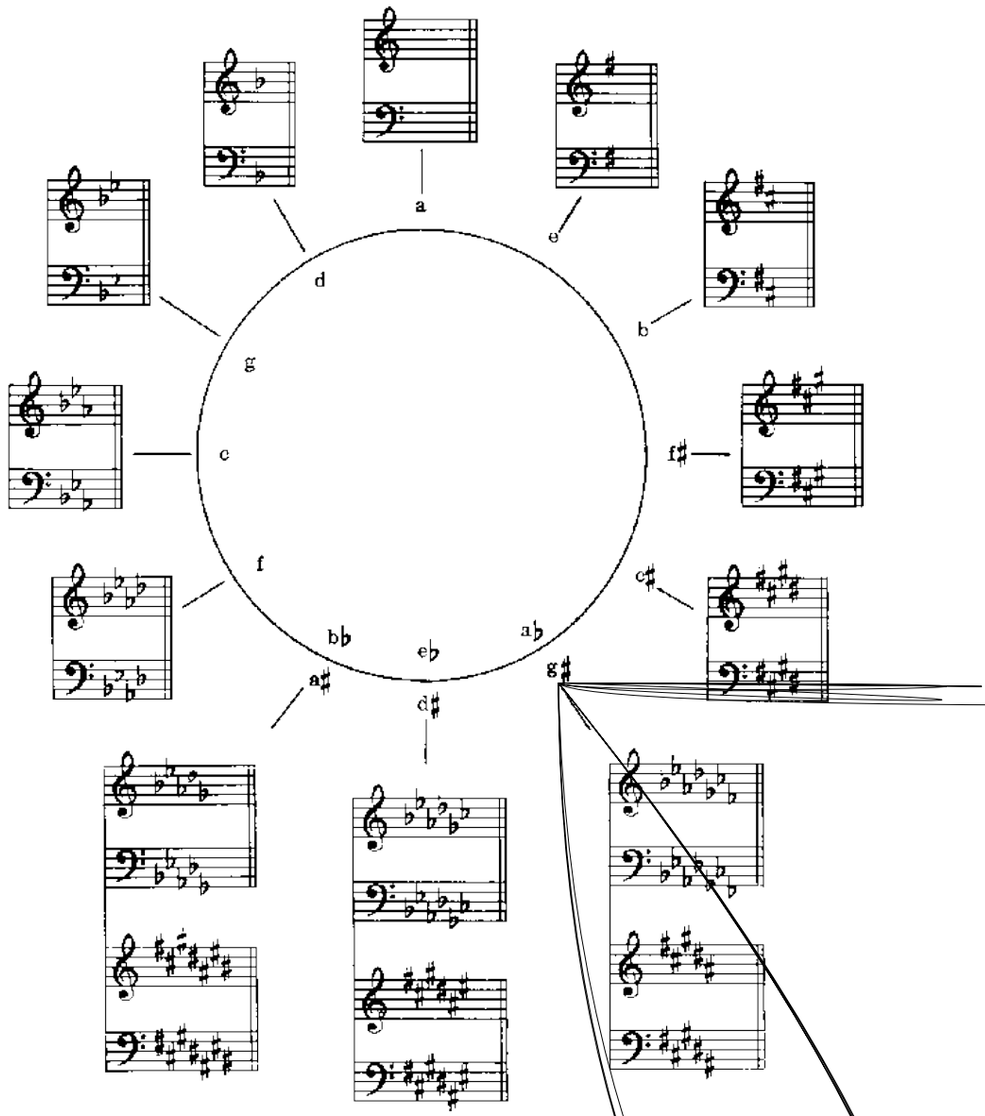


The Circle of Fifths: Minor Keys

For minor keys, as for major keys, a circle of fifths can be constructed. The same perfect-fifth relationship between adjacent keys exists, and again the enharmonic keys appear at the bottom of the circle. Notice also that the circle of fifths for major keys can be superimposed over the one for minor keys. This works because of the parallel relationship between major and minor keys discussed earlier. At this point

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 157

it might be more useful to you to combine the two in your mind so that you remember one circle of fifths for both major and minor keys.

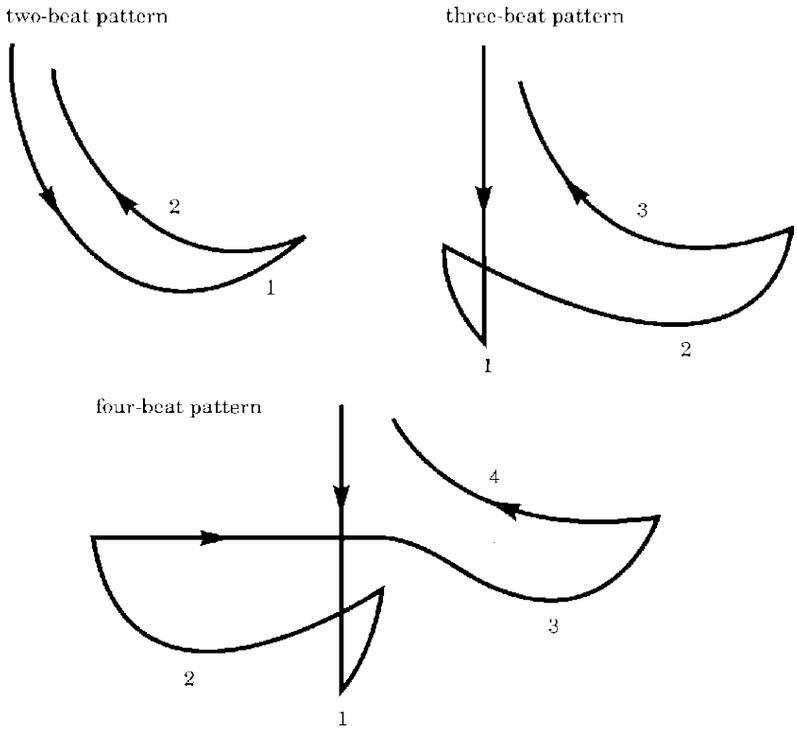


Rhythm Revisited: Conducting Patterns

So far, the rhythmic patterns you have been asked to clap can be performed by the class without a conductor. To perform more complicated patterns, or patterns consisting of three or four separate parts, however, you will probably need a conductor to keep everyone together. Indicating the beats and keeping the group together are important functions of the conductor.

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 158

The conductor indicates the beat with movements of the right arm. The following are the basic arm movements for duple, triple, and quadruple meters.



When practicing these patterns, remember the following points:

1. The beat pattern is always performed by the right arm only. This is true even if you are left-handed.
2. Always practice standing up. It is difficult to conduct correctly while sitting down, and almost no one does.
3. The first beat of each pattern is called the downbeat; the last beat is called the upbeat.
4. Keep the beat pattern high enough for everyone to see. The center of the pattern should be level with your chest, not your waist.
5. The arm motion should always be fluid and smooth. Never let the arm come to a complete stop.
6. When beginning a pattern, always prepare for the first beat of the exercise by giving the beat that comes directly before it. Assume, for instance, that you are going to conduct an exercise that uses a three-beat pattern starting on the downbeat. To begin, you would give the previous upbeat as a preparation. This is called the preparatory beat.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Conducting

The following melodies are in duple, triple, and quadruple meters. Practice conducting each of these melodies while your teacher or another student plays them. Then practice conducting while you yourself sing each of them on la. Keep practicing until you are comfortable singing and conducting simultaneously.

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 159

MUSIC IN T và ÉC

Hush, lit-tle ba-by, don't say a word, Ma-ma's gonna buy you a mock-ing bird.

If that mock-ing bird don't sing, Ma-ma's gonna buy you a dia-mond ring.

Are you go - ing to Scar-borough Fair? Pars-ley, sage, rose-mary and thyme. Re

mem-ber me to one who lives there, She once was a true love of mine.

Oh, dear! What can the mat-ter be? Dear, dear! What can the mat-ter be?

Oh, dear! What can the mat-ter be? John-ny's so long at the fair.

"Sourwood Mountain"

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 160

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Composing and Conducting

Write a short composition in compound meter for four percussionists. Use hand claps and found sounds available in the classroom. Create a score for your piece that clearly shows the four separate parts. Then, assign parts to various members of the class and give a performance, with you conducting, to the rest of the class. You may wish to rehearse once or twice before performing for the class. When conducting, remember to give a silent beat to prepare your performers to begin together.

Focus

Almost all beginning musicians have favorite keys. These are usually keys with no sharps or flats, or at most one or two, which seem easier. Sometimes, people study theory or take lessons for years and still find keys with more than four or five sharps or flats too difficult to negotiate successfully. Usually, the problem feeds on itself—some keys are initially easier, therefore we choose to work primarily in those keys. But this is a mistake; we don't learn by avoidance.

If you are going to be a good musician, even a good amateur musician, you need to be fluent in all keys—both major and minor. This ability won't come immediately, but it will develop slowly with practice. You can make working with minor scales easier by being certain that you understand the minor key signatures and how they relate to the major keys. If you need additional practice at recognizing or writing minor key signatures, do that now, before you begin the next chapter. You will find Chapter 9 much easier to understand once you are comfortable with the minor key signatures.

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 161

Practice Materials 8-1

Identify the relative minor key for the following major keys.

1. E major _____
2. D major _____
3. G♭ major _____
4. F major _____
5. C♯ major _____
6. G major _____
7. A major _____
8. A♭ major _____
9. C major _____
10. B major _____
11. F♯ major _____
12. D♭ major _____
13. E♭ major _____
14. B♭ major _____

Practice Materials 8-2

Identify the major key and the relative minor key that have the given number of sharps or flats.

	Major	Relative minor
1. two flats	_____	_____
2. two sharps	_____	_____
3. three sharps	_____	_____
4. four flats	_____	_____
5. seven sharps	_____	_____
6. five flats	_____	_____
7. six sharps	_____	_____
8. three flats	_____	_____
9. one sharp	_____	_____
10. six flats	_____	_____
11. five sharps	_____	_____
12. one flat	_____	_____
13. four sharps	_____	_____
14. seven flats	_____	_____

Practice Materials 8-3

Identify the relative major key for the following minor keys.

1. F♯ minor _____
2. D minor _____
3. A♭ minor _____
4. C♯ minor _____
5. A♯ minor _____
6. G minor _____
7. B♭ minor _____
8. E minor _____
9. D♭ minor _____
10. F minor _____
11. B minor _____
12. E♭ minor _____
13. C minor _____
14. G♭ minor _____

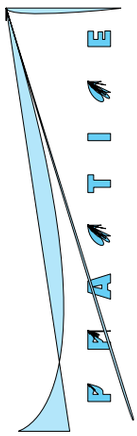
Practice Materials 8-4

Identify the minor keys represented by the following key signatures.

1.

_____ _____ _____ _____

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 162



Practice Materials 8-5

Write out the indicated minor key signatures, using sharps or flats as required.

1. G minor

2. C minor

3. A♭ minor

4. C♯ minor

5. A minor

6. D♯ minor

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 163

7. B♭ minor

8. G♯ minor

9. E♭ minor

10. A minor

11. D minor

12. A♯ minor

13. F minor

14. G♯ minor

15. F♯ minor

16. B minor

17. D♯ minor

18. C♮ minor

19. E minor

20. E♭ minor

21. F♯ minor

22. B minor

23. F minor

24. A♯ minor

25. A♭ minor

26. B minor

Duckworth_Music9e_08.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 164

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 165

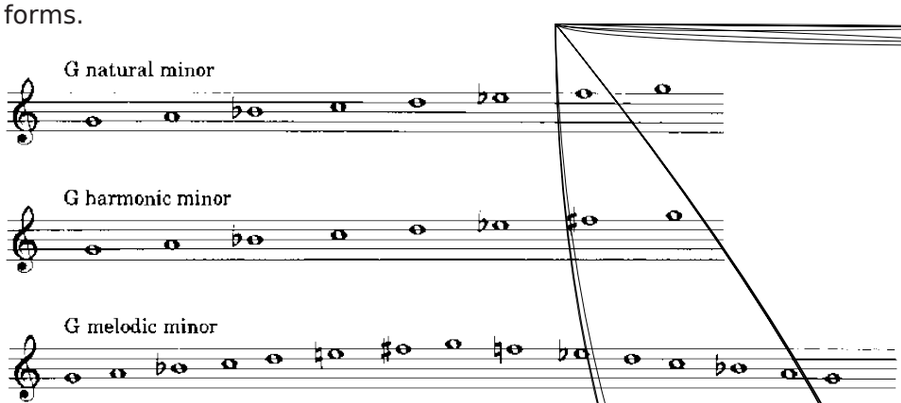
CHAPTER NINE

Minor Scales

There is only one minor scale. But unlike the major scale, the minor scale comes in three forms. For convenience, they have been given the names natural minor, harmonic minor, and melodic minor. The reason there can be three forms of one scale is that the minor scale sounds less stable than the major scale. If you change a note of the major scale you destroy it; it doesn't sound the same anymore. But if you change a note in the minor scale it can sound more interesting; it offers more variety without seeming to destroy the basic characteristics of the scale.

CLASS WORK

Here are the three forms of the minor scale. With your teacher's help, begin by singing through each of them and discussing what you hear in the three different forms.



Why are there three different versions of the minor scale? This is a complicated question that has never been completely answered. Some say that the various forms of the minor scale evolved slowly over a considerable period of time. Others say they grew to serve new melodic and harmonic interests. Still others say the alterations to natural minor are pitches borrowed from the parallel major scale. While there is some truth to all these answers, this one is most pertinent to our work: Even though it's all one scale, each version of that scale has a unique harmonic or melodic advan tage that makes it more or less useful for various musical situations. As you study this chapter, remember that each version of the minor scale has a separate pattern of whole steps and half steps that gives the resultant melody and harmony their characteristic sound. Also keep in mind that, even though we will be studying each version individually, most music is seldom written strictly in "melodic" or "harmonic" minor. Composers often change scale forms within a piece, depending on the musi cal situation.

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 166

MUSIC IN THEORY

Hearing Major and Minor

The following excerpts are from two folk songs. You may already know one or both of them. The first one is in the key of D major, the second is in D minor. Ask someone to play both examples in class. Remember that the difference in sound or feeling that you hear between major keys and minor keys is a result of two different interval patterns of whole steps and half steps.

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 167

MUSIC IN THEORY

Determining the Key

If one key signature can represent two different keys, how can we tell which key a piece is in? This question can give students a great deal of unnecessary trouble. The fact is that the key signature alone does not give the answer; it gives two possibilities—the key is either major or minor. To be certain of the correct key, you must look within the music itself. The following suggestions should help.

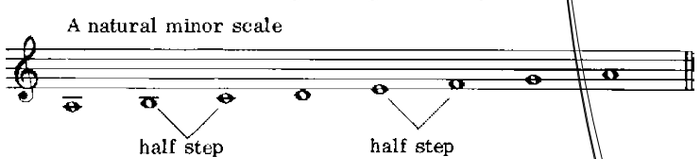
1. Check the last note of the piece. The final note is almost certain to be the tonic.
2. Scan the piece for accidentals. Since many pieces in a minor key use more than one version of the minor scale, and since the key signature indicates only the natural minor version, any additional accidentals within the piece indicate a minor tonality (raised sevenths mean harmonic minor, raised sixths and sevenths/lowered sixths and sevenths mean melodic minor).

Obtain a book of piano or vocal selections, and practice identifying the key of each piece by checking for the tonic and for accidentals. After practicing this method for a while, you should be able to determine the key of a new piece with little difficulty.

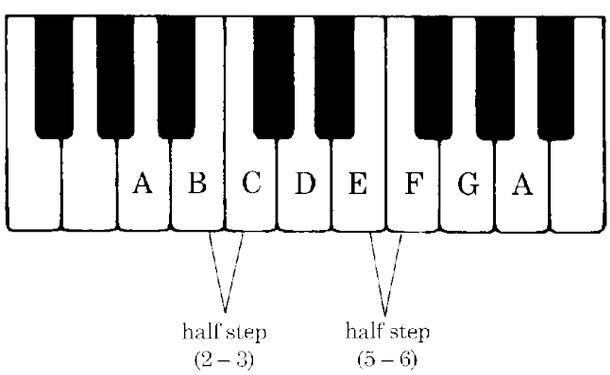
Natural Minor Scale

Like the major scale, the natural minor scale contains five whole steps and two half steps. The half steps, however, do not occur in the same place. This reordering of the interval pattern gives the natural minor scale its unique quality.

In the natural minor scale, the two half steps occur between the second and third degrees and the fifth and sixth degrees. The following illustration shows a natural minor scale beginning on the pitch A.

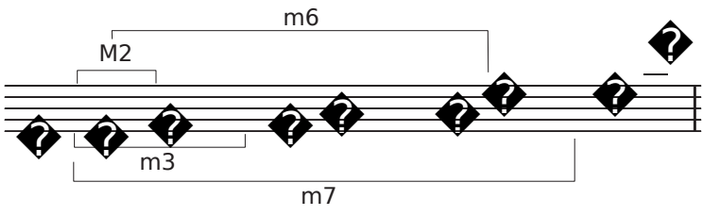


Notice that the natural minor scale beginning on A has no sharps or flats—that is, on the keyboard the pattern falls on all white keys.

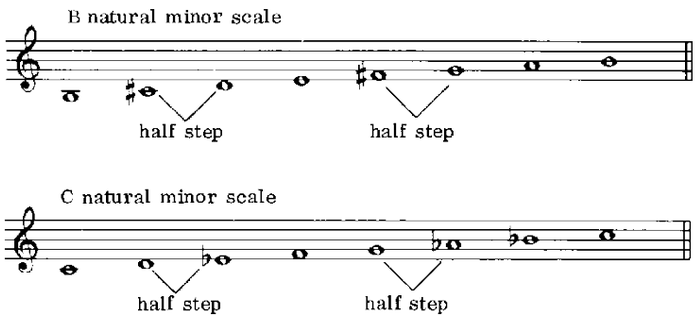


Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 168

Also notice that, as in the major scale, the intervals between the tonic and the fourth and fifth scale degrees of the natural minor scale remain perfect (P4 and P5), and the interval from the tonic to the second scale degree remains major (M2). But unlike the major scale, the intervals between the tonic and the third, sixth, and seventh scale degrees in natural minor are minor intervals (m3, m6, and m7), rather than major intervals as in the major scale.



When the natural minor scale begins on any pitch other than A, one or more accidentals will be required to keep the interval pattern intact.



It may be useful to compare the intervals of the natural minor scale with those of the major scale. The following chart lists the intervals found within both scales and the number of half steps in each interval. In particular, compare the intervals of the third, sixth, and seventh between the two scales. It is these minor intervals above the tonic of the natural minor scale that contribute to the “minor” sound of the scale.

Intervals of the Natural Minor and Major Scales

Natural minor		Major	
Interval	Number of half steps	Number of half steps	Interval
Perfect unison	0	0	Perfect unison
Major 2nd	2	2	Major 2nd
Minor 3rd	3	4	Major 3rd
Perfect 4th	5	5	Perfect 4th
Perfect 5th	7	7	Perfect 5th
Minor 6th	8	9	Major 6th
Minor 7th	10	11	Major 7th
Perfect 8th	12	12	Perfect 8th

Remember, however, that trying to count large intervals with half steps is always subject to error. When dealing with large intervals, it is better, and generally more accurate, to use harmonic inversion. Refer to Chapter 7 if you need to refresh your memory about the harmonic inversion of intervals.

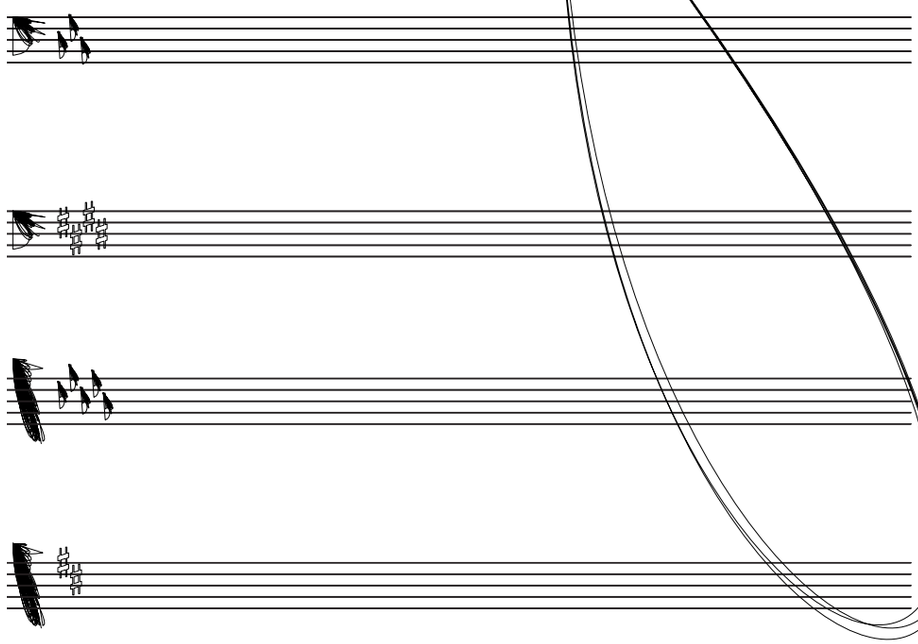
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 169

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, write natural minor scales from the given pitches. Then, in the space to the right, write the key signature for each scale.

CLASS WORK

Write the natural minor scale indicated by each of the following key signatures.



Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 170

MUSIC IN THEORY

Hearing Major and Minor

The American folk song “Erie Canal” is in the key of D natural minor. In the space provided, rewrite this folk song in the parallel major key of D major. Then, sing or play both versions in class and discuss the differences between the two types of scales.

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 171

Harmonic Minor Scale

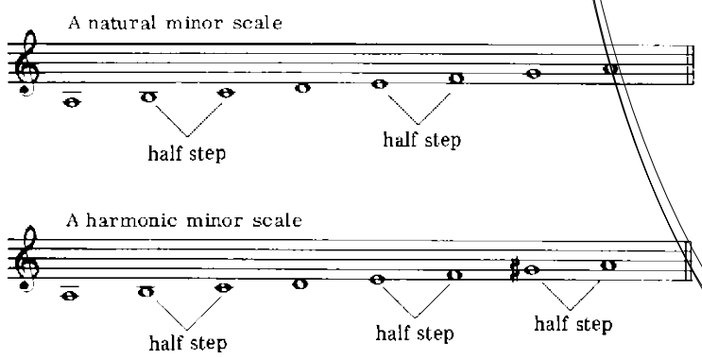
Sing or play a natural minor scale. Then, sing or play a major scale. Do you notice a difference in the interval between the seventh and first degrees of the two scales? The seventh degree of the natural minor scale is not a half step below the tonic; it is a whole step away, and in this position is called a subtonic instead of a leading tone.

When the seventh degree of a scale is a whole step below the tonic, a somewhat ambiguous-sounding scale is created. Because of the whole step, the tonic does not seem to offer as strong a center of gravity as it does in the major scale. This weak ening of the tonic's attraction is particularly striking in the harmony derived from the natural minor scale. This effect can be demonstrated by having someone in class play the following two versions of the opening measures of a "Praeludium" from The Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedemann Bach by J. S. Bach. The first version is based on the natural minor scale:

The second version is based on another form of minor scale known as the harmonic minor scale:

Notice how much stronger the harmony seems when chords are built from the harmonic minor version of the minor scale.

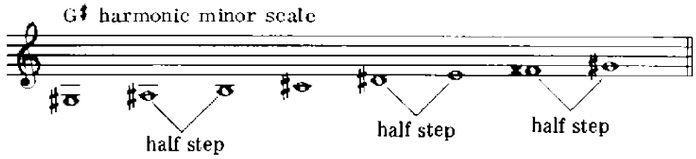
The difference between the natural minor scale and the harmonic minor is that the harmonic minor version borrows the leading tone of the parallel major scale (a pitch a half step below the tonic) to replace its own subtonic (a pitch a whole step below). In technical terms, the subtonic of the natural minor scale is raised a chromatic half step, thereby creating a real leading tone. Composers do this in order to create a stronger harmony, that is, a greater feeling of harmonic motion between chords.



When the seventh degree is raised to create a leading tone, the resulting harmonic minor version of the scale has three half steps—between the second and third, fifth and sixth, and seventh and first degrees. To raise the seventh degree and still maintain the

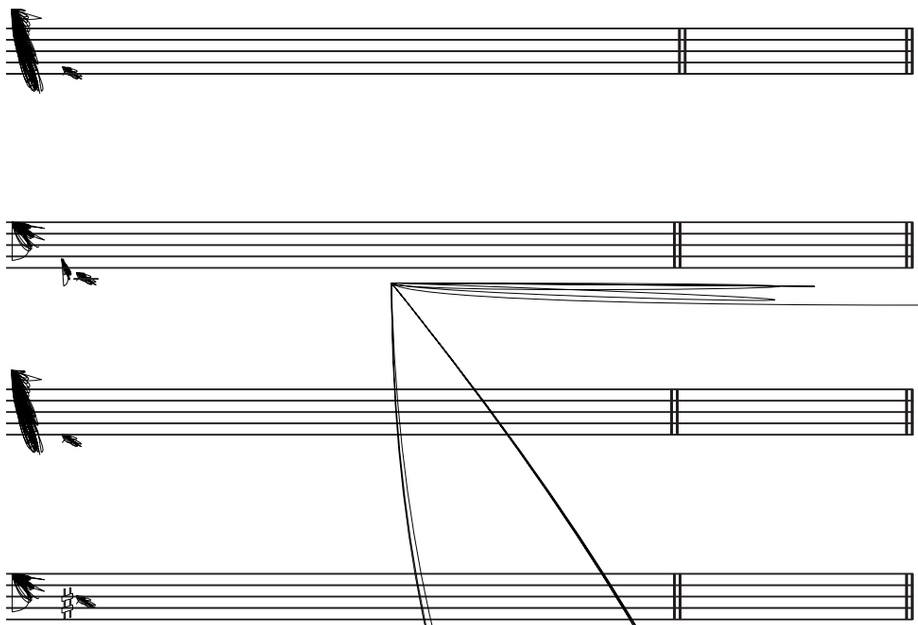
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 172

practice of having only one pitch of each letter name requires occasional double sharps. Remember: The double sharp sign raises the pitch of a note by two half steps.



CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, write harmonic minor scales from the given pitches. To begin, write the natural minor scale and then borrow the leading tone from the par allel major to make it harmonic minor. Then, in the space to the right, write the key signature for each scale.



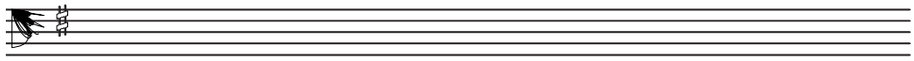
While the harmonic minor version of the minor scale strengthens the harmony, it also creates a melodic problem. Have you noticed the interval between the sixth and seventh degrees of the harmonic minor scale?

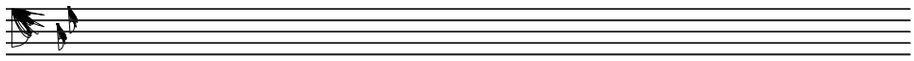
This interval, created by borrowing the leading tone from the parallel major, is an augmented second (three half steps). The augmented second is often difficult to sing or play in tune because although when written it looks like a second, it has the same number of half steps as a minor third and thus sounds wider than it looks on the staff.

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 173

CLASS WORK

Write the harmonic minor scale indicated by each of the following key signatures.





MUSIC IN T vàlEÇ

Hearing Major and Minor

Rewrite the following melody from the original key of G major to the key of G minor, using accidentals to create the harmonic minor version. Since the tonic note "G" does not change, this is known as a modal transforma tion or a change of mode, instead of a modulation. When you have finished, sing or play both versions in class and discuss the differences in sound between the major and harmonic minor versions of the same melody.

"The Wabash Cannon Ball"

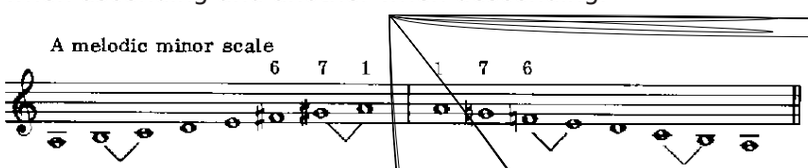
(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 174

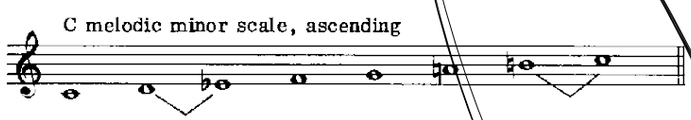
MUSIC IN

Melodic Minor Scale

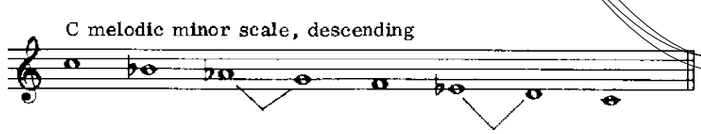
As mentioned earlier, the harmonic minor version of the minor scale strengthens the harmony by creating a leading tone that is a half step below the tonic. Doing this, however, causes a problem for the melody. The interval of the augmented second that is thus created between the sixth and seventh scale degrees of the harmonic minor scale can be difficult to sing or play. So the *melodic minor* version of the minor scale developed, in part, as a means of avoiding this augmented second. Notice that melodic minor is the only version of the minor scale that has one interval pattern when ascending and another when descending.



In the ascending form of the melodic minor scale, both the sixth and seventh degrees are borrowed from the parallel major. Technically, the seventh degree, as in the harmonic minor version, is raised to create a half-step relationship between the seventh degree and the tonic, and the sixth degree is raised to avoid the augmented second. Notice, however, that these alterations create a scale in which only the third degree is different from the major scale.



This similarity to the major scale is so noticeable that it almost obscures the minor-sounding quality of this version of the minor scale. Since the leading tone is needed more often in ascending musical passages than in descending ones, the descending version of melodic minor lowers both the seventh and sixth degrees. This alteration, which actually produces a descending natural minor scale, balances the ascending version and helps restore a minor-sounding quality to the scale.

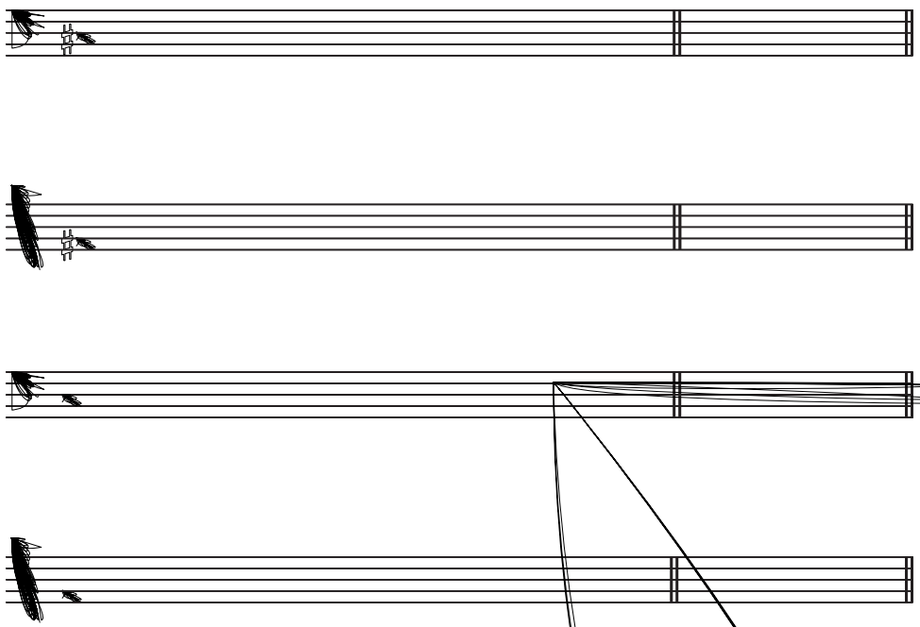


Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 175

As in the harmonic minor, double sharp signs will occasionally be required to form the melodic minor.

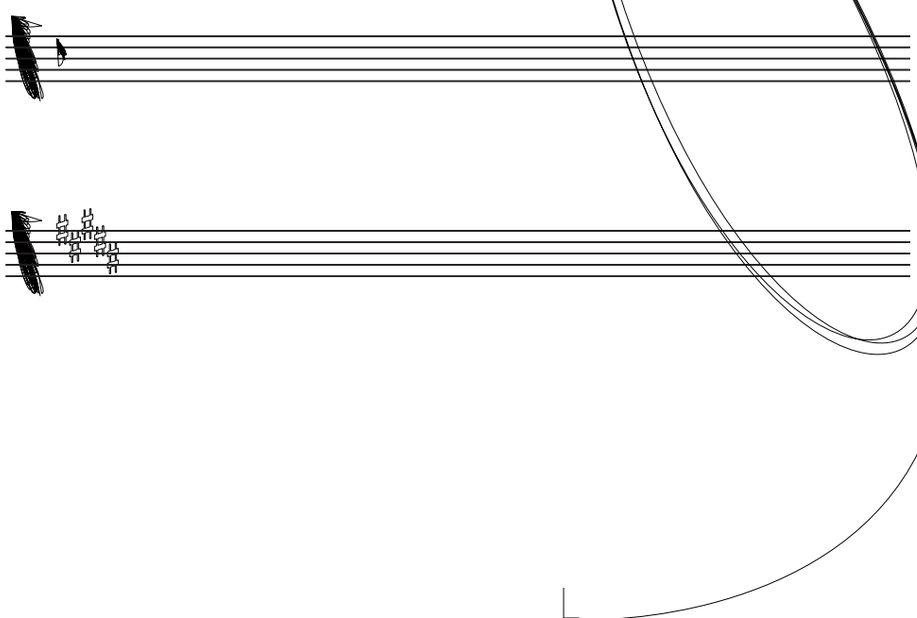
CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, write melodic minor scales from the given pitches. You may wish to begin by writing natural minor scales and then adding accidentals as necessary. When you have finished, write the key signature for each scale in the space to the right.

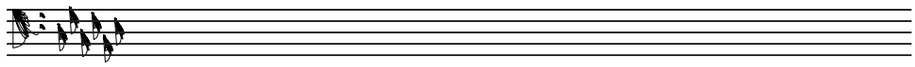


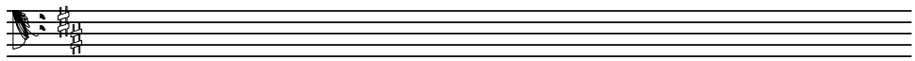
CLASS WORK

Write the melodic minor scale indicated by each of the following key signatures.



Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 176





MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Ear Training

Ask someone in class who plays an instrument or keyboard to prepare a well-known tune such as “The Star Spangled Banner” or “Three Blind Mice” so that he or she can play it in its original major key as well as in the three forms of the minor scale. As a class discuss the differences between (1) the major and natural minor version and (2) the three forms of the minor versions.

Minor Scales in Actual Music

So far, this chapter has made it appear that there are three distinct forms of the minor scale, and that composers writing a piece of music in a minor key choose one of them to the exclusion of the other two. Although it is useful to think this way when you are first learning the three forms of the minor scale, this is not what really happens in the music. In actuality, composers view the sixth and seventh degrees of the minor scale as unstable (since these are also the scale degrees borrowed from the parallel major), and they often use all three forms of the scale within the same composition. This is why it is more accurate to say that the three forms of the minor scale are not really three different scales, but rather they represent three different solutions, or possible approaches, to various harmonic and melodic problems within a composition written in a minor key.

Consider for a moment the names harmonic minor and melodic minor. These names give us a clue as to why and how composers might use various versions of the minor scale within the same piece. Remember that the harmonic minor version creates a real leading tone a half step below the tonic, and that this, in turn, creates slightly different chords and stronger harmonies. The harmonic minor form of the minor scale, therefore, is used by composers primarily to create particular chords and harmonic progressions. The melodic minor version, on the other hand, deals with the difficult interval of the augmented second, and is used mainly in melodic situations.

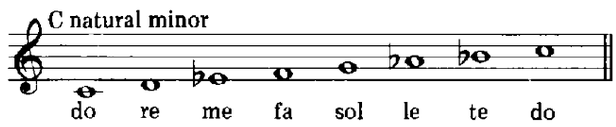
Although this may seem confusing at first, particularly when you look at new pieces in minor keys and try to decide which forms of the minor scale are being used at any particular point, it will become clearer with practice. Just keep in mind that the sixth and seventh degrees of the minor scale are unstable, and you must look inside the music to be certain which form is being used.

The following example is a sonata in C minor by Scarlatti. As you know, the key signature always identifies the natural minor version of the scale. The appearance of both B natural and A natural within this excerpt indicates that the melodic minor form of the minor scale is the one being used at this point. Notice also that the ascending form of the melodic minor scale sometimes occurs in descending passages, as it does in measures 2, 3, and 4 of this example.

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 177

How to Sing Minor Scales

There are conflicting opinions about the correct method of sight singing minor scales. One school argues that the syllables of the major scale from la to la should be used to show the inherent relationship between the major scale and the minor scale. The other school argues that retaining the sound of the tonic with the syllable do is more important. According to this view, all scales should be started on do and the remaining syllables altered when necessary.



As you can see in this example for natural minor, the syllable for the third scale degree is me, rather than mi, because the third degree is lowered. Also, the

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 178

syllables for pitches 6 and 7 are le and te, rather than la and ti, because the sixth and seventh scale degrees are lowered. Similar alterations in syllables are necessary for the harmonic and melodic versions of the minor scale.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Sight Singing Minor Scales

The two methods of sight singing minor scales are given below for each of the three forms of minor scales. Sing the scales both ways. Your teacher will decide which system is most advantageous for you. Then, practice that system until you can sing the minor scales easily and accurately.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Sight Singing Melodies in Minor Keys

Sing or play the following melodies. Locate the tonic for each melody, and identify the principal form of the minor scale on which each melody is based. Then, write the appropriate sight-singing syllables in the spaces provided, and learn to sing one or more of the melodies, using the sight-singing syllables.

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 179

MUSIC IN THEORY and EAR

How to Sing Minor Scales

MUSIC IN THEORY and EAR

Ear Training

The excerpts below are all in minor keys. Ask someone from the class who plays piano to play them. As you listen, try to determine if each excerpt uses the natural, harmonic, or melodic version of the minor scale, or some combination of these versions. This can be difficult, and you might make mistakes at first, but keep trying—you will see improvement with practice.

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 180

MUSIC IN

Bach: “Menuet” from The Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedemann Bach

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 181

Focus

The importance of scales to the process of becoming a better musician cannot be over emphasized. Scales contain the interval patterns of tonal music. All musicians, from concert pianists to jazz performers, recognize their importance and practice them regularly.

As a beginning music student, your first step is to learn the structure of the major and minor scales, and the ways in which these scales influence melody and harmony. The next step is to begin regarding scales as the basic musical element. If you sing or play an instrument, you should devote some of your daily practice to scale work. It is only through this type of drill that you will become musically famil iar with the tonal patterns of the music you wish to play. Practicing scales gives you this familiarity in a way that practicing pieces of music—no matter how difficult—does not.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Hearing Scales

As a musician, you should begin to notice the numerous ways in which scale passages appear in tonal music. In addition, you should develop the ability to identify various kinds of scales by their sound. To begin this process, your teacher will play ten scales. By sound, identify each scale as major, natural minor, harmonic minor, or melodic minor. With your teacher's or another student's help, repeat the process with different groups of scales until you are consistently successful in identifying them.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Sight Singing

Below are several melodies in minor keys from Appendix D. First, deter mine the form of the minor scale that each is in. Then, practice singing these melodies, both on la and with moveable do. Once you are familiar with the melodies, practice conducting them as you sing. It would also be helpful to practice playing them at the keyboard.

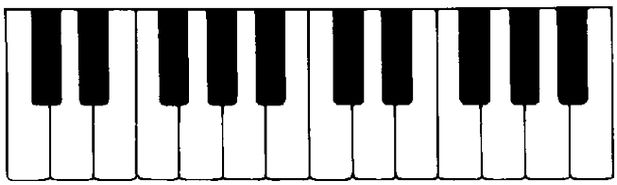
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 182

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 183

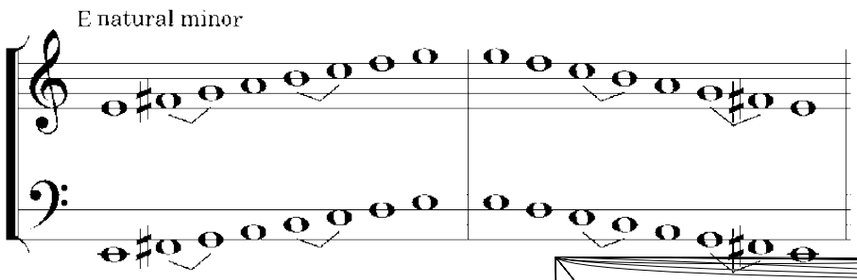
Practice Materials 9-1

From each starting pitch, write ascending and descending natural minor scales in both treble clef and bass clef. The scales in this exercise are grouped in perfect fifths so that each successive scale requires one additional sharp. The new sharp is always the supertonic of that scale.

Remember that, like the major scale, the minor scale is composed of an alpha betical sequence of pitches, and thus no chromatic half steps are used. When you have written the scales, check that the half steps fall only between the second and third and the fifth and sixth degrees. Indicate the half steps in each scale. A key board is provided to help you visualize the intervals.



EXAMPLE:



1. B natural minor

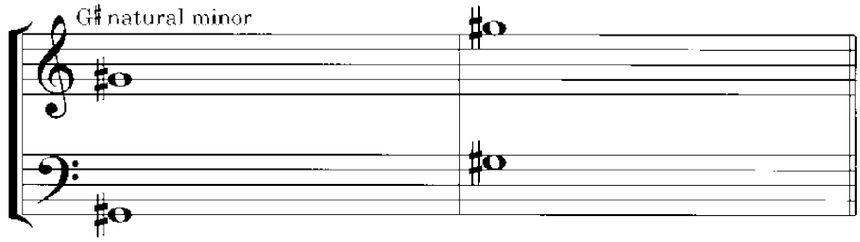
2. F♯ natural minor

3. C♯ natural minor

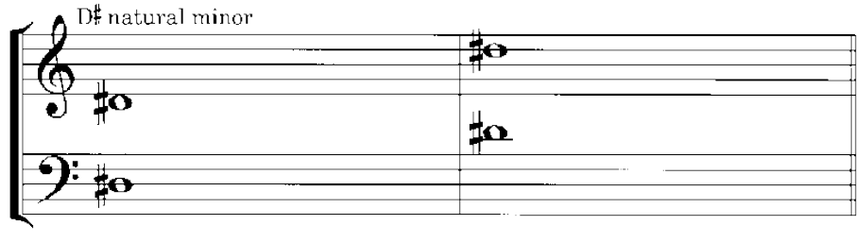
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 184

PRACTICE

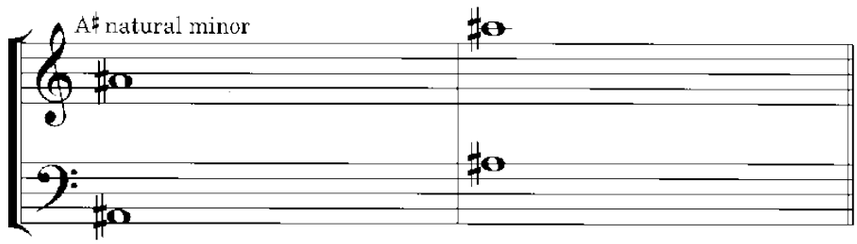
4. G♯ natural minor



5. D♯ natural minor

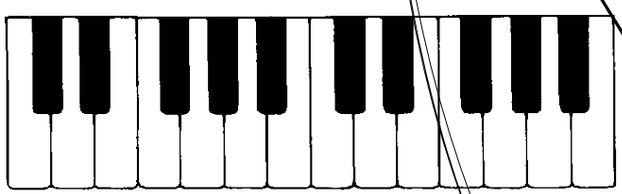


6. A♯ natural minor



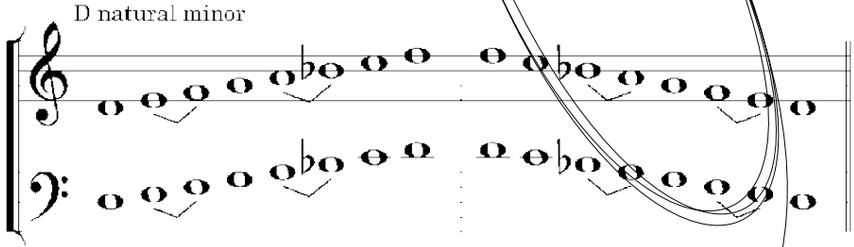
Practice Materials 9-2

Write ascending and descending natural minor scales from each starting pitch. (The scales in this exercise are grouped so that each succeeding scale requires one addi tional flat—the submediant of that scale.) When you have written the scales, check that the half steps fall only between the second and third and the fifth and sixth degrees. Indicate the half steps in each scale. A keyboard is provided to help you visualize the intervals.



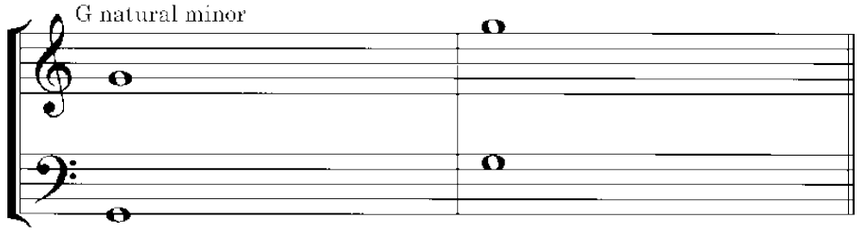
EXAMPLE:

D natural minor

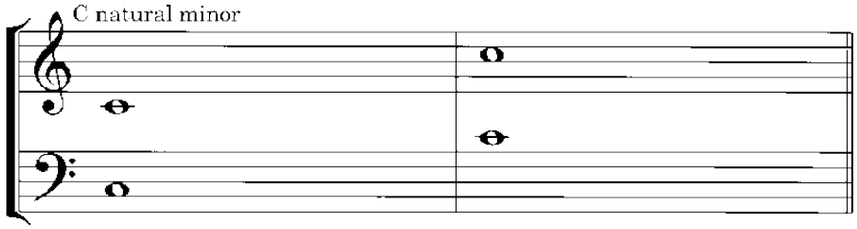


Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 185

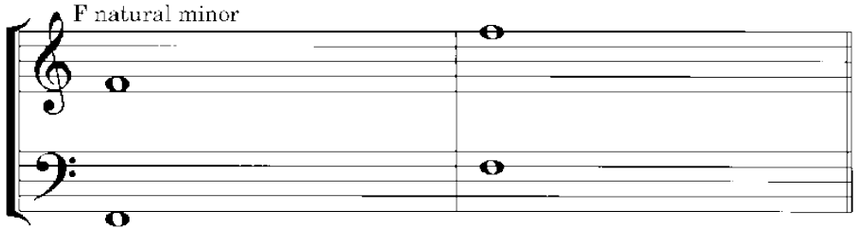
1. G natural minor



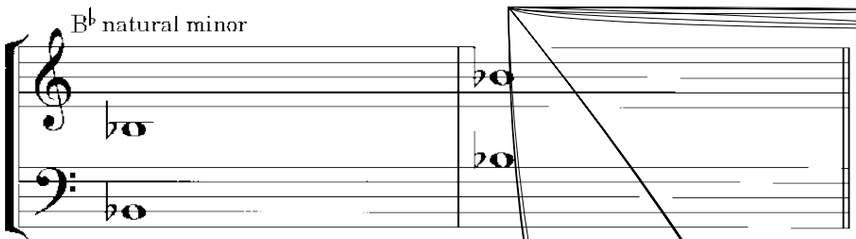
2. C natural minor



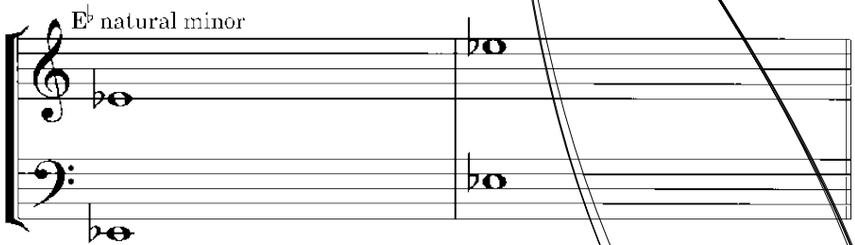
3. F natural minor



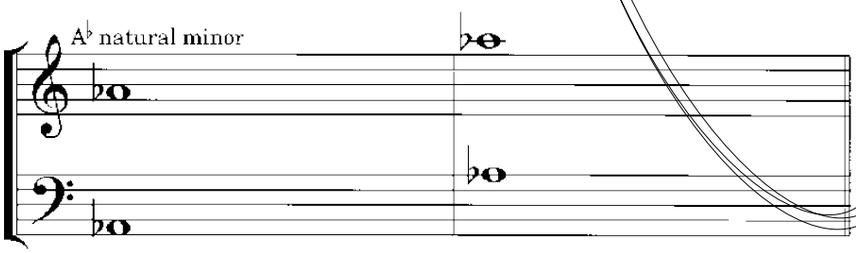
4. B♭ natural minor



5. E♭ natural minor



6. A♭ natural minor

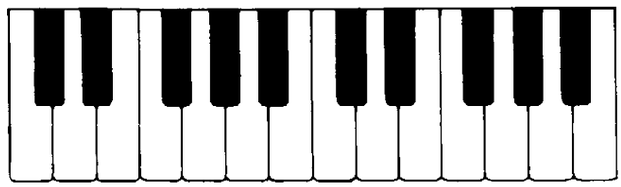


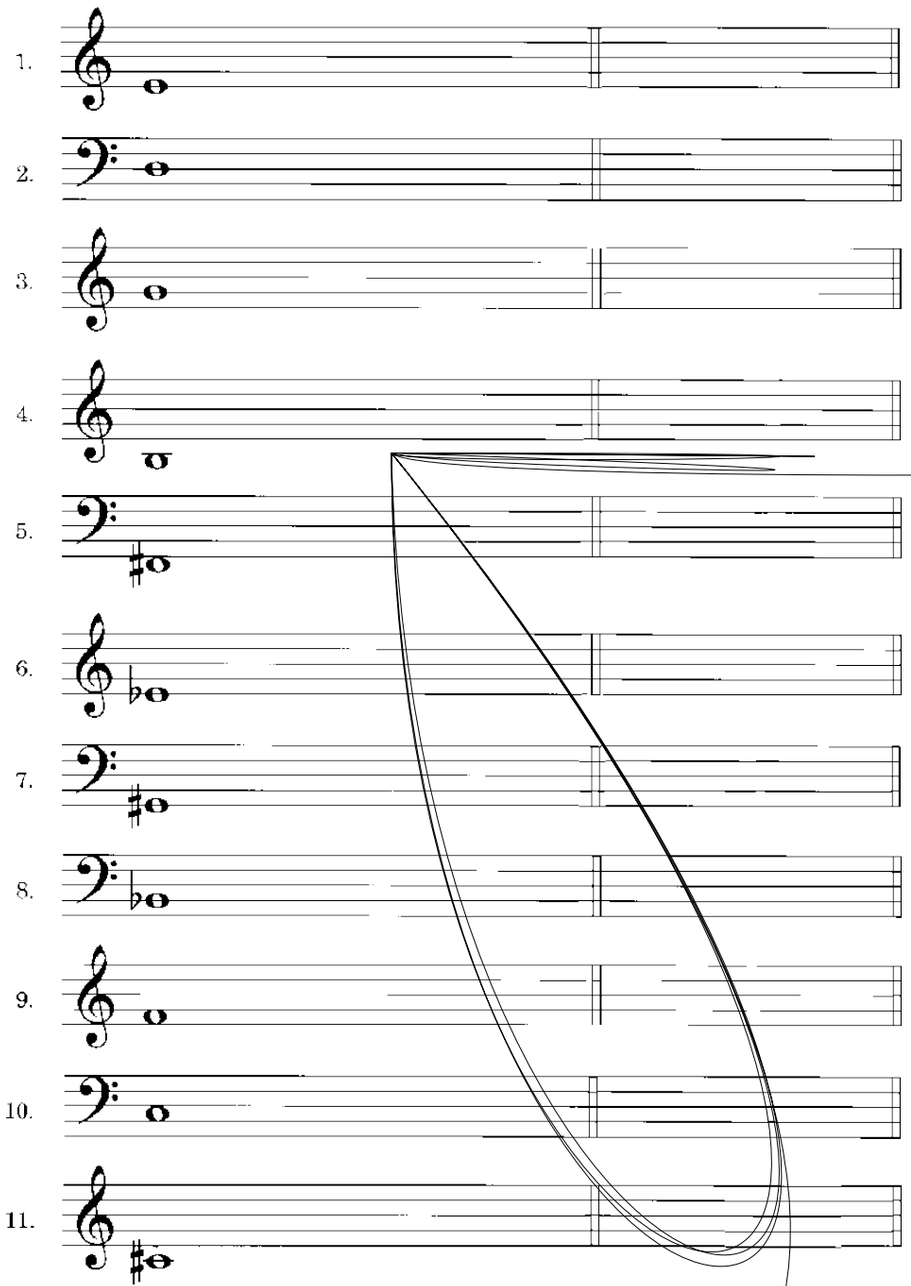
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 186

PRACTICE

Practice Materials 9-3

Write ascending natural minor scales beginning with the given tonic pitches. Then, in the space provided write the key signature for each scale. This exercise and the one following use the same scales you wrote in the previous two exercises, but now they are out of sequence. A keyboard is provided to help you visualize the intervals.

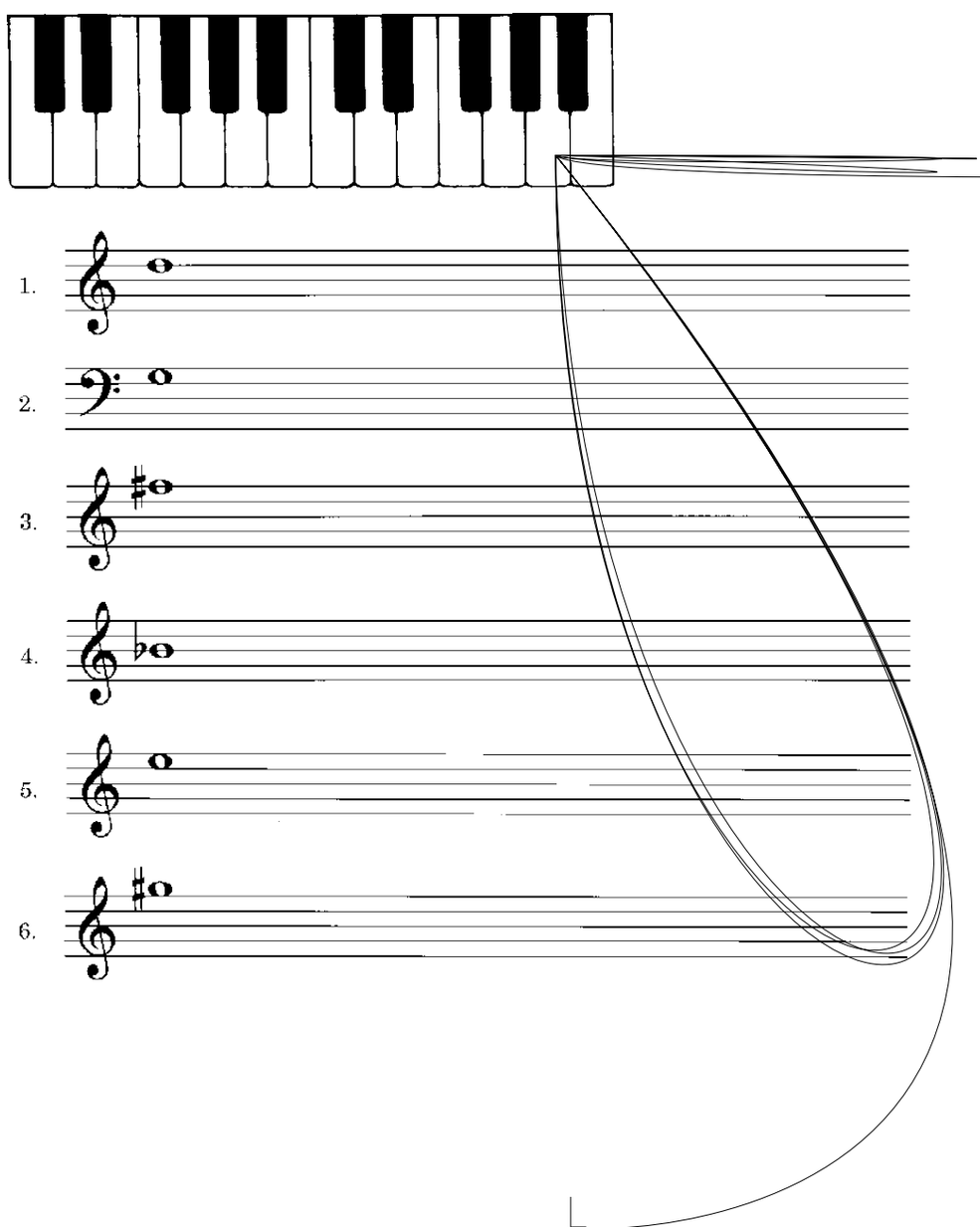




Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 187

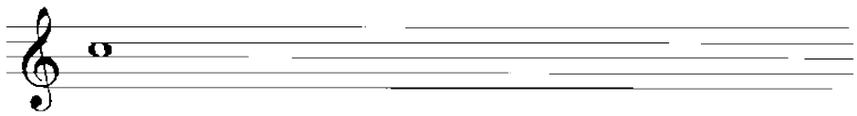
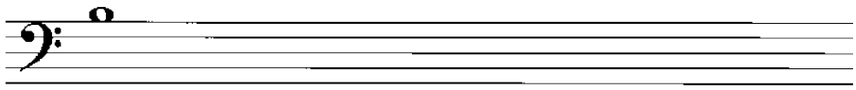
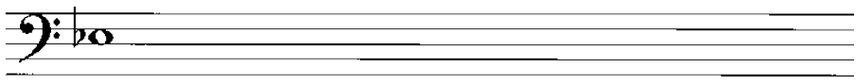
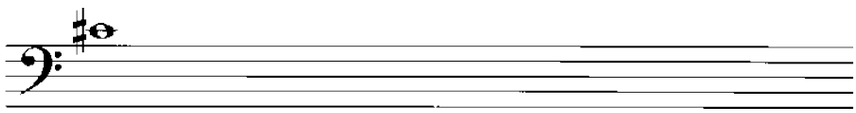
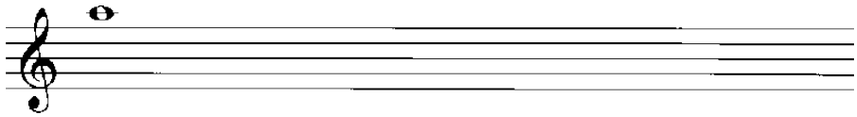
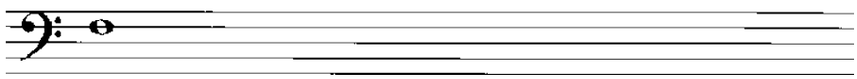
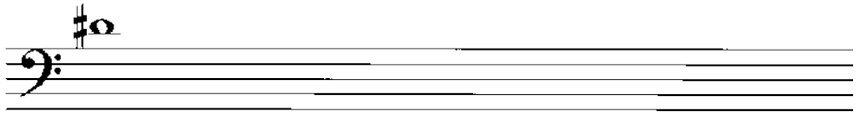
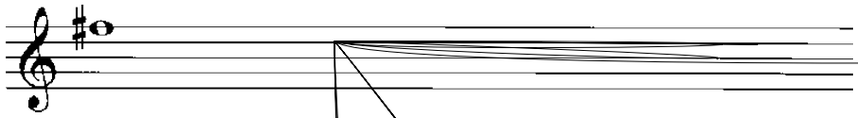
Practice Materials 9-4

Write natural minor scales in descending form, beginning with the given tonic pitches. Indicate the half steps in each scale. Remember that the pitches of a descending scale are in reverse order, that is, 8–7–6–5–4–3–2–1. A keyboard is provided to help you visualize the intervals.



Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 188

PRACTICE

7. 
8. 
9. 
10. 
11. 
12. 
13. 
14. 
15.

Practice Materials 9-5

Spell the indicated natural minor scales using letter names and any necessary accidentals. Indicate where the half steps occur in each scale.

EXAMPLE: ___G ___A^{f} ___B ___C^{f} ___D ___E ___F ___G

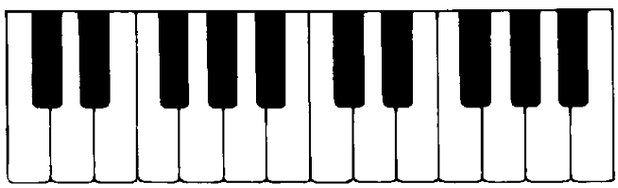
1. ___D ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
2. ___F ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
3. ___E ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
4. C$_{s}$ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
5. B$_{f}$ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
6. ___A ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
7. G$_{s}$ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
8. E$_{f}$ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
9. ___B ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
10. ___C ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
11. A$_{s}$ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 189

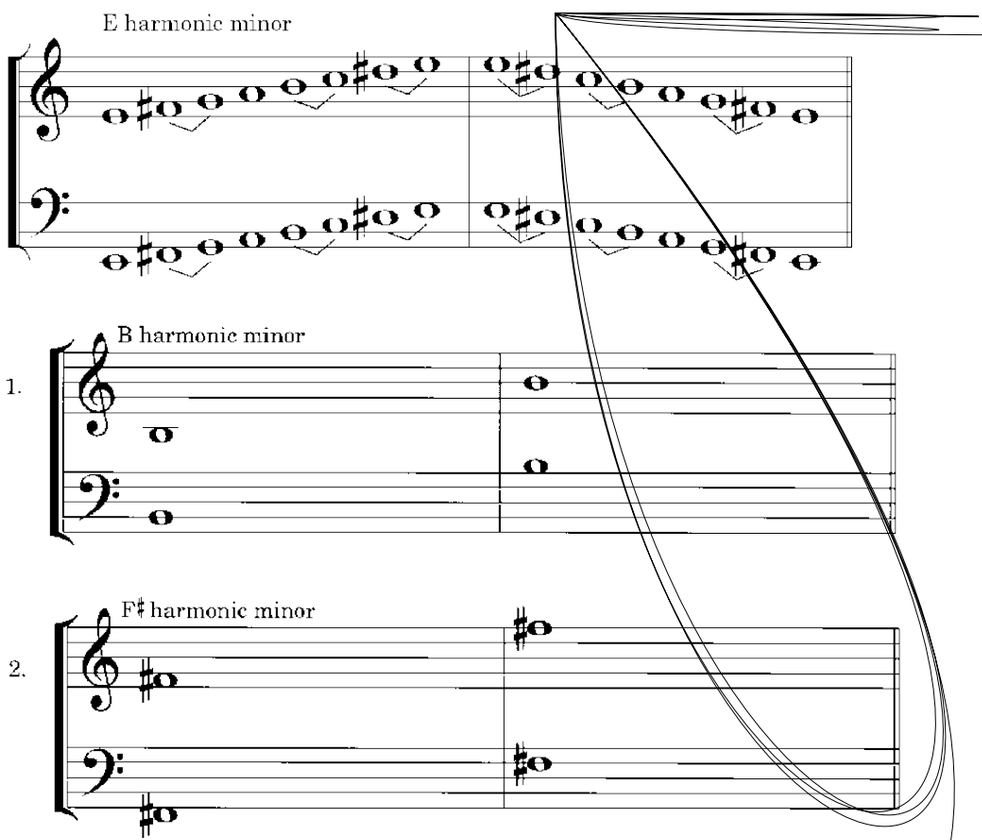
12. ___[s]F ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
13. ___[f]A ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
14. ___[s]D ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

Practice Materials 9-6

Write the following harmonic minor scales, in ascending and descending forms, in both treble clef and bass clef. A simple way to begin is to write a natural minor scale and then borrow the leading tone from the parallel major. This, of course, is the same as raising the seventh degree of the natural minor scale by a half step. (Try to learn to think both ways; don't rely on either method exclusively.) To check your work, make sure that each scale has three half steps, and then mark them. This exercise deals with sharp scales only. If you have any difficulty, use the keyboard to visualize the scale.

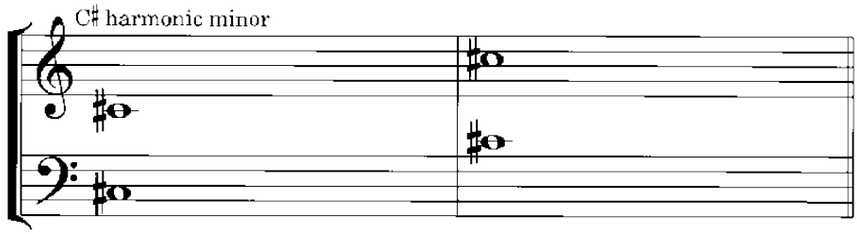


EXAMPLE:

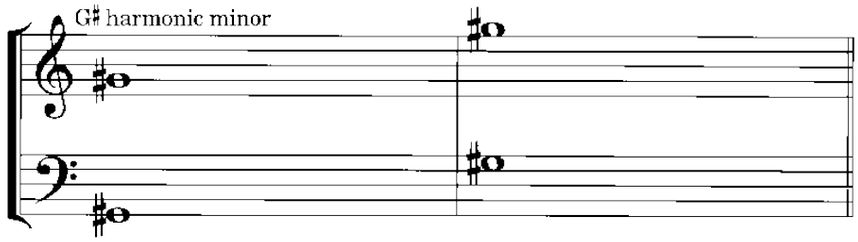


Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 190

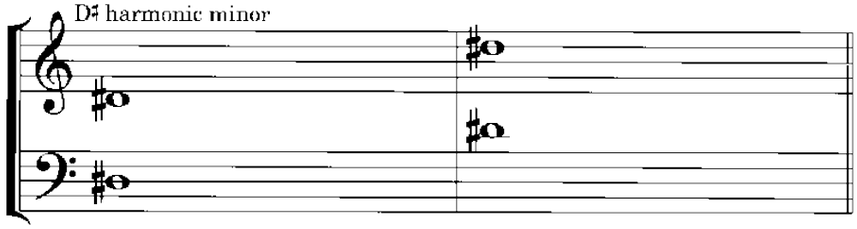
3. C♯ harmonic minor



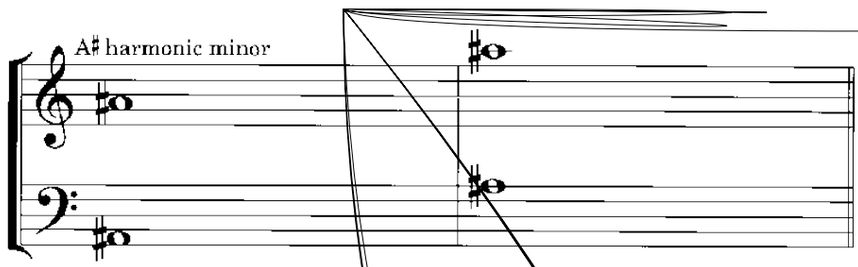
4. G♯ harmonic minor



5. D♯ harmonic minor

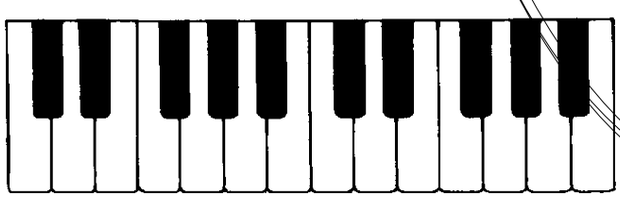


6. A♯ harmonic minor



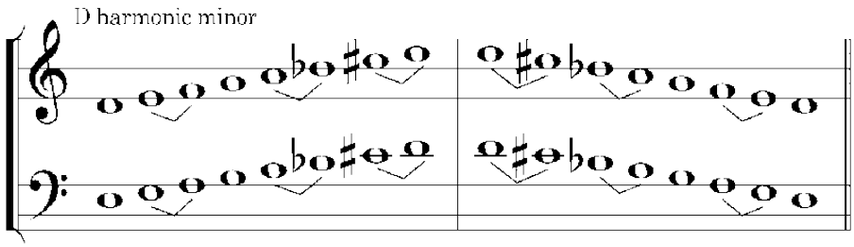
Practice Materials 9-7

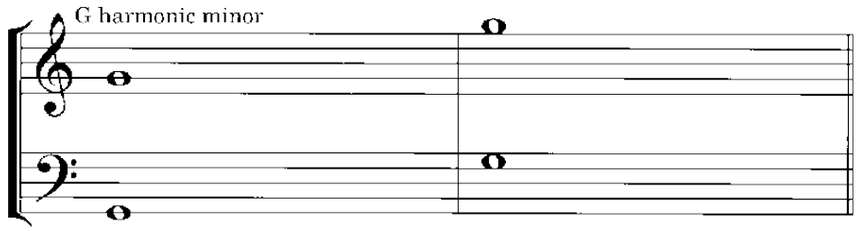
Write the following minor scale in the harmonic minor form, in both ascending and descending patterns, using both treble clef and bass clef. Even though this exercise deals with flat scales only, you will occasionally need to use a sharp sign in order to raise the seventh scale degree to the proper pitch. When you finish, check that each scale has three half steps, and mark them. Use the keyboard to help you visualize the scale.

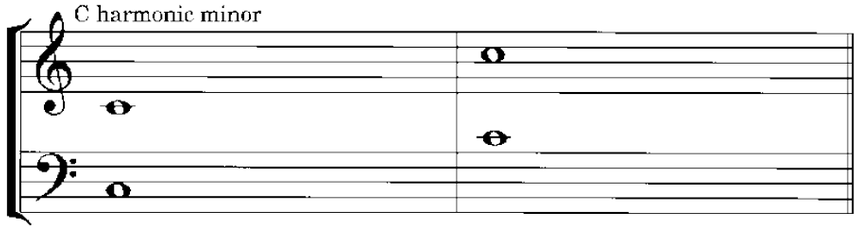


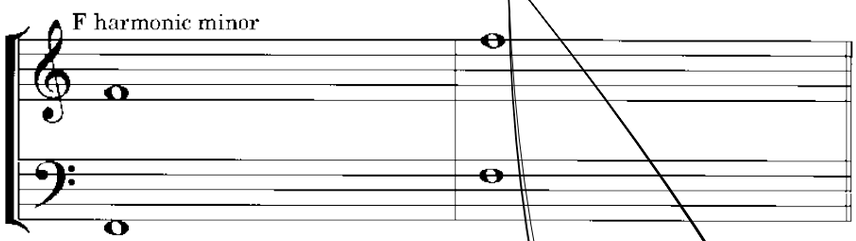
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 191

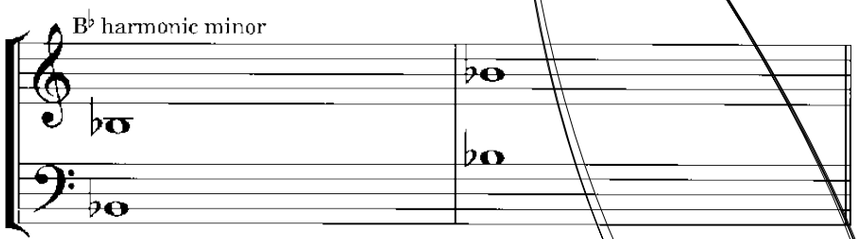
EXAMPLE:

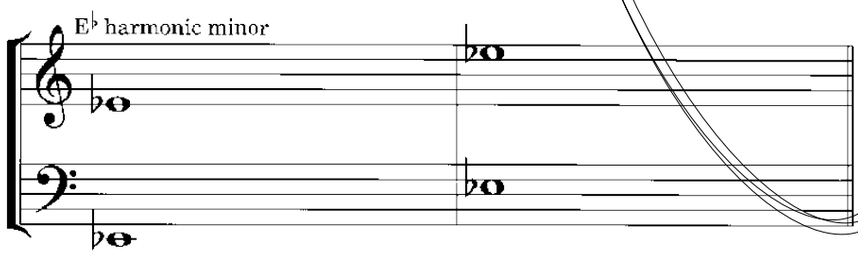


1. 

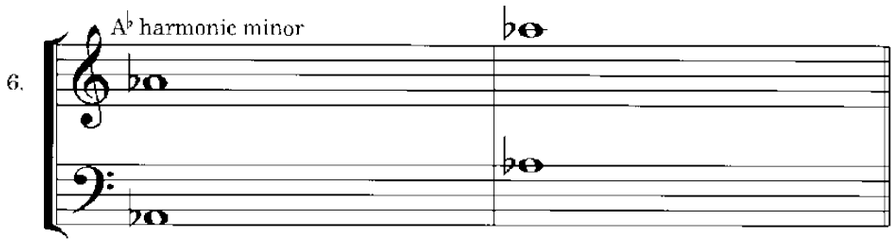
2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

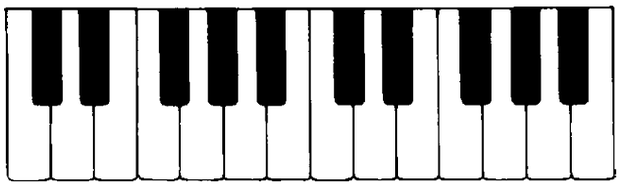
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 192

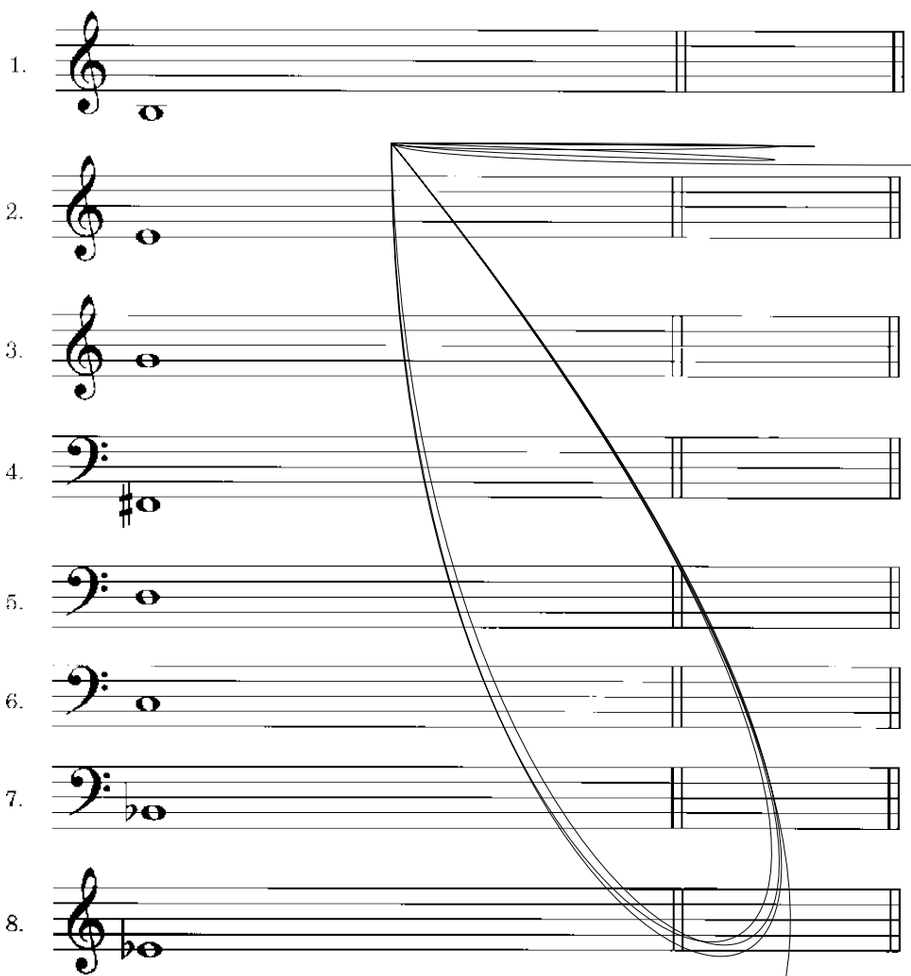


PRACTICE

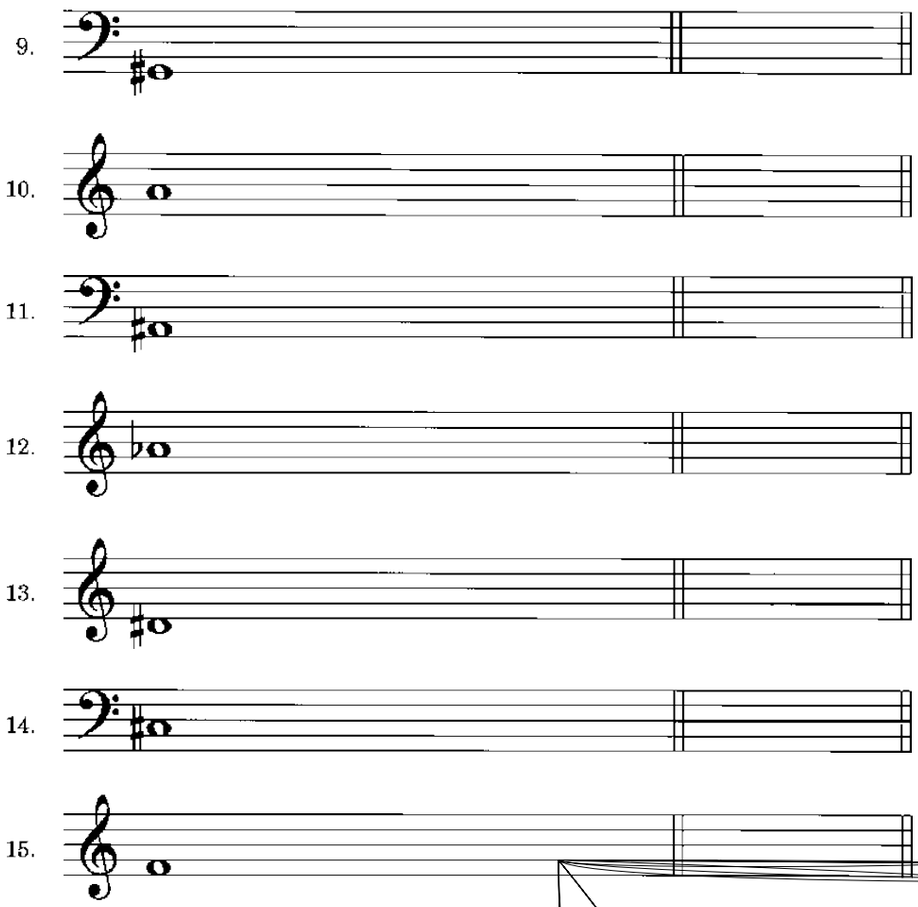
Practice Materials 9-8

Write the following harmonic minor scales in ascending form. This exercise and the one following use the same scales as in the previous two exercises, but now out of sequence. Use the keyboard to help visualize the scale. Then, in the space provided write the key signature for each scale.





Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 193



Practice Materials 9-9

Spell the indicated harmonic minor scales using letter names and any necessary accidentals. For each scale, indicate where the half steps fall.

1. G___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
2. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __B
3. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __F
4. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __E
5. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __F
6. C
   ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
7. A___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
8. D
   ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
9. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __E
10. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __A
11. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __G
12. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __C
13. A
    ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
14. ___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __B
15. D___ __ __ __ __ __ __ __

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 194

PRACTICE

Practice Materials 9-10

Identify by letter name the following scale degrees.

1. supertonic of C harmonic minor _____
2. dominant of $B^{\flat}$ harmonic minor _____
3. leading tone of G harmonic minor _____
4. mediant of A harmonic minor _____
5. subdominant of B harmonic minor _____
6. tonic of $E^{\flat}$ harmonic minor _____
7. mediant of $C^{\flat}$ harmonic minor _____
8. submediant of D harmonic minor _____
9. supertonic of B harmonic minor _____
10. subdominant of $C^{\sharp}$ harmonic minor _____
11. mediant of $B^{\flat}$ harmonic minor _____
12. submediant of C harmonic minor _____

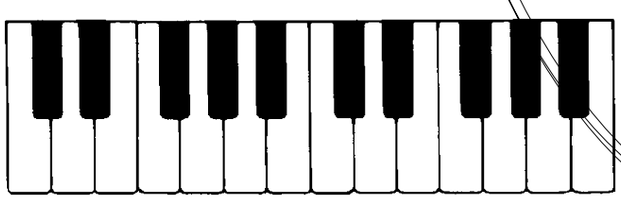
Practice Materials 9-11

Complete the following:

1. G is the dominant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
2. $B^{\flat}$ is the mediant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
3. F is the submediant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
4. $G^{\sharp}$ is the leading tone of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
5. A is the leading tone of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
6. C is the mediant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
7. E is the leading tone of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
8. G is the subdominant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
9. F is the dominant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
10. $C^{\sharp}$ is the leading tone of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
11. A is the dominant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
12. E is the supertonic of the _____ harmonic minor scale.

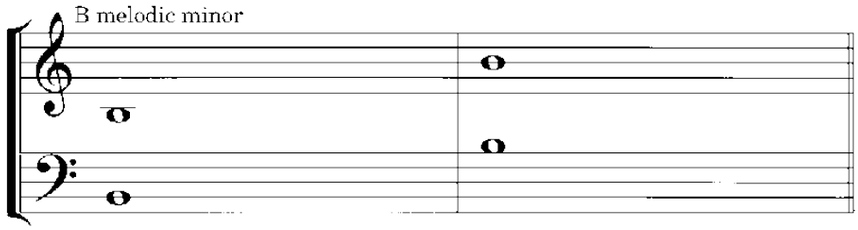
Practice Materials 9-12

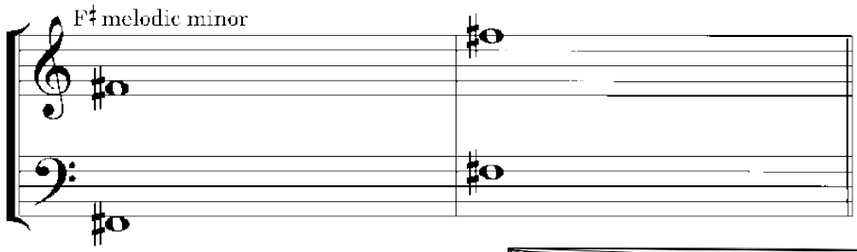
Write melodic minor scales, ascending and descending, in both treble clef and bass clef, beginning with the given tonic pitches. (This exercise deals with sharp scales only.) Mark the half steps in each scale. Use the keyboard to visualize the scale.



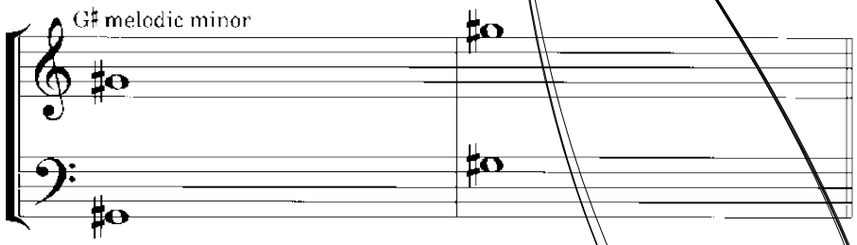
Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 195

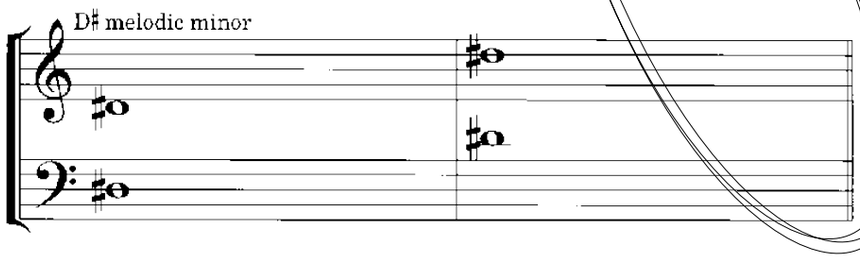
EXAMPLE:

1. 

2. 

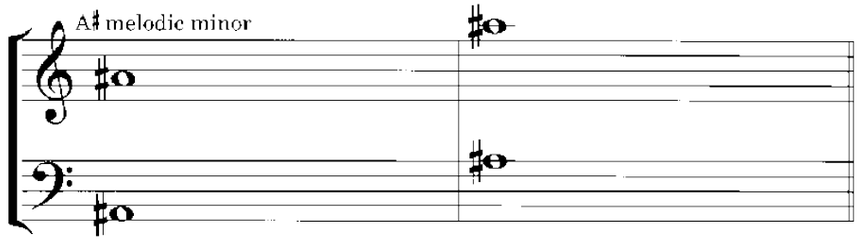
3.

4. 

5. 

Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 196

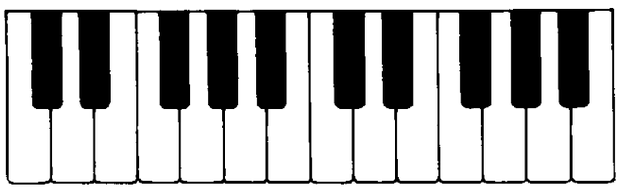
6. A♯ melodic minor



PRACTICE

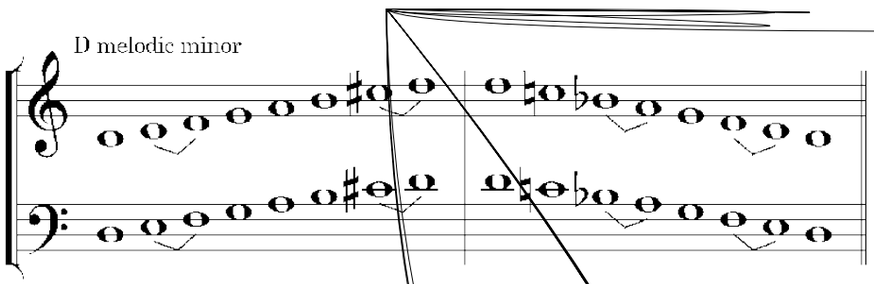
Practice Materials 9-13

Write melodic minor scales, ascending and descending, in both treble clef and bass clef, beginning with the given tonic pitches. Even though this exercise deals only with flat scales, you will need to use sharps occasionally to alter the seventh scale degree. Be sure to mark the half steps in each scale. Use the keyboard to visualize the scale.

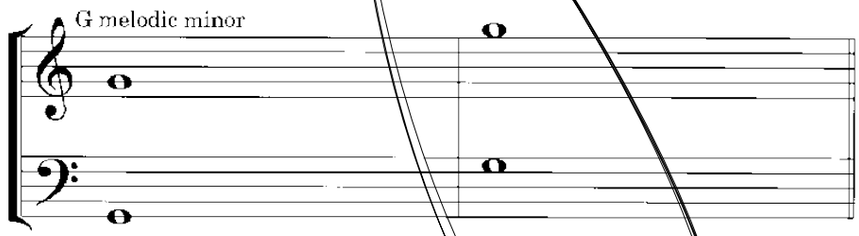


EXAMPLE:

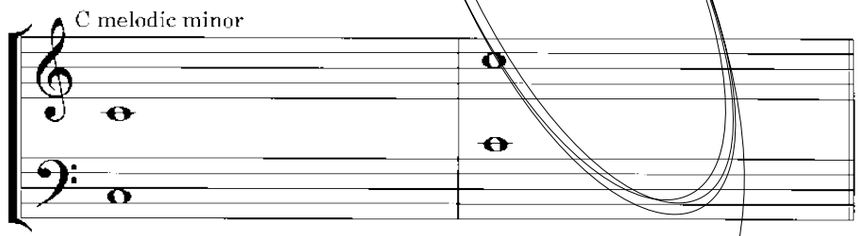
D melodic minor



1. G melodic minor

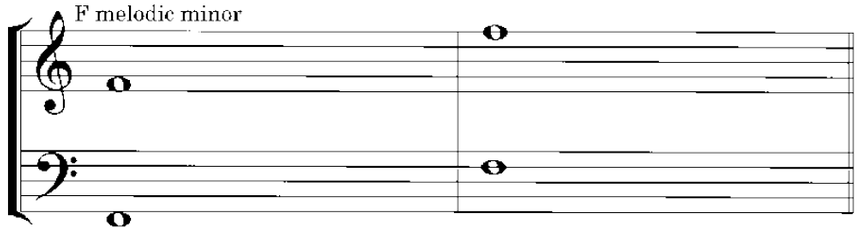


2. C melodic minor

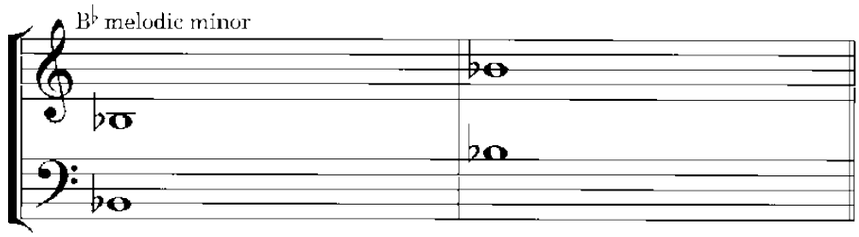


Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 197

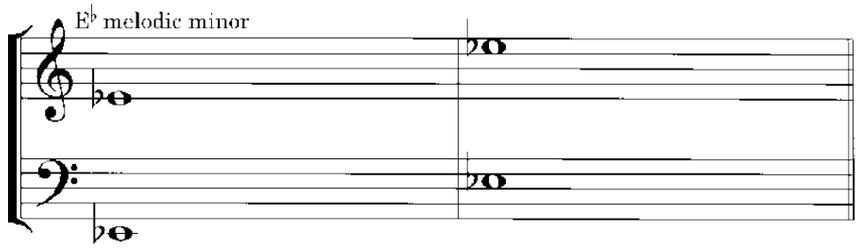
3. F melodic minor



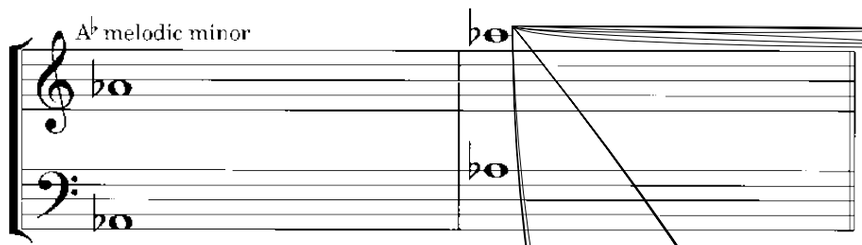
4. B♭ melodic minor



5. E♭ melodic minor

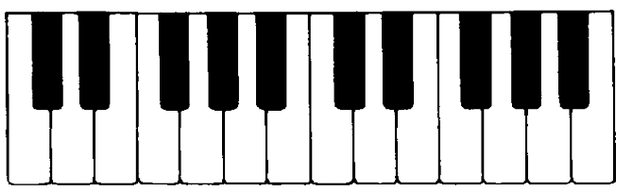


6. A♭ melodic minor

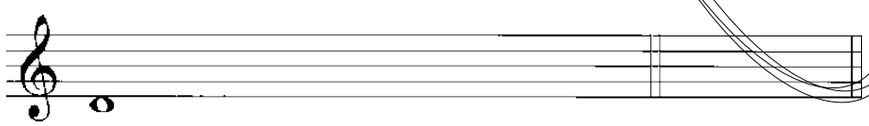


Practice Materials 9-14

Write melodic minor scales, ascending version only, beginning with the given tonic pitches. Then, in the space provided, write the key signature for each scale. These are the same scales as in the two previous exercises, but now out of sequence. Use the keyboard to visualize each scale.

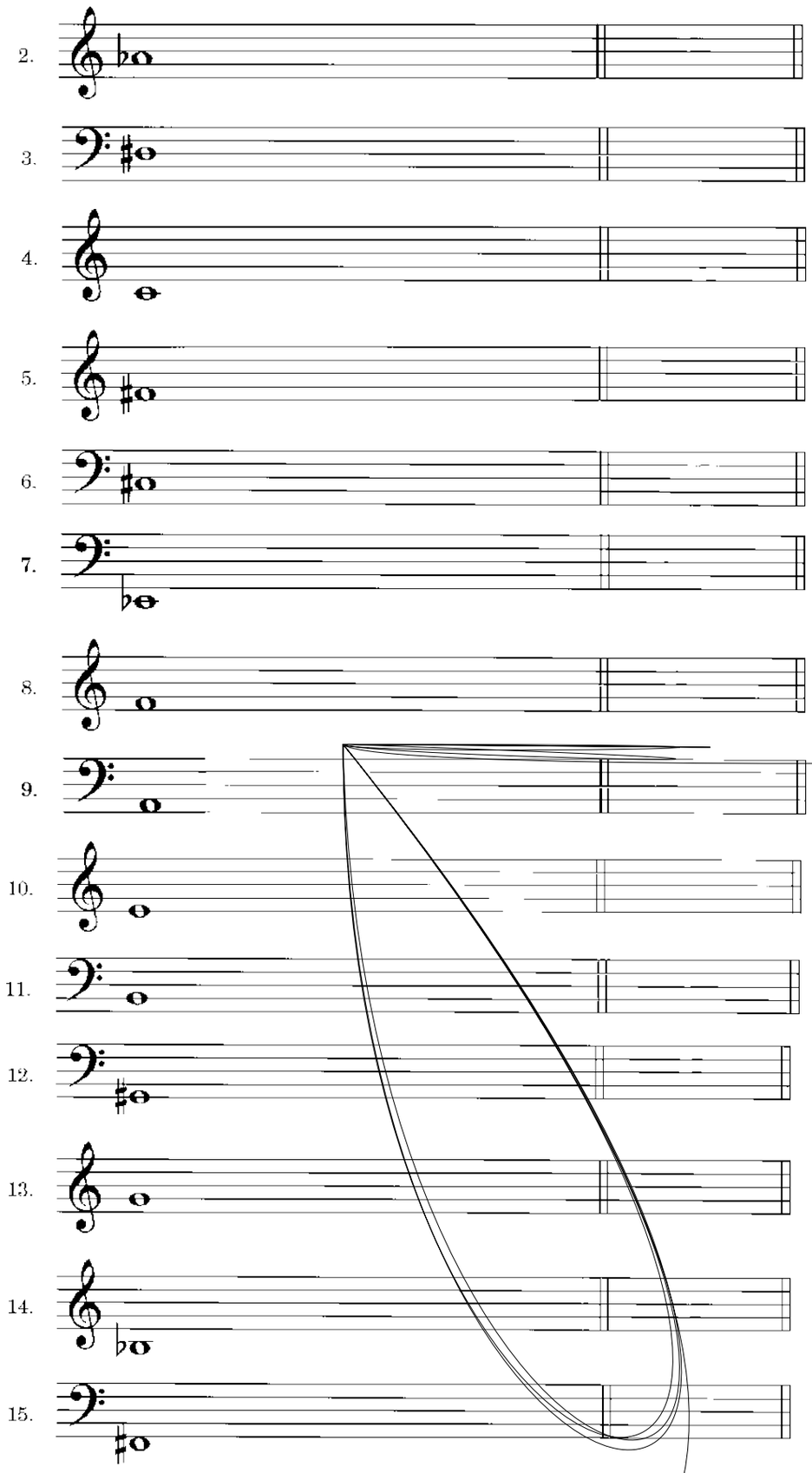


1.



Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 198

PRACTICE

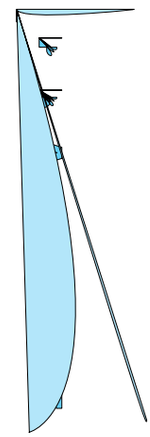


Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 199

Practice Materials 9-15

Spell the indicated melodic minor scales using letter names and any necessary accidentals. Indicate where the half steps occur.

1. ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___B
2. ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___E
3. s ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___C
4. s ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___D
5. ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___A
6. ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___C
7. f ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___B
8. ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___D
9. As ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
10. s ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___G
11. f ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___E
12. f ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___A
13. ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___F
14. Fs ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
15. s ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ; ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___G



Duckworth_Music9e_09.qxd 12/5/05 3:40 PM Page 200

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 201

CHAPTER TEN

Pentatonic and Blues Scales

We have discussed the chromatic scale, the major scale, and the minor scale (natural, harmonic, and melodic) so far. These are certainly important scales that are reflected in most of the music we hear around us every day. But before we go further with tonal music, it is important to consider that major and minor scales make up only a portion of the literally hundreds of scales in use from antiquity to the present. In this chapter we are going to look at two of the most important scales in worldwide use today, the pentatonic scale and the blues scale.

While it is true that the major scale and the minor scale have been the primary scales of Western music since the early 1600s, they were only two of the numerous scale forms employed in Western music before that time. Much of Medieval (900–1450) and Renaissance (1450–1600) music was not based on major or minor scales, but rather on pitch sets known as modes. Even Chopin (1810–1849) employed scale forms other than major and minor, particularly in sections of his mazurkas. And Debussy (1862–1918) wrote music based on a wide variety of scales, most notably the wholetone scale. During the twentieth century, composers explored many new scale forms, including the twelve-tone scale and the microtonal scale (which uses intervals smaller than a half step). And, it is impossible to listen to American folk music with out hearing pentatonic scales as well as some of the modes. Most music outside of the Western tradition has never used major or minor scales. This music is not considered tonal. Some of it, however, has influenced and even infiltrated Western music in all kinds of unusual ways. And certainly all non-Western, non-tonal music becomes a little more understandable once the scale on which it is based is better understood.

In this chapter we will look at two non-tonal scales that influence and color both popular and classical Western music today. They are the most important for us because the pentatonic scale is the basis for most of the world's folk music and some of its classical music, while the blues scale is the basis, not only for the blues itself, but also for current American popular music, in particular, certain styles of rock and jazz. And although the ability to write, sing, and play these scales is not as essential as your abilities with major and minor scales, some degree of understanding is important. Additionally, Appendix G includes a discussion of the Medieval modes as well as the twentieth-century wholetone and octatonic scales. Your teacher may or may not have time to discuss these additional scales in class, but their continued use today makes it a good idea, at least, to read about them on your own.

The Pentatonic Scale

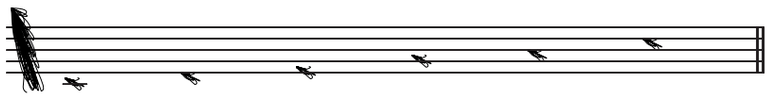
The pentatonic scale is a scale with five tones per octave (Greek penta means five). It may have been one of the first scales ever used, which might explain why it is the basis for much folk music throughout the world.

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 202

Major Pentatonic

There are a variety of pentatonic scales in use today, but the best-known version, the major pentatonic, contains no half steps. It also has two intervals greater than a whole step:

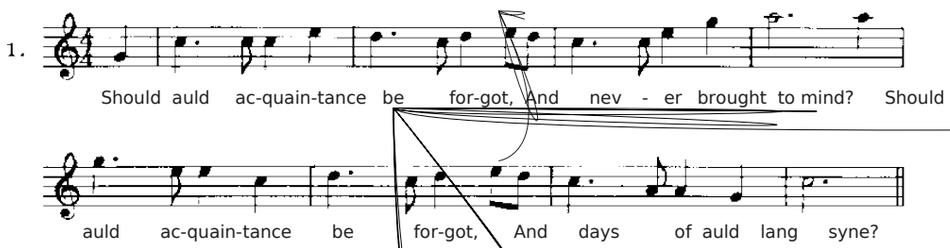
Pentatonic scale on C



Without any half steps, the center of gravity (the tonic) of this pentatonic scale is extremely ambiguous. It may be helpful to think of it as a simpler version of the major scale with the half steps removed (scale degrees 4 and 7). This lack of a musi cal center of gravity is so pronounced that any one of the five pitches of the penta tonic scale can serve as the tonic. You can demonstrate this peculiarity by playing the pentatonic scale pictured here, beginning on each of its five different pitches.

"Auld Lang Syne" is one of many well known pentatonic folk melodies. Even if you know this tune, you may never have thought of it as a pentatonic melody. But if you count the pitches you will see that there are only five different ones and that they correspond to the pentatonic scale given above.

"Auld Lang Syne"



Folk music is not the only type of music that uses pentatonic scales, however. Here is a melody from Rossini's William Tell, Overture. Even though the center of gravity (the tonic) is G rather than C, as in "Auld Lang Syne," the structure of the scale is the same.

Rossini: *William Tell*, Overture

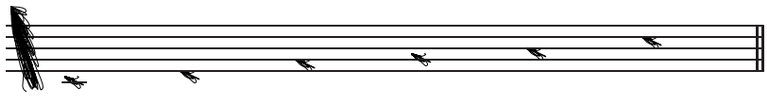
Pentatonic scale on G

The following version of the major pentatonic scale is also in common use. Notice that in this version the half steps have been eliminated by removing scale degrees 3 and 7 from a major scale. Notice also that this scale is a transposed ver sion of the first pentatonic scale that we looked at. That is, if we begin the first scale

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:41 PM Page 203

on its fourth note (G), we would have a scale with the same interval pattern as this new version.

Pentatonic scale on C

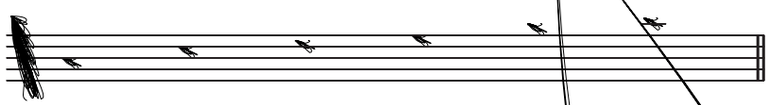


"I Gave My Love a Cherry" is a folk melody that uses this version of the major pentatonic scale.

"I Gave My Love a Cherry"

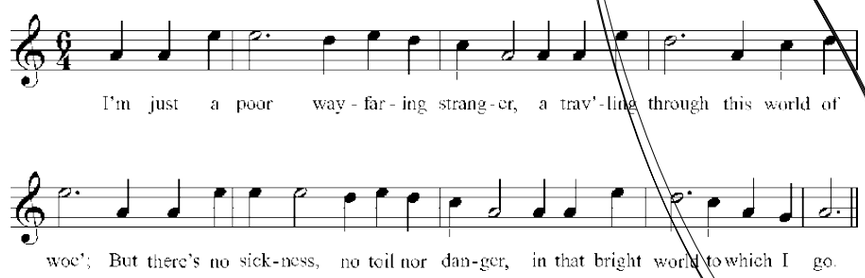
Here is yet another version of the same major pentatonic scale, this one beginning on the fifth note of our original scale.

Pentatonic scale on A



Even though a melody written with this version has more of a minor sound to it, the scale is still a five-note scale with no half steps.

"Wayfaring Stranger"

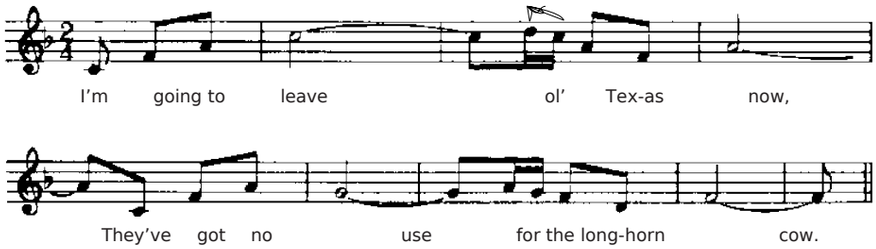


The following examples are drawn from Western music. Several of them could also be harmonized tonally, that is, with harmonies based on the major scale. This duality produces a most interesting musical combination: The character and ambi guity of the pentatonic scale are preserved in the pentatonic melody, while the har mony and musical center of gravity are tonal.

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 204

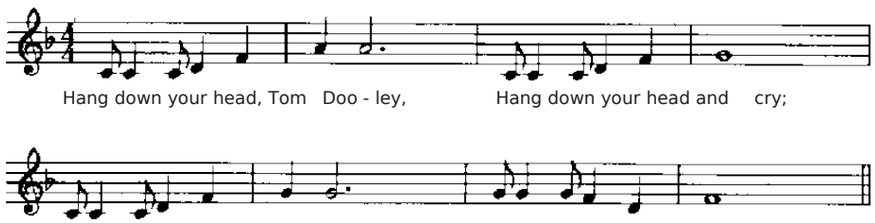
"Ol' Texas"

1.



"Tom Dooley"

2.

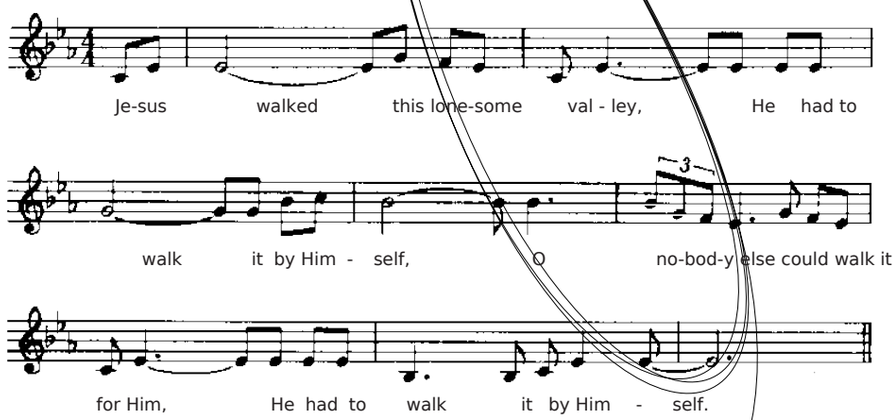


Debussy: "Nuages" from *Nocturnes*

3.

"Lonesome Valley"

4.



Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 205

"This Train"

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Locating the Tonic

Sing or play the pentatonic melodies of the preceding five examples. In each, locate and circle the tone that functions as the tonic. Beginning on the tonic, write the pentatonic scale on which each melody is based. Compare the forms of the scales you have written.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Composing

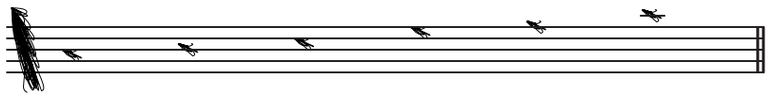
Write a short vocal melody based on a major pentatonic scale and learn to sing it. The length of your piece should be equivalent to a short poem, or two to four sentences of prose. If you wish, also write a second part to accompany it. When you have finished (and practiced), perform your piece for the class. Then, experiment with performing two pieces by different members of the class simultaneously. This is possible because there are only five notes in the pentatonic scale so the more dissonant intervals found in a major or minor scale don't occur between voices written in pen tatonic scales. Instead, interesting combinations will often occur.

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 206

Minor Pentatonic

All pentatonic scales have five notes. But not all of them lack half steps. The following version, which contains 2 half steps, is known as a minor pentatonic scale.

Pentatonic scale on A (minor version)



The Japanese folk melody "Sakura, Sakura" makes use of this minor version of the pentatonic scale.

"Sakura, Sakura"

Notice in this example that the piece ends on an E even though the center of gravity is clearly an A. This is possible because the minor pentatonic scale, like the major pentatonic scale, is more ambiguous than a major or a minor scale.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Composing

Write a short vocal melody based on a minor pentatonic scale and learn to sing it. Then, as before, experiment with performing two pieces by different members of the class simultaneously. Does the minor pentatonic scale lend itself to this activity as readily as the major pentatonic scale did? In class, discuss the results of this experiment.

The Blues Scale

Originally, the blues was a type of black folk music created in America by African slaves and their descendents, sung unaccompanied or with a banjo or guitar. It is one of many ways in which African and European musical elements merged into new forms of music in America in the 18th and 19th centuries. Ragtime and Dixieland jazz represent two of the most prominent of these mergers.

One of the chief characteristics of the blues is the blues scale. This scale developed as black musicians tried to merge pentatonic African scales with European harmony based on major and minor scales. This merger was more difficult to accomplish than you might think, because the pentatonic scales of Africa have microtonal qualities that don't exactly match the pitches found on a piano. In fact, even today, jazz pianists sometimes speak of looking for the notes "between the cracks" of the piano, and when playing will often strike two pitches a minor second apart simultaneously because the sound they really want is somewhere in between.

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 207

The blues scale that resulted from this merger of African and European elements is a six-note scale:

Blues scale

When compared to a major scale, it: is missing the second and sixth scale degrees entirely; lowers the third and seventh degrees; and adds a flatted fifth scale degree to the existing fifth scale degree a perfect fifth above the tonic. These three notes, the lowered third, fifth, and seventh, are known as blue notes. Because they are chromatic to the major scale harmonies they are often played over, blue notes add a high degree of tension to the music.

Here is a melody based on the blues scale. Notice how frequently the lowered (or flatted) third, fifth, and seventh scale degrees occur.

MUSIC IN T và EÇ

Composing

Write a melody for your instrument or voice based on the blues scale. Your piece should be 12 bars long and in either simple or compound quadruple meter. When you have finished (and practiced), perform your piece for the class.

As you can probably tell from listening to the previous example, the three blue notes are the most important notes of the blues scale. Not only do they define the character of the scale, but they create the tension and drive associated with the blues.

Today, the six-note blues scale is often combined with the major scale, creating a ten-note scale:

Blues scale and major scale combined

In this version, the blue notes create even more tension because they often occur a half step away from the notes used for the harmony. In addition, jazz pianists, when playing the accompanying harmony, will often play the flatted third simultaneously with the regular third and the flatted seventh with the regular seventh, creating tension in the search for the untempered notes of the African pentatonic scale that "fall between the cracks."

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 208

Rhythm Revisited: Keeping the Beat

The job of the trap-set drummer in a rock or jazz band is multi-dimensional. He or she not only has to keep the beat steady, but also must ornament the music and supply the fills at the ends of phrases and sections. This requires the use of both feet as well as both hands. The following four-part exercises require the use of your feet and your hands. You should consider the left foot line (L.F.) as the bass drum and the right foot line (R.F.) as a cymbal. Your hands should play tom and snare drums on two different sounding surfaces. When you can perform all four parts simultaneously and have a good understanding of what a drummer does, write your own 12-bar drum solo and play it for the class. Then, experiment with combining your drum part with one of the blues melodies written and performed by another member of the class.

Focus

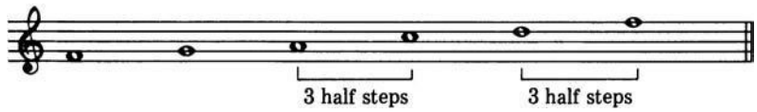
Major and minor scales have been the most important scales of Western music since the mid-1600s. They are still the most important today, although atonal, microton al, and electronic music offer striking alternatives. But you would be wrong if you took this to mean that major and minor scales are the only ones that matter. As this chapter has shown, other types of scales can be found in the folk, popular, and clas sical music that you know. Keep in mind, too, that much of the world's music has never used major and minor scales.

The scales mentioned in this chapter represent only a small number of the many scales in use throughout the world today. For all musicians, and for anyone else interested in learning how music "works," some familiarity with these scales and the music they produce is essential. This chapter is only a beginning. Now that you know they exist, start listening for these scales in the music you hear every day. Before long, you'll find yourself recognizing them in the most unusual places.

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 209

Practice Materials 10-1

Beginning on the indicated pitches, and using the following form as a model, write examples of the major pentatonic scale. Check your solutions by singing or playing the scales you have written.



1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

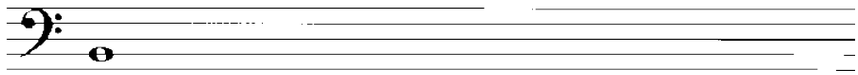
10.

11.

12.

Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 210

13.

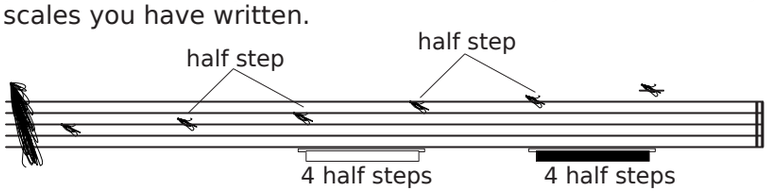


14.

PRACTICE

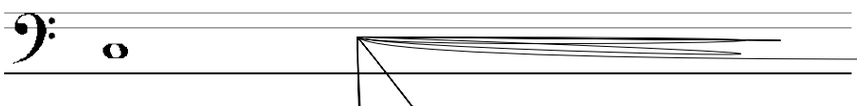
Practice Materials 10-2

Using the following form as a model, begin on each indicated pitch and write examples of the minor pentatonic scale. Check your answers by singing or playing the scales you have written.



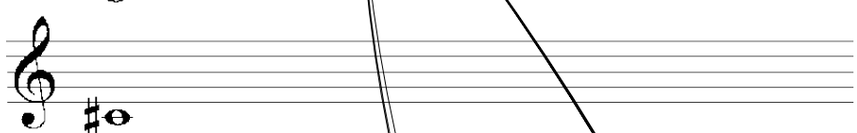
1.

2.



3.

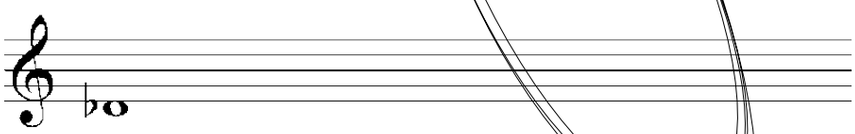
4.



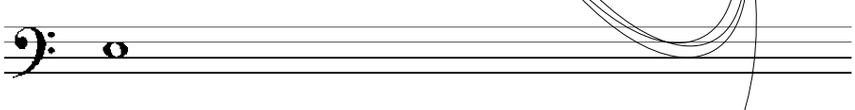
5.

6.

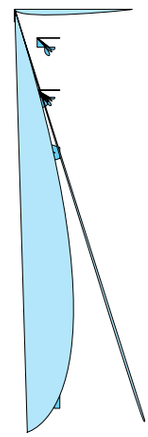
7.

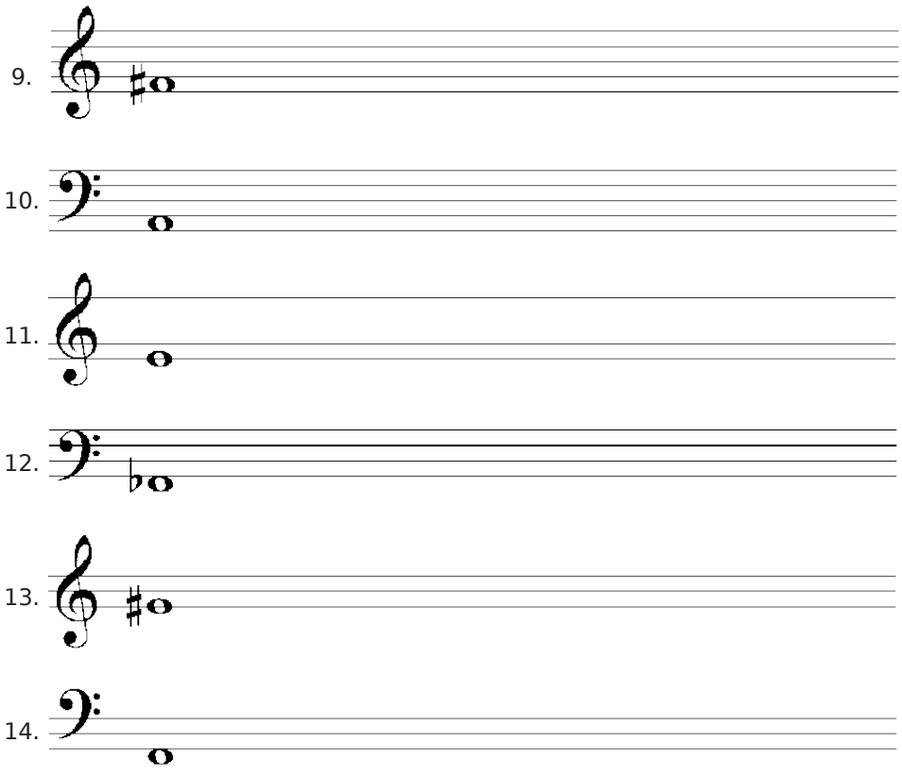


8.



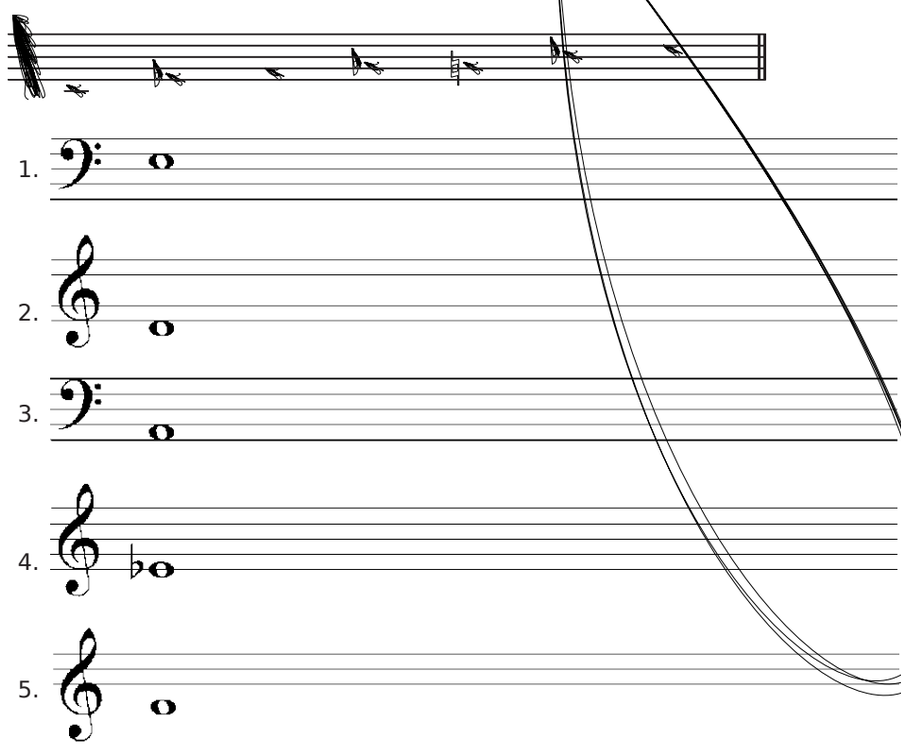
Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 211





Practice Material 10-3

Write examples of the six-note blues scale from each given pitch. Use the following scale as a model. When you have finished, check your answers by singing or playing the scales you have written.



Duckworth_Music9e_10.qxd 12/5/05 3:42 PM Page 212

PRACTICE

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

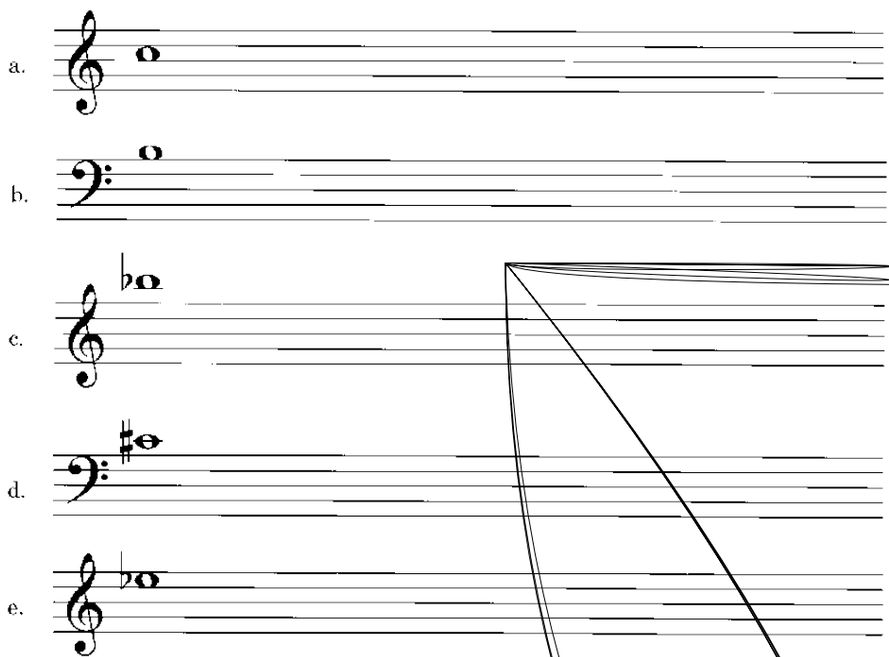
14.

Duckworth_Music9e_FIV.qxd 11/18/05 1:15 AM Page 213

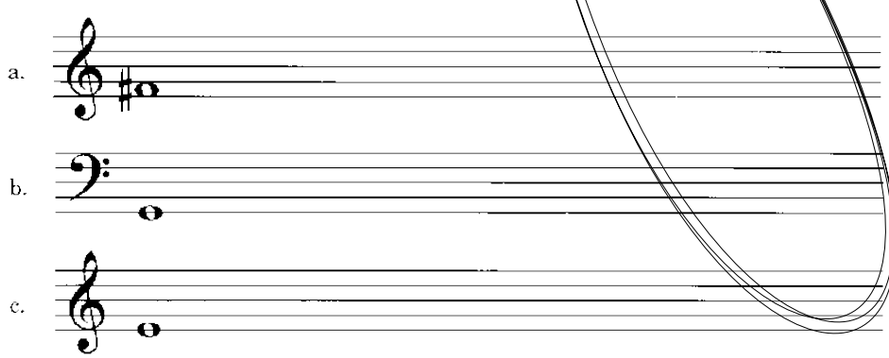
FOCUS ON SKILLS G

The following questions cover material presented in Chapters 8, 9, and 10. If you have difficulty with any of these questions, review the relevant sections before beginning Chapter 11.

1. Write descending natural minor scales beginning with the pitches indicated.

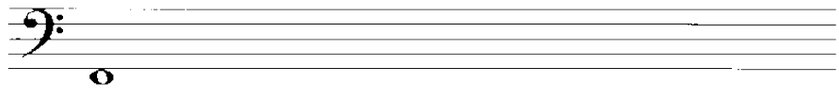


2. Write ascending harmonic minor scales beginning with the given pitches.

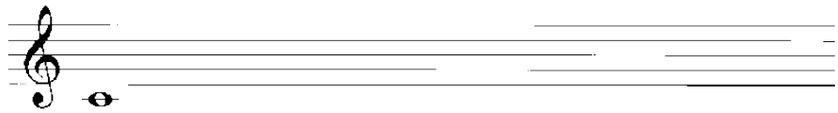


Duckworth_Music9e_FIV.qxd 11/18/05 1:15 AM Page 214

d.

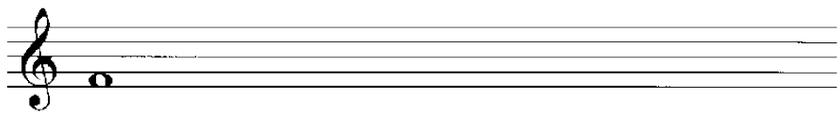


e.

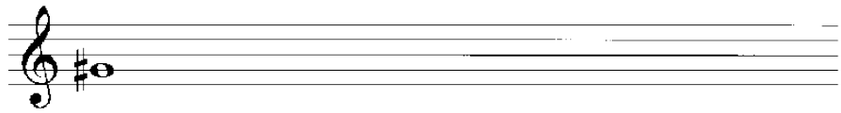


3. Write ascending and descending melodic minor scales beginning with the pitches indicated.

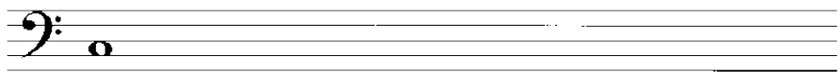
a.



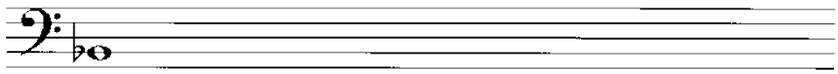
b.



c.



d.



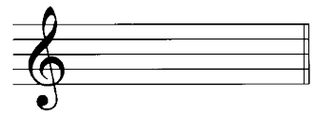
e.

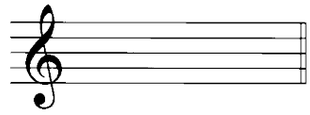
4. Complete the following sentences.

a. The mediant of A natural minor is _____.
b. The supertonic of B melodic minor is _____.
c. The dominant of E harmonic minor is _____.
d. The submediant of F harmonic minor is _____.
e. The supertonic of D natural minor is _____.
f. The subdominant of $E^{\flat}$ natural minor is _____.
g. The leading tone of F harmonic minor is _____.
h. The supertonic of $B^{\flat}$ melodic minor is _____.
i. The subdominant of $C^{\sharp}$ harmonic minor is _____.
j. The supertonic of C natural minor is _____.
k. G is the subdominant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
l. $C^{\sharp}$ is the leading tone of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
m. $B^{\flat}$ is the submediant of the _____ harmonic minor scale.
n. F is the dominant of the _____ natural minor scale.
o. A is the leading tone of the _____ harmonic minor scale.

Duckworth_Music9e_FIV.qxd 11/18/05 1:15 AM Page 215

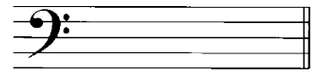
5. Write out the following minor key signatures.

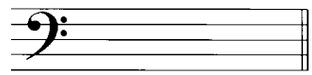
C minor 

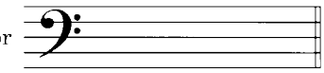
E minor 

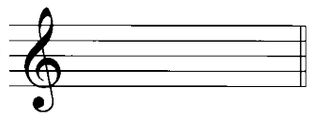
D minor

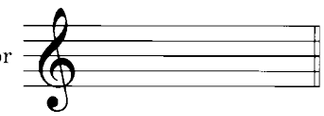
F minor

A minor 

B♭ minor 

F♯ minor 

G♯ minor 

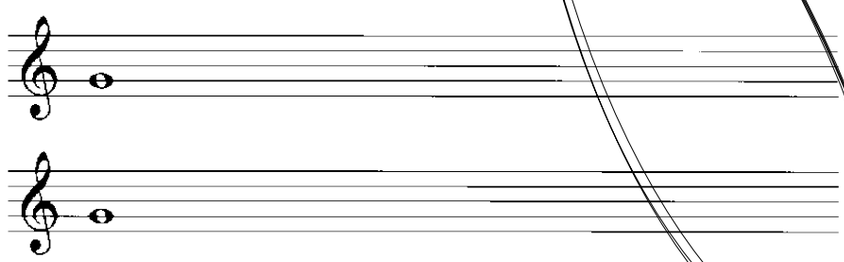
C♯ minor 

G minor

6. Complete the following sentences.

a. The relative minor of E♭ major is _____.
b. The relative minor of B major is _____.
c. The parallel minor of A major is _____.
d. The relative minor of F major is _____.
e. The relative minor of E major is _____.
f. The parallel major of D minor is _____.
g. The relative major of F♯ minor is _____.
h. The relative major of G minor is _____.
i. The parallel major of D♭ minor is _____.
j. The relative major of C♯ minor is _____.

7. Write a major pentatonic scale and a minor pentatonic scale beginning on the same pitch.

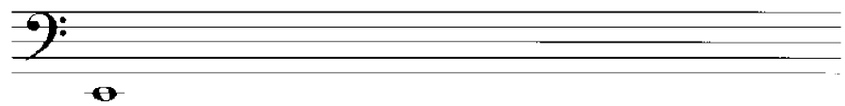


Duckworth_Music9e_FIV.qxd 11/18/05 1:15 AM Page 216

8. Write the blues scale beginning on each given pitch.

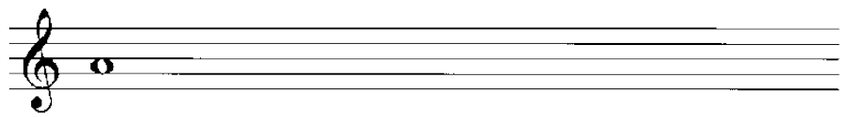
a.

b.



c.

d.



9. Write a major scale with added blue notes starting from the given pitch.

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 217

CHAPTER ELEVEN Triads

In Western music, the major or minor scale on which a piece is based determines all the interval patterns of that music. This is true for both the horizontal intervals found in melody and the vertical intervals found in harmony. The fundamental component of harmony is the chord. A chord is the simultaneous sounding of three or more pitches. (Two pitches sounding simultaneously create an interval.) Harmony is the horizontal movement in time of a series of chords. In this chapter, we will concentrate on the most frequently used chord of tonal music—the three-note triad.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Ear Training

The following simple musical example clearly demonstrates the distinction between the horizontal character of melody and the vertical character of harmony. Play it, or listen to it played, several times. Can you, in three or four sentences, describe the ways in which the vertical (harmonic) and horizontal (melodic) components each contribute to the piece as a whole?

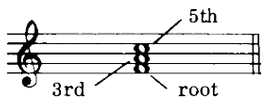
Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 218

Basic Structure of Triads

The triad is the basic chord of tonal music. Other chords—such as sevenths, ninths, and elevenths—are extensions of the triad. Four qualities of triads are possible: major, minor, augmented, and diminished. The quality of a triad is determined by the kinds of thirds it contains.

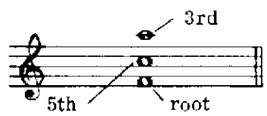
Triads are three-note chords built of two superimposed thirds. These two thirds, when stacked on top of each other, create the interval of a fifth between their two outside pitches. You will find that this interval of a fifth is as important to the har mony as it is to the melody. When the triad is written in root position—that is, as two superimposed thirds—we identify the three notes of the triad, from the lowest to the highest, as the root, the third, and the fifth. In the following example, notice that the third of the triad is an interval of a third above the root, and the fifth of the triad is an interval of a fifth above the root.

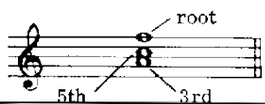
F Major triad, root position



If the triad appears in an altered form, the terms still apply to the pitches as if they were in root position, even though the intervals are no longer a third and a fifth:

F Major triad, altered forms





Triads take their name from the name of the root, that is, the lowest-sounding pitch when the triad is constructed as superimposed thirds. Notice that both examples above are F major triads, even though the second example does not have the F as the lowest sounding pitch.

Most beginning musicians can spell scales more easily than triads. This is because scales are based on the interval of a second while triads are based on the interval of a third. Until you get used to it, it's harder to think in thirds. The fol lowing Class Work exercise will help you begin to think in thirds. It deals only with the interval size of a third and not with the major, minor, augmented, or diminished qualities of triads.

CLASS WORK

As a class, practice reciting the following three-letter patterns until you can say them evenly.

ACE CEG EGB GBD BDF DFA FAC ACE

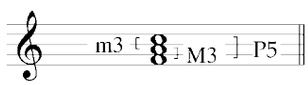
After you can say them evenly, work for speed. These patterns of three will help you think of triads from the root up.

Major and Minor Triads

The major triad (in root position) is built from two superimposed thirds. The lower third is a major third; the upper one is a minor third. The interval between the two outside notes—in this case, F and C—is a perfect fifth.

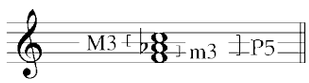
Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 219

F Major triad



The minor triad is also built of superimposed thirds, but the order is reversed: The lower third is minor and the upper third is major. The outside interval remains a perfect fifth.

F Minor triad



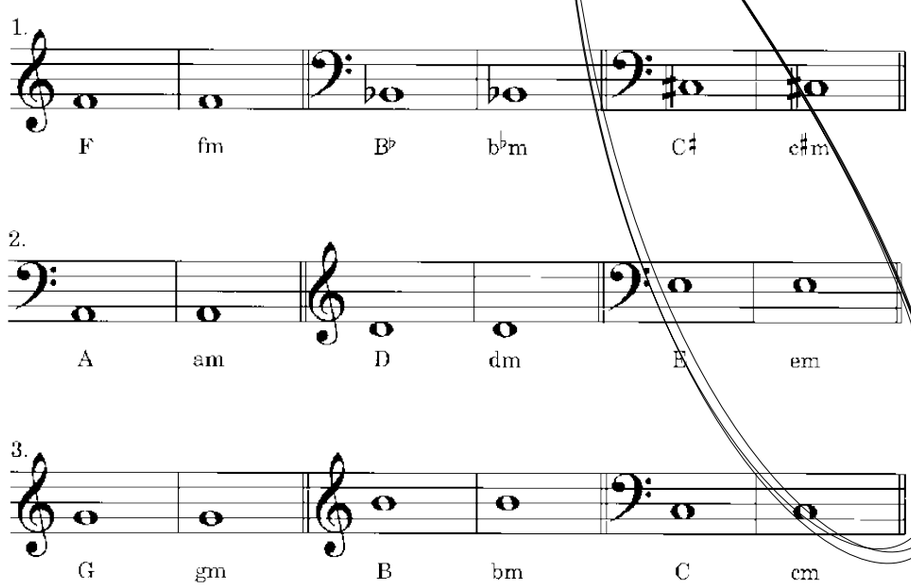
In both major and minor triads, the interval between the root and the fifth of the triad is always a perfect fifth. Some students find it easier to remember major triads as a major third plus a perfect fifth above the root, and minor triads as a minor third plus a perfect fifth.

F Major triad

F Minor triad

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, practice writing major and minor triads in root position from the same given tonic note. Remember that major triads have a major third on the bottom while minor triads have a minor third as the lower third. Remember also that the interval between the root and the fifth must always be a perfect fifth.



Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 220

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Playing and Hearing Major and Minor Triads

Practice playing the following triads on the piano. Play them with each hand separately, and then both hands together using the thumbs and third and fifth fingers. As you play, listen to the difference in sound between the major and minor triads. Then ask someone else to play the triads for you and see if you can identify their quality by ear.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

Close and Open Positions

When triads appear as two superimposed thirds, they are said to be in close position. That is, the three notes of the triad are all contained within an octave.

Close position

When the notes of the triad are spaced farther apart than in close position, and the three notes are no longer contained within the octave, the triad is said to be in open position.

Open position

Notice how open position skips one chord tone between each note.

D Minor triad

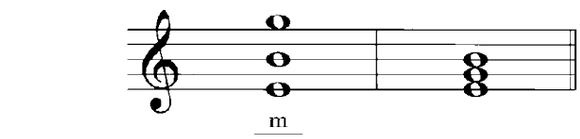
Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 221

Composers frequently employ open position to provide a change of musical color, and for reasons of voice leading. The following Class Work exercise will help you to recognize root-position triads in open position.

CLASS WORK

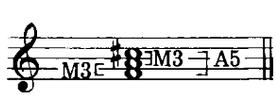
The following are root-position triads in open position. The lowest note is the root of the triad. In each case, label the triad as major (M) or minor (m) in quality and, in the space provided, rewrite it in close position.

EXAMPLE:



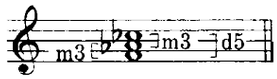
Augmented and Diminished Triads

The augmented triad consists of two superimposed major thirds. Notice that the resultant interval between the root and the fifth of the triad is an augmented fifth.



Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 222

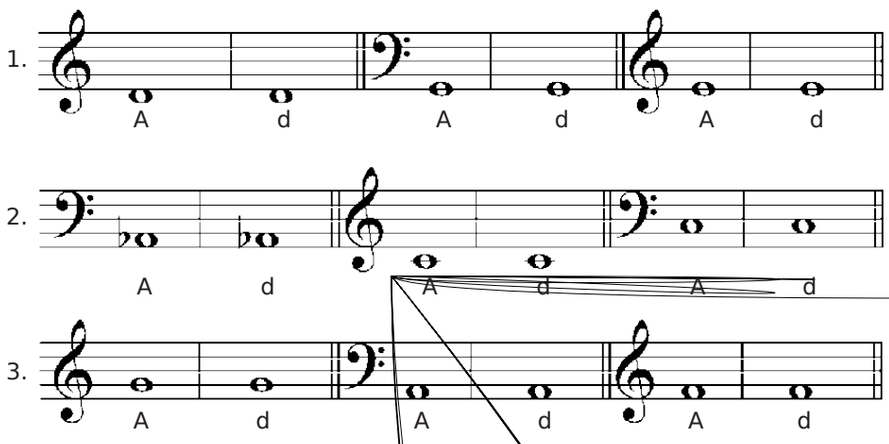
The diminished triad consists of two superimposed minor thirds, an arrangement that creates the interval of a diminished fifth between the root and the fifth of the triad.



While augmented and diminished triads are found less often in tonal music than are major and minor triads, they can contribute a unique color and tension. Overuse, however, can weaken the tonal center of a piece.

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, practice writing augmented and diminished triads in root position from the same given tonic note. Remember that augmented triads consist of two major thirds with the interval of an augmented fifth between the root and the fifth, and diminished triads consist of two minor triads with the interval of a diminished fifth between the root and the fifth.



MUSIC IN

Playing and Hearing Augmented and Diminished Triads

Practice playing the following augmented and diminished triads on the piano. Play them with each hand separately and then both hands together. Pay particular attention to the sound of each kind of triad. Then ask some one to play the triads and see if you can identify their quality by ear.

1.

2.

3.

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 223

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

4.

5.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Hearing Chord Qualities

The following example is the Choral from Robert Schumann's Album for the Young, a set of forty-three piano pieces written in 1848. Listen to it as your teacher or a fellow student plays it several times. As you listen, try to identify the quality of each chord by its sound (major, minor, augmented, or diminished). Some chords will be more difficult to identify than others because they are inverted (the lowest note is not the root—see p. 223ff) or because they contain an extra pitch (a seventh chord—see p. 243ff). Still, you should be able to identify most of them after several hearings.

Then, as a class, discuss the harmonic character of this piece. Which line has the melody? Is the melody more important, equally important, or less important than the harmony? Does the piece sound predominantly vertical (harmonic) or horizontal (melodic)?

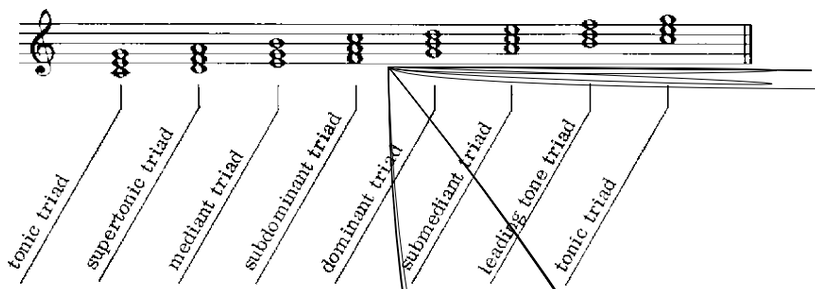
(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 224

MUSIC IN

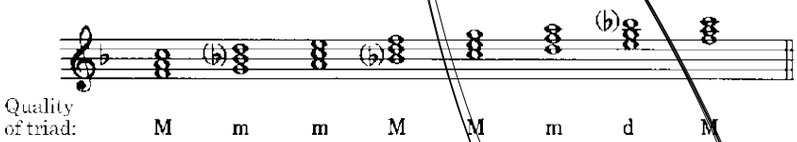
Triads and Scales

Triads can be built on any note of the major and minor scales. Musicians often iden tify triads built on scale degrees by the same terms as the pitches of the scale:



When triads are constructed on scale degrees, they must conform to the pitches of the scale. That is, if a scale has a $B^{\flat}$, all triads with a B will use a $B^{\flat}$.

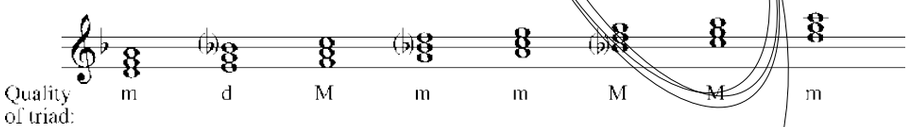
Triads in F Major



Notice that the major scale produces three major triads, three minor triads, and one diminished triad.

The triads associated with the minor scale, because of its several versions, are a bit more confusing. The natural minor scale produces the following triads:

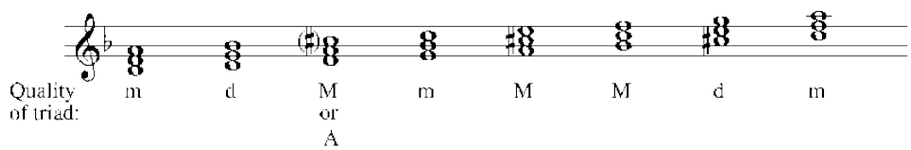
Triads in D natural minor



Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 225

But since the scale itself contains a subtonic, a whole step away, rather than a true leading tone only a half step below the tonic, the harmony it produces also lacks leading tone. That, in turn, means that the dominant chord is minor rather than a major in quality (because it contains a C natural rather than a raised C sharp). But by borrowing the leading tone from the parallel major, as the harmonic minor ver sion of the scale does, we can raise the C to C sharp in the dominant (V) and leading-tone (vii°) chords, thus creating a stronger harmony. Notice that although true harmonic minor indicates that the mediant chord should also contain a C sharp, this would change the chord from a major triad to an augmented one, and com posers do not always do that in actual music.

Triads in D harmonic minor



Although other alterations borrowed from major are possible, they are a little beyond the scope of this book. Here, we will limit ourselves to the leading-tone alter ations discussed thus far.

Inversions of Triads

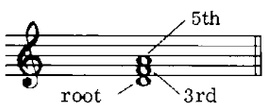
Triads do not always appear in root position. Quite often the third or the fifth of the triad is the lowest-sounding pitch. Nevertheless, the triad itself does not change; the root remains the root, and the quality remains the same.

Triads can appear in two positions other than root position: first inversion and second inversion. Triads in first and second inversions add variety to the harmony of a piece, and they also serve for voice leading.

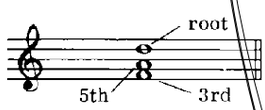
In first inversion, the triad has the third of the root-position triad as the lowest-sounding pitch.

D Minor triad

Root position



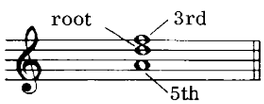
First inversion



Remember that a triad in root position appears on the staff as two superimposed thirds. In first inversion, the triad consists of the same three pitches, but now there is the interval of a fourth between the upper two pitches. Looked at another way, first inversion triads have a third on the bottom with a fourth stacked above it.

The triad in second inversion has the fifth as the lowest-sounding pitch.

D Minor triad, *second inversion*



In second inversion, the triad has the interval of a fourth between the lower two pitches, that is, it has a fourth on the bottom with a third stacked on top.

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 226

In working with inversions, it is important to keep in mind that the triad does not change simply because its notes change position. This is because we hear the identifying interval of the triad in root position (the perfect fifth) differently from the way we hear the identifying interval of the triad in first or second inversion (the perfect fourth). The perfect fifth directs our ear to hear the lower pitch as the root, while the perfect fourth directs our ear to the upper pitch. Therefore, the pitch we hear as the root of the triad doesn't change with inversion.

In the study of harmony, it is essential that you be able to identify triads correctly in an inversion. This means that you must first recognize the kind of inversion (first or second); otherwise you will identify the wrong pitch as the root.

Labeling Inversions

In order to indicate whether a triad is in root position or in an inversion, a set of shorthand symbols has been developed. This shorthand system refers to the size of the intervals above the lowest-sounding pitch. Thus, a triad in root position, with intervals of a third and a fifth above the lowest-sounding pitch, could be shown as follows:

A triad in first inversion, with intervals of a third and a sixth above the lowest-sounding pitch, can be indicated by the following notation:

A triad in second inversion, containing intervals of a fourth and a sixth above the lowest-sounding note, can be shown as:

Notice that this shorthand system does not indicate the quality of the triad. Whether the triad is major, minor, augmented, or diminished is determined by how that triad functions in a particular key.

In practice, the shorthand system for labeling triad inversions has been abbreviated even further. For a triad in root position (the most common chord in tonal music), the numerals are omitted and the intervals of a fifth and a third are simply understood to be present.

Root position

For a first-inversion triad, whose characteristic interval is a sixth above the lowest-sounding note, a 6 is indicated while the third, being understood as present, is not marked.

First inversion

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 227

For a second-inversion triad, both numerals 6 and 4 are used in order to distinguish it from first inversion.

Second inversion

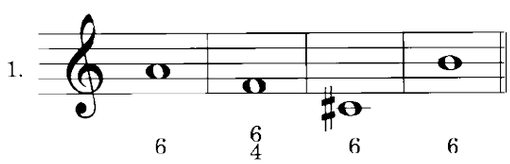
Today, this system of labeling functions primarily in harmonic analysis. During the Baroque period (1600–1750), however, it was common for composers to write the keyboard part of an orchestral piece with only the bass line, plus subscript numer als to indicate inversions. This part was called figured bass. The keyboard musician was expected to play the written bass line, along with another instrument such as cello or bassoon, and to fill in the harmonies according to the shorthand symbols. This practice, which persisted for almost 200 years, is similar to the technique of today's jazz pianists when they weave an appropriate musical fabric from a melody line and a set of chord symbols.

The following is an example of figured bass from the Baroque period. The top stave is the solo flute part. The bottom stave contains the figured bass part from which the keyboard performer was expected to create a suitable accompaniment.

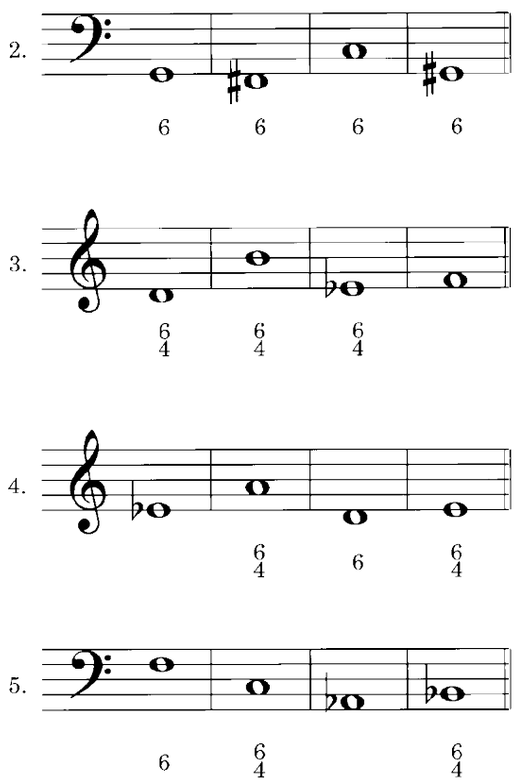
Handel: "Siciliana" from Flute Sonata in F Major

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, write the indicated triad for each figured bass symbol. Each given note is the lowest-sounding pitch of a major triad. The subscript numer als indicate whether the triad is in root position or in an inversion.



Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 228



MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Analyzing Triads

Return to the Choral from Schumann's Album for the Young (p. 223). Locate and circle the inverted triads. Identify the inversion and the root of each triad you have circled. You will see that all of the triads in this work have one of the three pitches doubled; that is, the same letter name appears twice. This does not in any way change the nature of the basic triad. Ignore any chords that have four different pitches, because they are not triads.

After you have located the inverted triads, listen to the work again, paying particular attention to the triads. Remember that triads in inversion serve for both harmonic color and better voice leading.

Focus

Triads are one of the primary building blocks of tonal music. If you intend to be a composer or a performer, you will need to know and master them. This mastery includes not only learning to write triads, as we have done in this chapter, but also learning to recognize them in musical situations, which we will do in the next chapter.

In studying triads, two things are important to keep in mind. First, there are only four types of triads—major, minor, augmented, and diminished. And while all triads in root position consist of two superimposed thirds, it is the quality of these thirds that determines the quality of the triad.

Second, it is important to remember that while root-position triads are the norm, triads may also be inverted, that is, the third or the fifth of the triad may

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 229

appear as the lowest sounding note. And since an inversion significantly changes the sound of a triad, we must also be able to write and recognize inversions.

Finally, keep in mind that if you are planning to be a professional or a good amateur musician, you will be dealing with triads for the remainder of your musi cal life. Before leaving this chapter, make sure that you have a solid, fundamental grounding in constructing and recognizing triads and their inversions.

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 230

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 231

Practice Materials 11-1

Identify the root of each of the following triads, and label each as major (M) or minor (m) in quality. (Make sure that your teacher can distinguish between your uppercase and lowercase "M".)

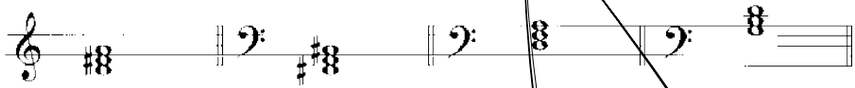
EXAMPLE:

root	G	C	A
quality	M	M	m

1.

2.

3.

4. 

5.

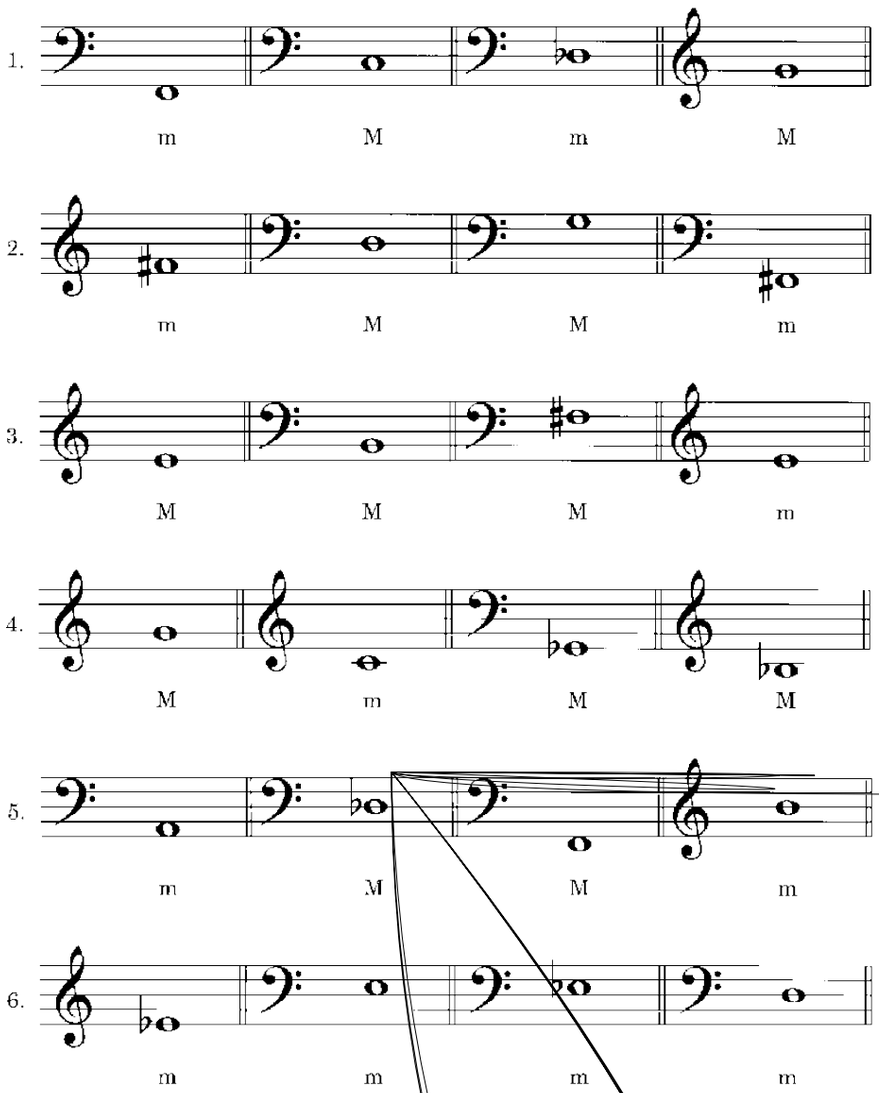
6.

Practice Materials 11-2

Complete the indicated major or minor triad in close position, beginning on the root given. Remember: The interval between the root and the fifth of the triad should be

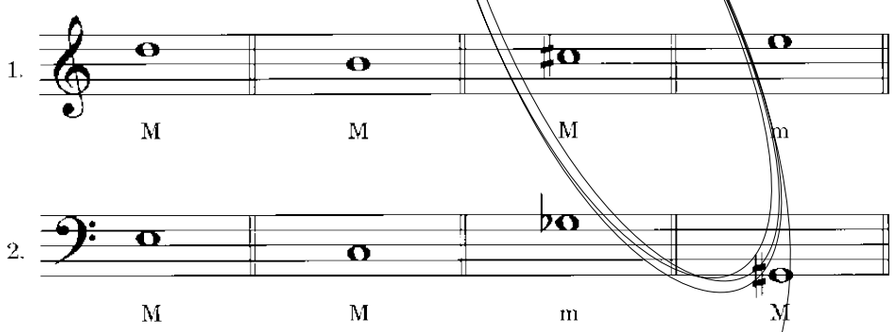
Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 232

a perfect fifth; the interval between the root and the third of the triad will be a major third for major triads, and a minor third for minor triads.

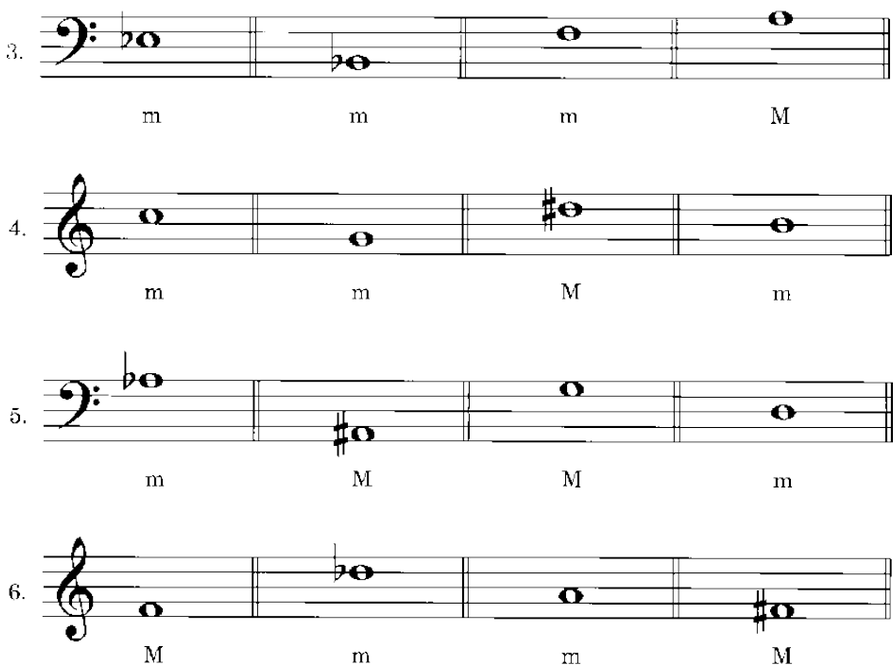


Practice Materials 11-3

Complete the indicated close-position major or minor triads. In each case, the note given is the third of the triad.

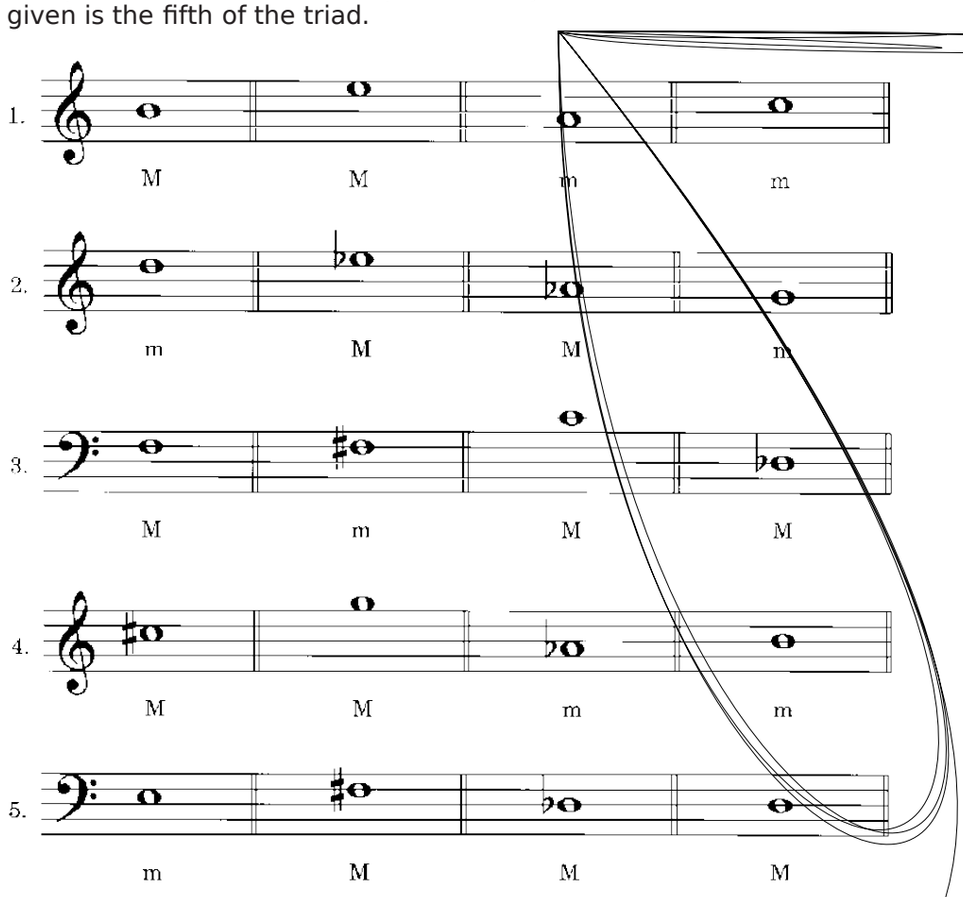


Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 233

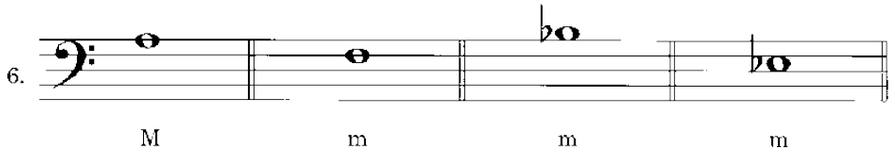


Practice Materials 11-4

Complete the indicated close-position major or minor triads. In each case, the note given is the fifth of the triad.



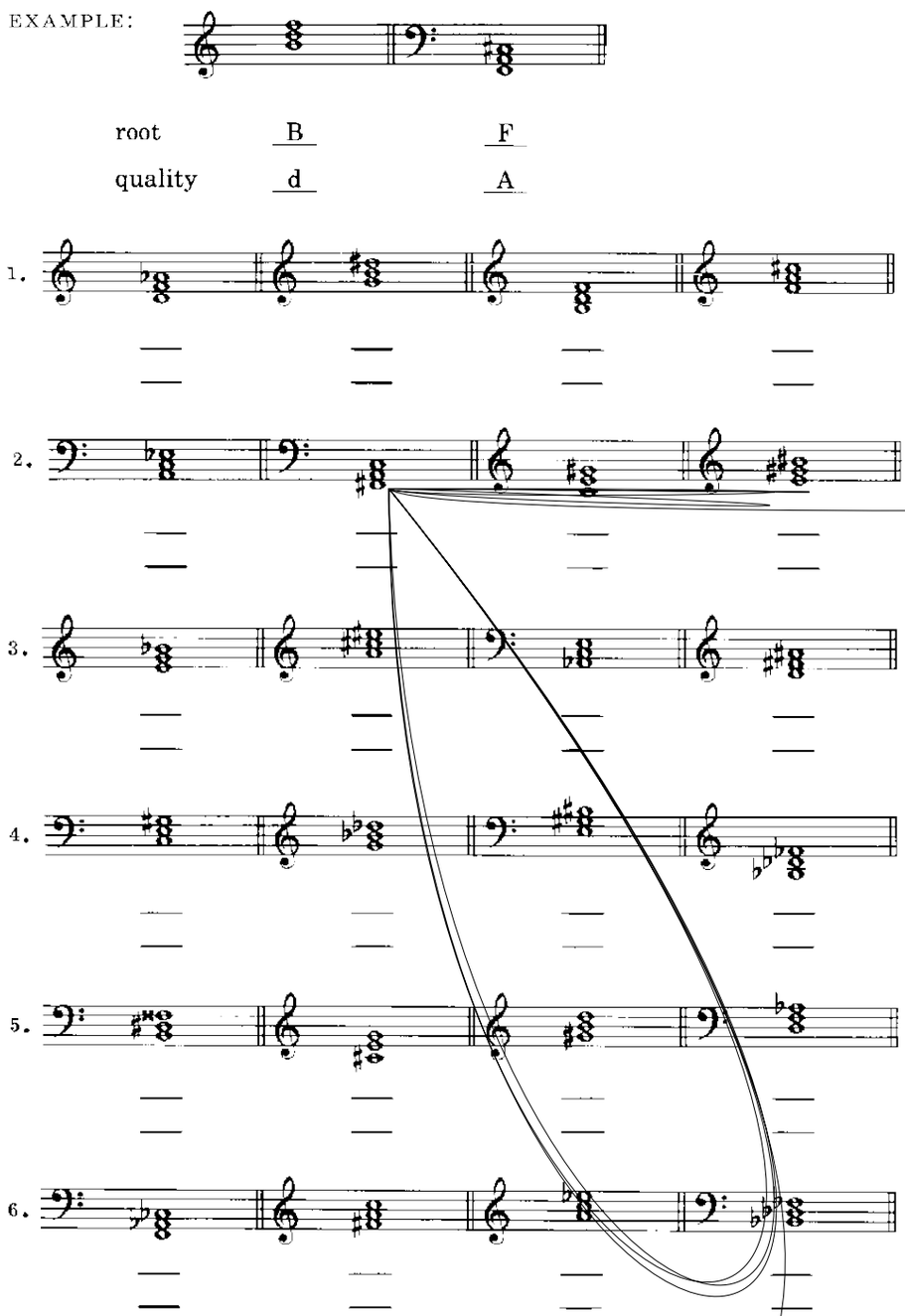
Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 234



Practice Materials 11-5

PRACTICE

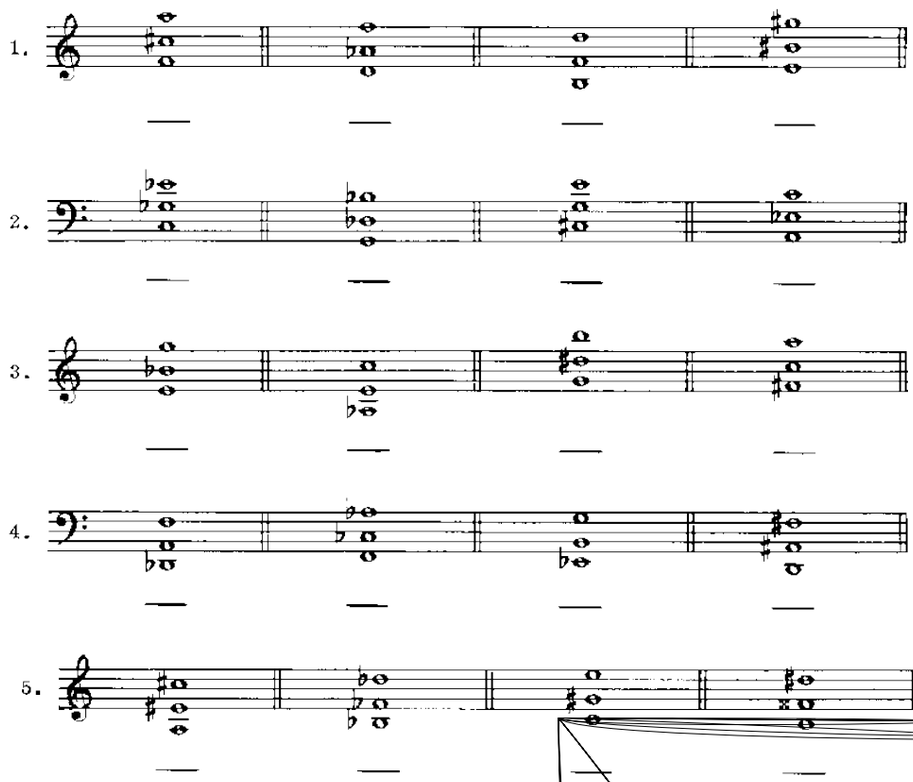
Identify the root of each of the following triads, and label the triads as augmented (A) or diminished (d) in quality.



Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 235

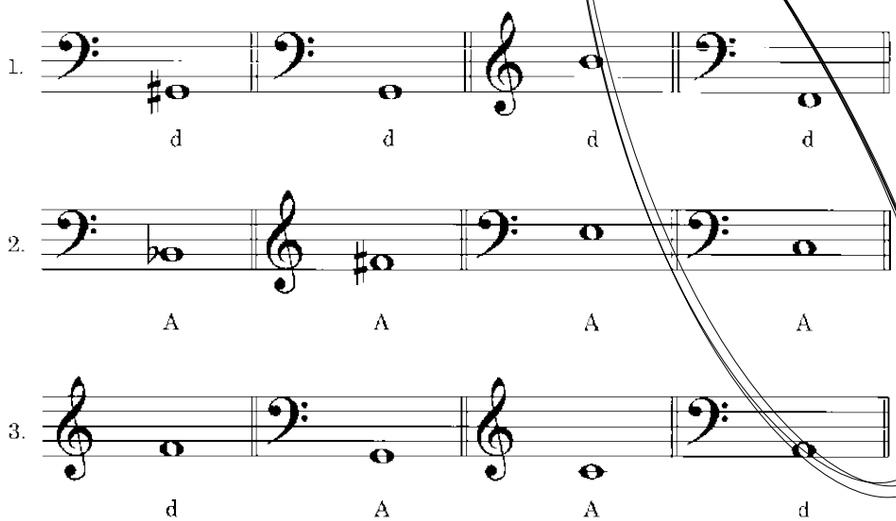
Practice Materials 11-6

The following are root-position triads in open position. In the space provided, label each as augmented (A) or diminished (d) in quality.

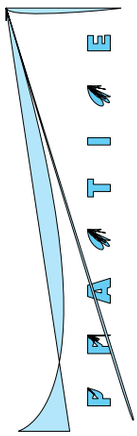


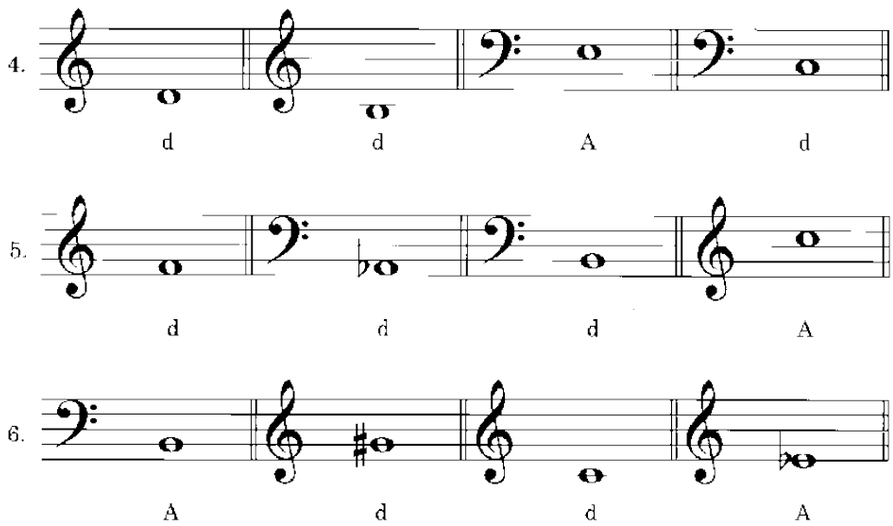
Practice Materials 11-7

Complete the indicated augmented or diminished triad starting from the given root. Remember that the augmented triad is a major third above the root plus an aug mented fifth above the root, and that the diminished triad is a minor third above the root plus a diminished fifth above the root.



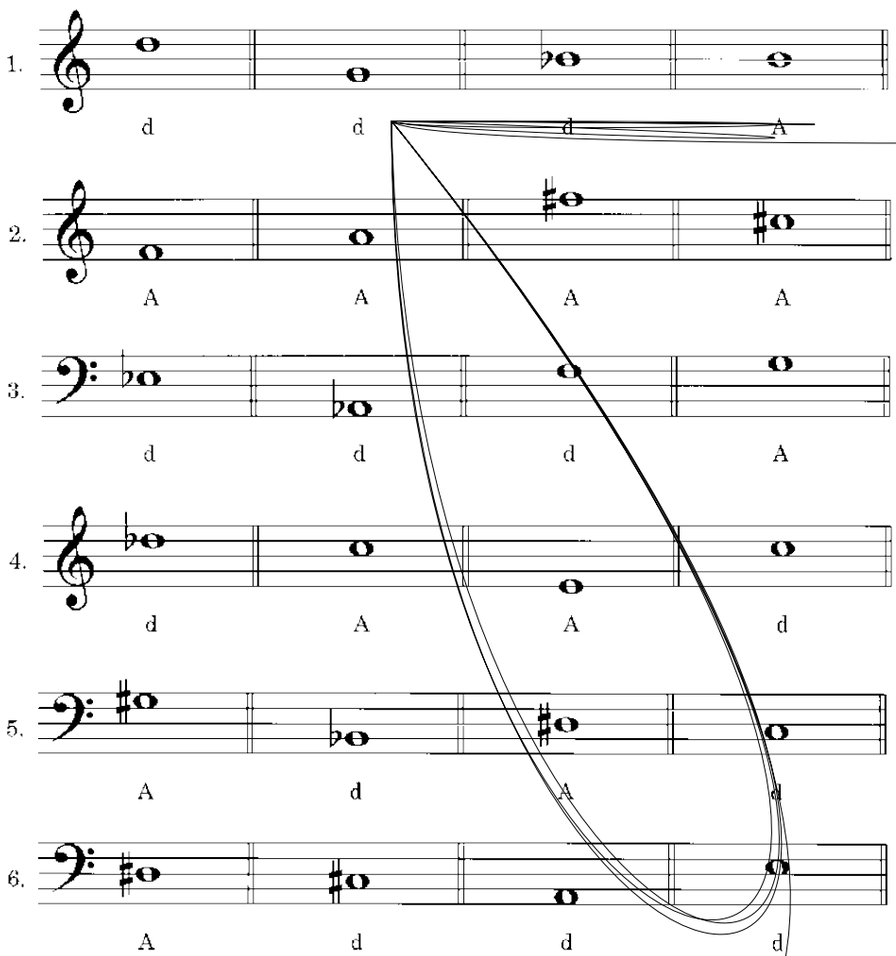
Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 236





Practice Materials 11-8

Complete the indicated close-position augmented or diminished triads. In each case, the note given is the third of the triad.



Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 237

Practice Materials 11-9

Complete the indicated close-position augmented or diminished triads. In each case, the note given is the fifth of the triad.

1. d d A A

2. A A d A

3. A d A d

4. d d A A

5. d A A d

Practice Materials 11-10

The following triads are in either first inversion or second inversion. Identify the inversion, the root of the triad, and the quality of the triad.

EXAMPLE:

inversion 1st

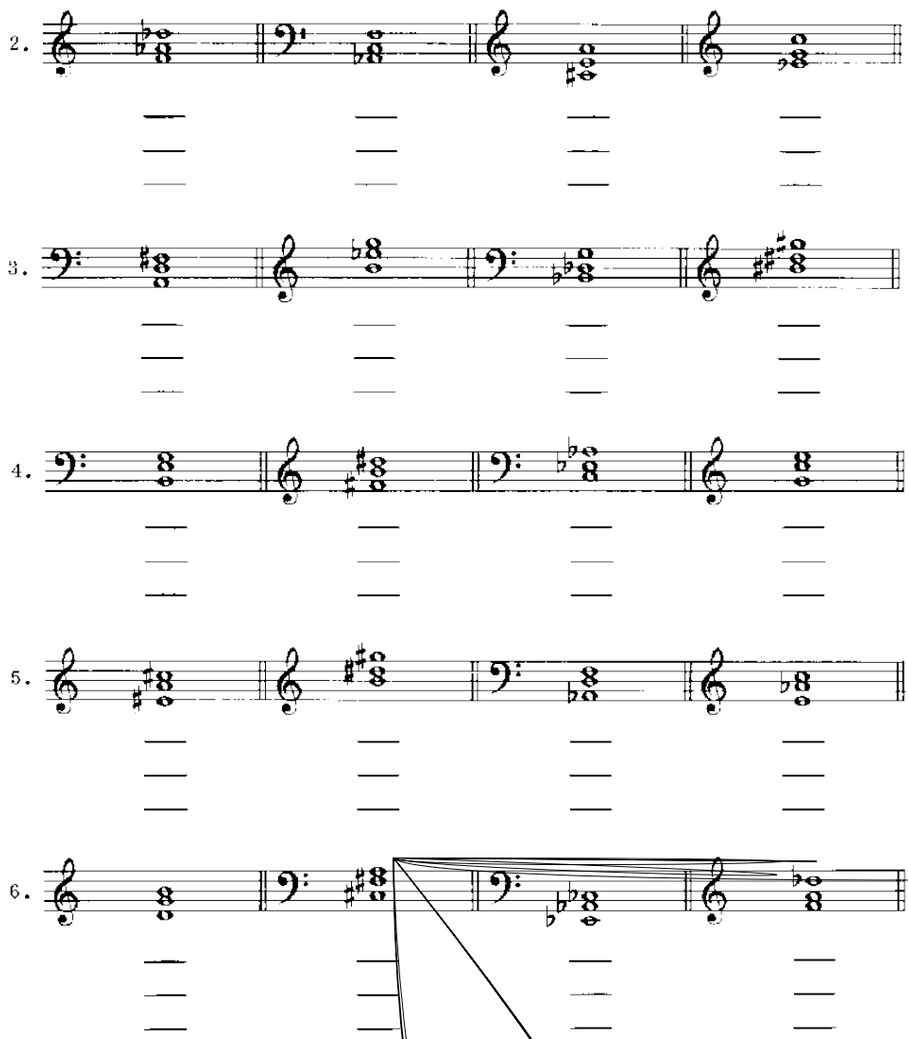
root A

quality m

1.

Duckworth_Music9e_11.qxd 11/18/05 10:00 PM Page 238

PRACTICE



Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 239

CHAPTER TWELVE Triads in a Musical Context

In the previous chapter, we learned the basics of triad construction and recognition. In this chapter, we will learn to recognize triads (and seventh chords) in actual musical situations.

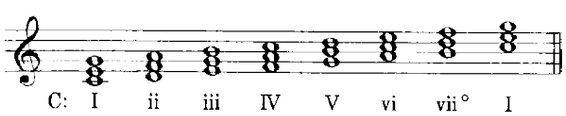
We will begin by looking at several different ways of labeling triads (Roman numeral analysis, chord symbols, and guitar tablature), briefly explore four-note chords (called seventh chords), and then look at how triads appear in actual pieces of music.

Labeling Triads

There are several different methods of labeling triads in tonal music. Because each way gives important information about the harmony, musicians need to be familiar with more than one. Roman numeral analysis is the preferred method in theoretical discussions of music when an understanding of the relationship between the triads is significant; if you continue to study music theory, you will employ this system of labeling extensively. Chord symbol identification appears most frequently as a performing system in popular music, jazz, and rock. If you expect to develop your performing skills, from singing folk songs to playing with a jazz or rock group, you will need to understand this type of labeling. Finally, guitar tablature identifies triads for guitar players, indicating how to produce the desired chord.

Roman Numeral Analysis

In roman numeral analysis, uppercase and lowercase roman numerals identify both the scale degree on which a triad is built as well as the quality of each particular triad. The uppercase roman numerals (I, IV, and V) identify the major triads; the lowercase roman numerals (ii, iii, and vi) identify the minor triads; and the symbol ° added to a lowercase number (vii°) identifies the diminished triad. A subscript 7 following the roman numeral means that the interval of a seventh has been added above the root. The key is indicated at the beginning of the analysis: an uppercase letter for a major key, a lowercase letter for a minor key.



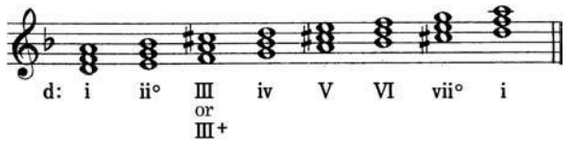
Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 240

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, analyze the following triads with roman numeral analysis.

e: — — — g: — — — f♯: — — —

The triads built from the harmonic minor version of the minor scale (with the raised leading tone borrowed from major) are labeled as follows:



The symbol beside an uppercase roman numeral (III) indicates an augmented triad. Although we need practice in writing this triad, remember that the aug mented triad is not used that frequently by composers.

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, analyze the following triads in minor keys with roman numeral analysis.

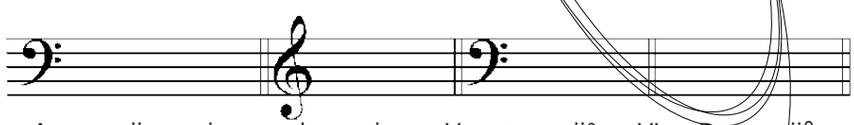
D: — — — G: — — — E :f — — —

Every major scale and every minor scale produce the same patterns of triads; that is, the quality of each triad remains constant no matter what the key. The infor mation given in the following chart will prove extremely useful in writing triads. Study it carefully before continuing.

Major keys	Quality of triads	Natural minor keys	Changes to natural minor with a borrowed leading tone
I, IV, V	major	III, VI, VII	V
ii, iii, vi	minor	i, iv, v	
vii°	diminished	ii°	vii°
none	augmented		(possible III seldom replaces the major III)

CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, write the indicated triads in each key. Begin by supplying the correct key signature.



A: ii vi b: iv V c: ii° VI D: vii° IV

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 241

MUSIC IN THEORY and EAR

Roman Numeral Analysis

The following two excerpts illustrate the roman numeral analysis of music. Pitches that are not part of the chord (that is, nonharmonic pitches) are circled. Notice also that the chords occasionally occur in an inversion rather than in root position and they can take several beats or even a measure to reveal all their pitches.

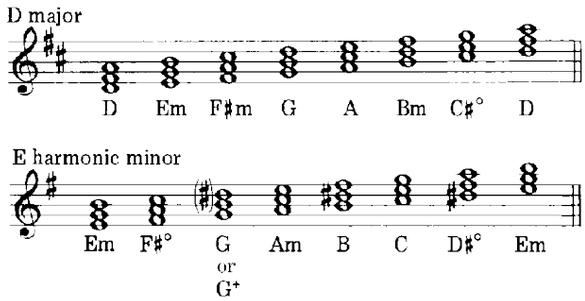
Listen to each example several times and study the analysis. What kind of information does it give you about the individual chords? About the progression of chords? About how the chords relate to the melody? In class, discuss the information that roman numeral analysis does and does not provide. How is this information useful to a performer?

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 242

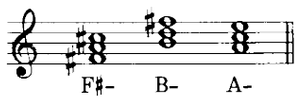
Chord Symbols

In the system of chord symbol identification, the letter name of the triad is substituted for the roman numeral. While this no longer indicates the relationship of the various triads to the key, it does convey triad information more directly and, therefore, is useful in a variety of performing situations.

This system of labeling supplies both the name of the triad and its quality. An uppercase letter indicates major triads (D, G, A); an uppercase letter plus a lower case m indicates minor triads (Em, F♯m, Bm); an uppercase letter with a + or with the abbreviation aug. indicates augmented triads (G+); and an uppercase letter with a ° or with dim. indicates diminished triads (C♯°, F♯°, D°).



One current style of jazz notation indicates a minor chord with a minus sign (−) instead of a lowercase m. In this system, F♯−, B−, and A− are minor triads. The other chord symbols remain the same.



CLASS WORK

With your teacher's help, write each indicated triad in root position.

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Recognizing Chord Symbols

The following composition has been analyzed with the pitch name identification system. As a class, discuss the kinds of information this analytical system conveys to the performer.

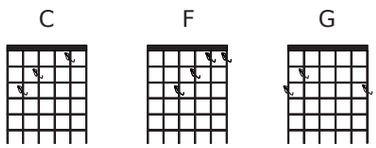
Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 243

MUSIC IN
T và ÉÇ

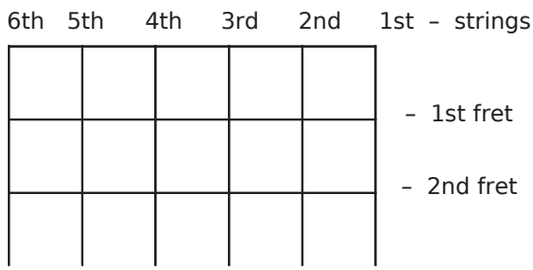
Guitar Tablature

Guitar tablature does not serve quite the same function as roman numeral analy sis and chord symbols. Unlike roman numeral analysis (which tells us how various triads function within a key), or chord symbols (which tell us the root and quality of a chord), guitar tablature tells the guitar player what physical action to make in order to produce the desired triad. This is because unlike musical staff notation, which is a visual representation of the actual sound, tablature tells us how to go about making that sound.

Guitar tablature usually appears above the melody line of a song and uses small diagrams such as the following to indicate the appropriate chords for the music.

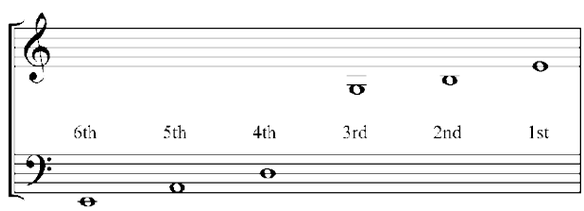


These diagrams are pictures of the six strings and several of the frets (small metal bars spaced evenly across the length of the fingerboard) on the neck of the guitar nearest the tuning pegs. In the following diagram the vertical lines represent the six guitar strings and the horizontal lines represent the frets.



If a guitar player were to play this example of tablature, he or she would strum the open strings. (The first string is the highest-sounding string.)

Guitar tuning, open strings

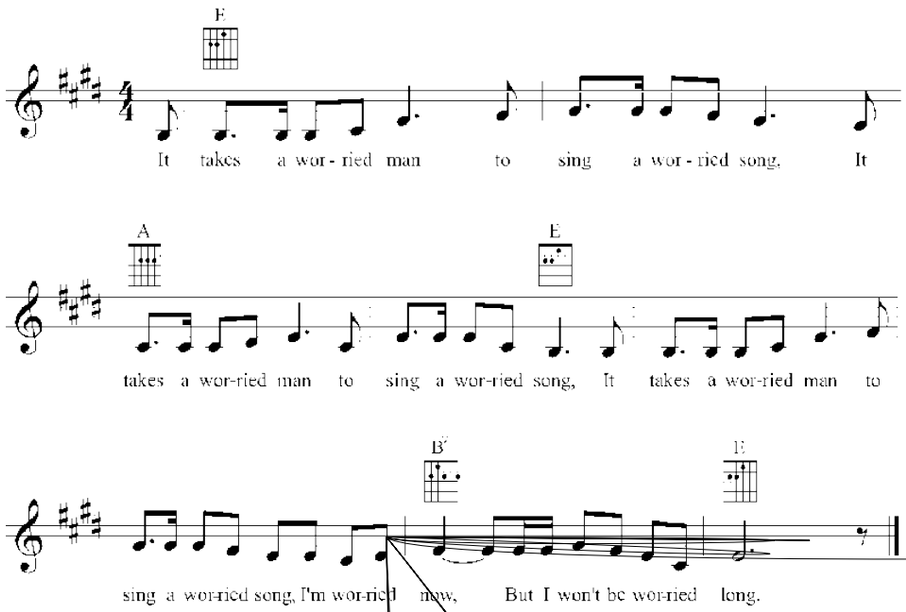


Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 244

In order to indicate triads, small black dots are placed on the appropriate strings at the appropriate fret. These dots tell the guitar player where to place his or her fingers in order to create the desired triad. Any string without a dot is to be played as an open string unless there is an "x" above or below it. This "x" means that particular string is not to be played at all.

The following is the melody to "Worried Man Blues" with the guitar tablature indicated above it. Notice that this is extremely useful information to a guitar player trying to accompany this song.

"Worried Man Blues"



MUSIC IN THEORY

Guitar Tablature

Ask several people in the class who play guitar to prepare accompaniments to "Worried Man Blues." Then, as a class sing the song to each of these different accompaniments. Afterward, discuss with the guitar players what role the tablature played in their preparation of their accompaniment.

Seventh Chords

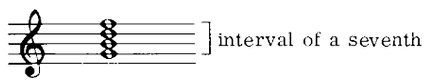
So far we have dealt only with the triad—a three-note chord. The triad is, after all, the fundamental structure of tonal harmony. But music is not made up exclusively of triads. Past and present composers sometimes add a fourth pitch, and occasionally even a fifth and sixth pitch, to the triad. And while some styles of music, such as folk music or early rock-n-roll, function primarily with triads, other styles, such as recent jazz or the Romantic compositions of Chopin and Liszt, utilize four-, five-, and

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 245

six-note chords extensively. But no matter what the style, adding extra pitches to the triad is always for the purpose of increasing the harmonic tension.

Even though the study of chords more complex than the triad is beyond the scope of this book, they occur so frequently that we need to take a brief look at them. The dominant seventh chord, for example, is used so extensively that it is some times difficult to find an example of tonal music that doesn't contain at least one.

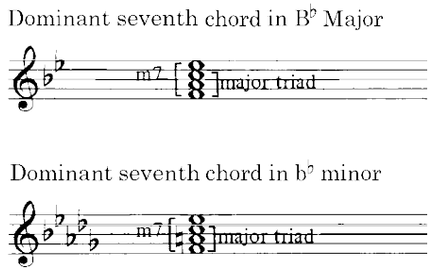
All seventh chords are so called because the fourth note creates the interval of a seventh above the root of the chord.



Although seventh chords can be built on any degree of the scale, the one built on the dominant, that is, the dominant seventh chord, is used more frequently than any of the other possibilities. This is because the additional note enhances the har monic tension already inherent in the dominant triad.

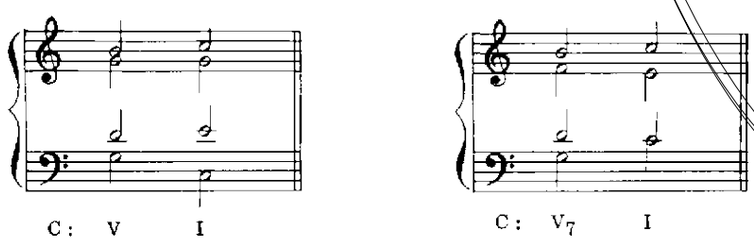
Dominant Seventh Chords

The dominant seventh chord is always a major triad with an added minor sev enth above the root. This is true for both major and minor keys. This constant struc ture—a major triad with an added minor seventh—is what gives the dominant seventh chord its characteristic sound. Notice in the following example that when working in a minor key, the leading tone must always be raised in order to create a major triad on the dominant.



The dominant seventh chord is identified by the notation V_7, in which the roman numeral V indicates the triad built on the fifth, or dominant, note of the scale, and the subscript 7 indicates the interval of a seventh. In harmonic analysis, both symbols are necessary in order to correctly identify the dominant seventh chord. With chord symbols and guitar tablature, the symbol F7 would be used for both of the previous examples.

To understand the difference between the dominant triad and the dominant seventh chord, play the following two patterns on the piano. Notice how the domi nant seventh chord (V_7) produces an increase in harmonic tension. Listen to the dif ference between the V and V_7 several times. The dominant seventh sound is an extremely common sound in all styles of tonal music and one that you should begin to listen for and recognize.



Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 246

MUSIC IN THEORY

Hearing Seventh Chords

You should learn to hear the difference between a seventh chord and a triad. Your instructor will play various chords. Some chords will be played as seventh chords, others as triads. In the following space, indicate whether you hear a seventh chord or a triad.

1. _____ _____ _____ _____
2. _____ _____ _____ _____
3. _____ _____ _____ _____
4. _____ _____ _____ _____
5. _____ _____ _____ _____

Diatonic Seventh Chords

Although the dominant seventh chord is the four-note chord most frequently found in tonal music, it is not the only one available. Seventh chords can be constructed on any pitch of the major or minor scale. And while there is quite a variety of pos sible seventh chords, five types are used most frequently. These are all named for the quality of their triad plus the quality of the interval between the root and the seventh.

As you already know, the dominant seventh chord is known as a major-minor seventh chord (Mm7) because it consists of a major triad with the interval of a minor seventh between the root and the fourth note. In addition, there is also a major-major seventh chord (MM7), consisting of a major triad plus a major seventh; a minor-minor seventh chord (mm7), consisting of a minor triad plus a minor sev enth; a half-diminished seventh chord (ø7), consisting of a diminished triad plus a minor seventh; and a fully diminished seventh chord (ø7), consisting of a diminished triad plus a diminished seventh.

Here are the five main types of seventh chords, all constructed on the note “C” for comparison. Play them on the piano or listen to them played, and compare the different sounds they produce.

Remember that it is not necessary for you to work extensively with seventh chords at this point. Rather, you need to be aware that they exist so that you can recognize them when you encounter them in the music you play. Remember also that the function of all seventh chords is to increase the level of tension in the music where they occur.

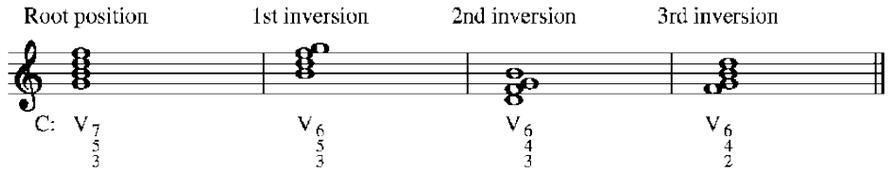
Inversions of Seventh Chords

Although it is really beyond the scope of this book, you should be aware that domi nant seventh chords can be inverted just as triads can. Knowing this will enable you to recognize these chords more easily in musical situations.

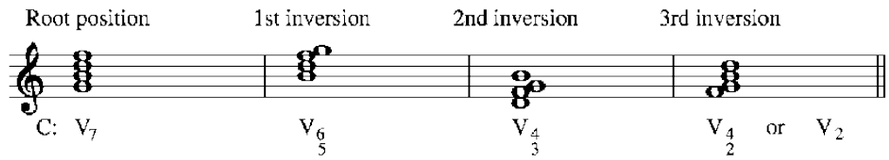
Remember that triads have two possible inversions beyond root position. But, because the dominant seventh chord has four notes, there are three possible in versions of it beyond root position. Notice in the following diagram that the name of the inversion is determined by the lowest sounding note just as in the inversion of triads. First inversion has the third of the chord as the lowest sounding note,

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 247

second inversion has the fifth as the lowest sounding note, and third inversion has the seventh of the chord as the lowest sounding note. Notice also that the numbers refer to the intervals above the lowest note, as they do with triads.



And just as with triads, a shorthand system of labeling has developed that indicates only the essential intervals above the lowest note. In the actual analysis of music, or in figured bass, these are the numbers that you will see.

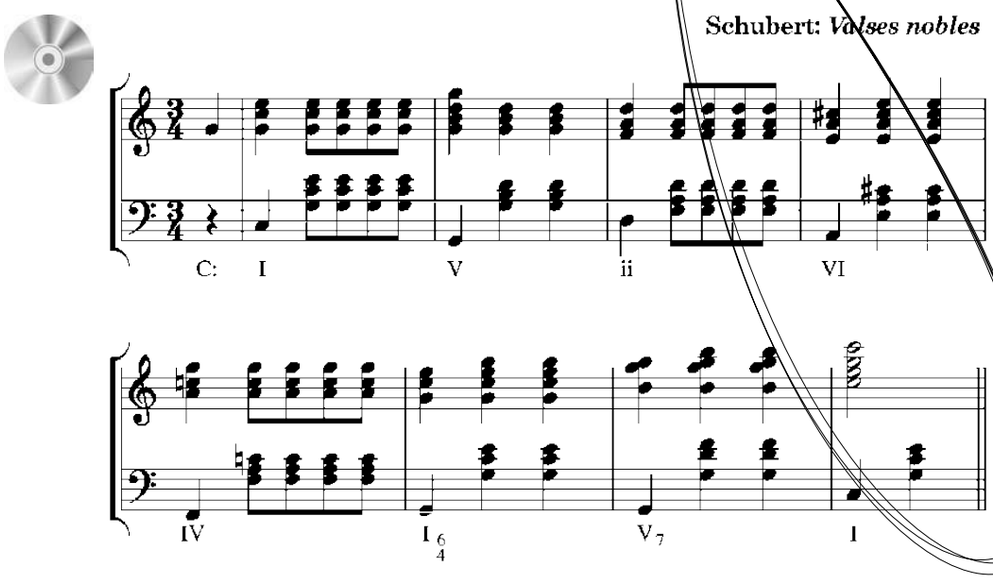


Recognizing Triads in Actual Music

In actual pieces of music, triads don't always appear as vertical chords. Composers often choose other types of settings for triads, particularly when they want the harmony to make a strong contribution to the horizontal motion of the piece. So, it is important for you not only to be aware that triads can appear in music in a vari ety of settings but also to be able to recognize the more common types. To help you begin, we will look briefly at the two most important ways in which composers have traditionally set triads: block chords and arpeggiations.

Block Chords

The following is an example of a composition using triads as block chords.



Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 248

Notice in this example how vertical the harmony looks on the page. When listening to it performed, notice how your attention is drawn to this vertical quality more than to any horizontal motion. We hear these chords almost as separate entities even though, simultaneously, we are aware of their linear relationship to each other.

This special quality of block chords, to emphasize both the vertical and the horizontal dimensions of the music, can be seen in the following pattern, a staple in popular music since the 1950s. Notice how the vertical, almost percussive, qualities of the music are enhanced by the repetition of each chord.

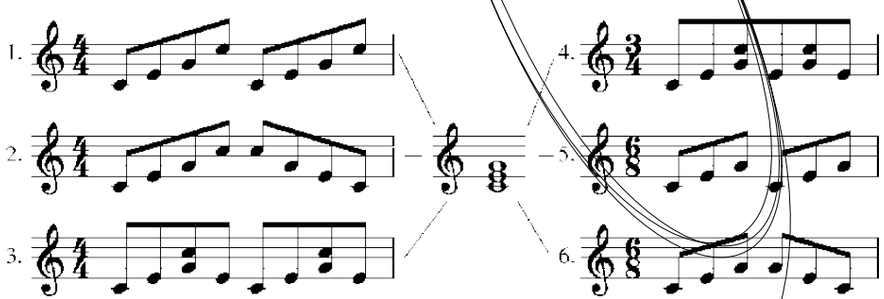
MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Block Chords in Popular Music

Make a list of five or six popular songs that use the block-chord style of accompaniment illustrated in the previous example. As a class, listen to two or three of them. Is your attention always drawn to the harmonic element in a similar way? How does the tempo affect the harmonic element, particularly its vertical qualities?

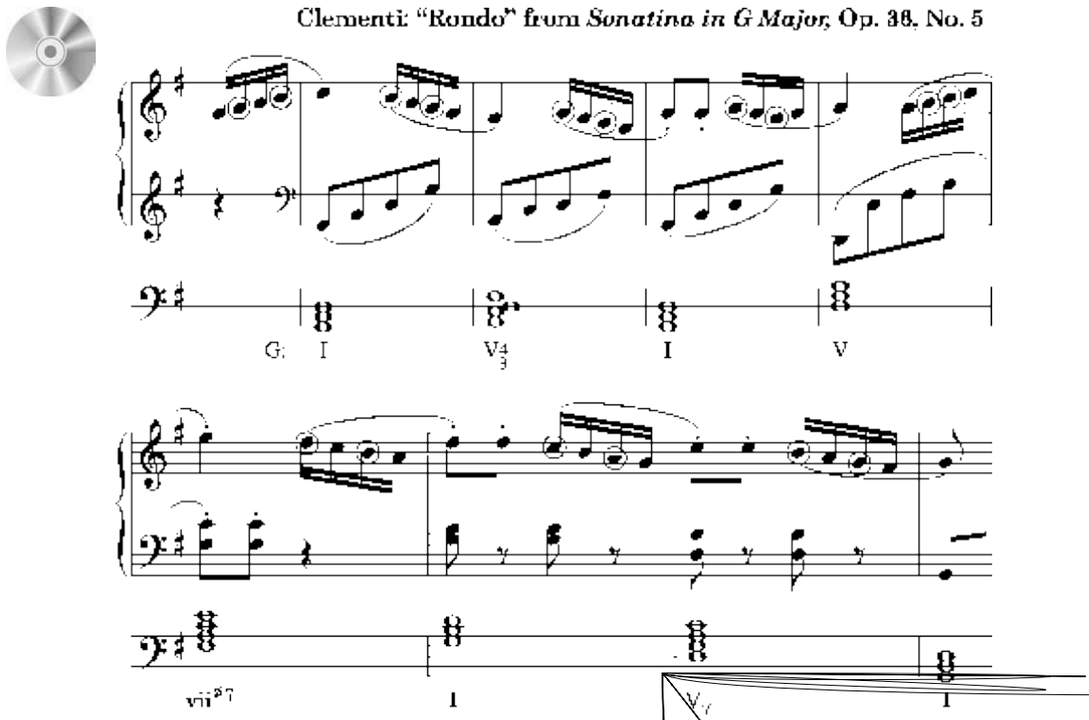
Arpeggiations

Often, composers choose arpeggiations rather than block chords in order to avoid directing the listener's attention too strongly toward the vertical aspects of the harmony. An arpeggiated accompaniment is an accompanying figure in which each chord is broken into a pattern of isolated notes that is generally repeated throughout much of the piece. These isolated notes have the effect of spreading the chord out over time, thus causing our attention to move linearly. Here are a few of the simpler arpeggiation patterns.

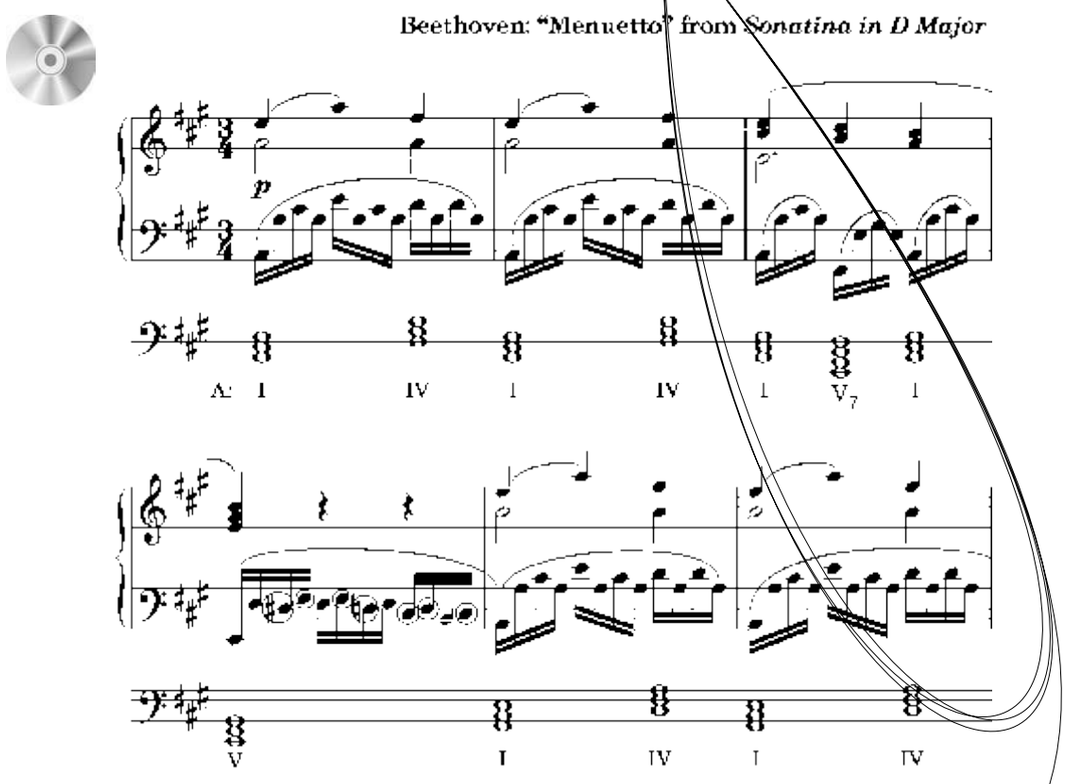


Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 249

The following are several musical examples using some of these simple arpeggiations, or broken chord patterns, as they are sometimes called. The block chords on which these patterns are based are written below each line of music so that you can see more easily how each chord unfolds in time through the arpeggiations. Circled pitches are not a part of the chord.



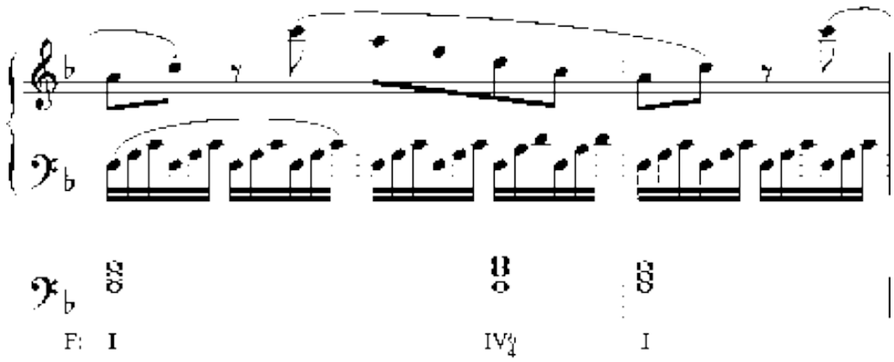
Clementi: "Rondo" from *Sonatina in G Major*, Op. 38, No. 5



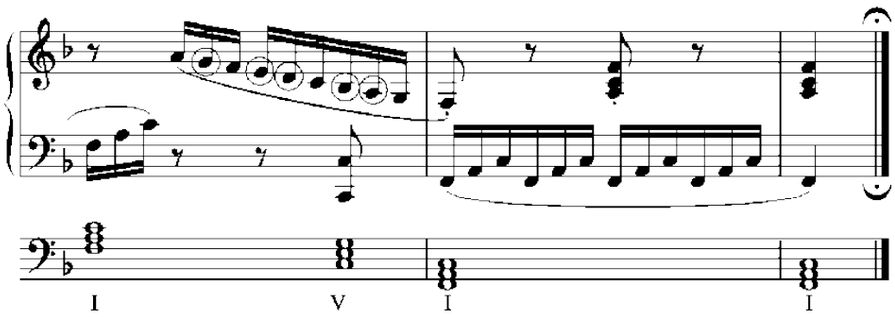
Beethoven: "Menuetto" from *Sonatina in D Major*

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 250

Clementi: "Rondo" from *Sonatina in F Major*, Op. 36, No. 4



Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 251



MUSIC IN THEORY

Arpeggiating Chords

The chord progression that follows is written in block chords. In the space provided, create an arpeggiated version of this pattern suitable for piano or guitar. You may invent your own, or use one of the previous examples as a model. If you don't play piano or guitar, ask someone who does to play your pattern for you.

Both classical and popular composers throughout the centuries have used arpeggiated chords—and almost always for the same reason: it weakens the vertical qualities of the harmony, and replaces them with a linear quality that helps to move the music forward. This contribution is so important that chord arpeggiations appear in almost all musical styles and at almost any tempo.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Ear Training

The ability to identify chord progressions or even individual chords by ear is extremely useful. But for people with little background or practice this can be extremely frustrating, particularly at first. Unless your ear is

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 252

MUSIC IN

unusually well developed, it is unreasonable to expect that you could begin by taking the chords off a recording of your favorite piece. This is an extremely sophisticated skill that only comes to most people with consistent practice. While this may be one of your goals, it is not where you begin.

If you are just beginning, keep in mind these three points as you practice.

1. You must practice consistently in order to improve. Ear training is not unlike preparing for an athletic event.
2. Success seems to come in plateaus; don't be overly concerned if you don't appear to show improvement every day or even every week.
3. It is better, and easier, to build on success. Ideally, your success rate should be in the area of 80 to 85 percent. If it is much lower, you are probably attempting material that is too difficult for you. This can actually slow your progress.

With this in mind, try the following: Your teacher or another student from the class will play a major or minor scale as a reference. Then he or she will play a triad that is either the tonic or the dominant triad of that key. In the spaces provided, indicate which triad is being played.

1. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 6. _____
3. _____ 7. _____
4. _____ 8. _____

Now try this using three triads—the tonic, dominant, and submediant. It helps to remember which triads are major and which are minor.

1. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 6. _____
3. _____ 7. _____
4. _____ 8. _____

Finally, see if you can correctly identify one of four different triads—tonic, dominant, submediant, and subdominant.

1. _____ 5. _____
2. _____ 6. _____
3. _____ 7. _____
4. _____ 8. _____

Focus

Triads are basic to tonal music. It is important that you not only be able to construct triads but that you be able to label them correctly, as well as recognize them within a wide variety of musical contexts. In this chapter we have looked at three distinct ways of labeling triads. Depending upon the type of music that interests you most, one of these labeling systems may seem more useful to you than the others. However, you should become familiar with all three, because each offers unique

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 253

musical information. If you plan to continue with music theory, roman numeral analysis will certainly become increasingly important. Make sure that you under stand the basics of this system before going on to the next chapter.

It is also important that you have a beginning understanding of seventh chords, in particular the dominant seventh, because these chords appear frequently in both popular and classical music. While extensive work with seventh chords is beyond the scope of this book, a general understanding of them will make the music you listen to and perform more meaningful.

Finally, keep in mind that triads are simple musical structures that create sub tle and complicated musical patterns. It is important that you be able to recognize triads and seventh chords when they appear other than as block chords. Broken-chord arpeggiated figures are one such way they frequently occur. There are also many other ways that chords unfold over time that we have not considered. If, how ever, you keep in mind that all tonal music is based on triads and seventh chords, you should, with practice, be able to figure out how the chords are unfolding, no matter how unique the actual musical situation.

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 254

Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 255

Practice Materials 12-1

Use roman numerals to label the triads in the following major keys.

1. F: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

2. G: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

3. D: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

4. B♭: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

5. E: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

Practice Materials 12-2

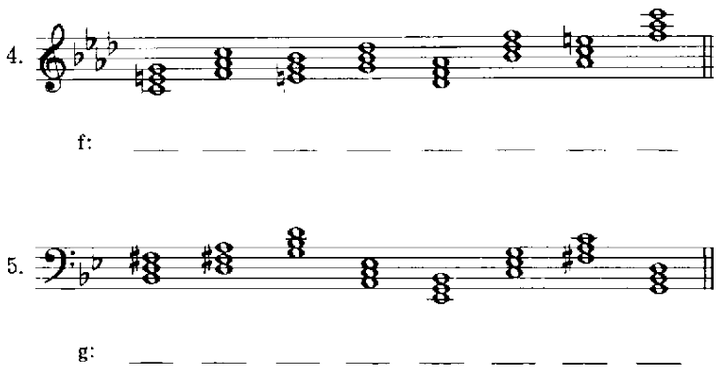
Use roman numerals to label the triads in the following minor keys.

1. f♯: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

2. d: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

3. e: ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

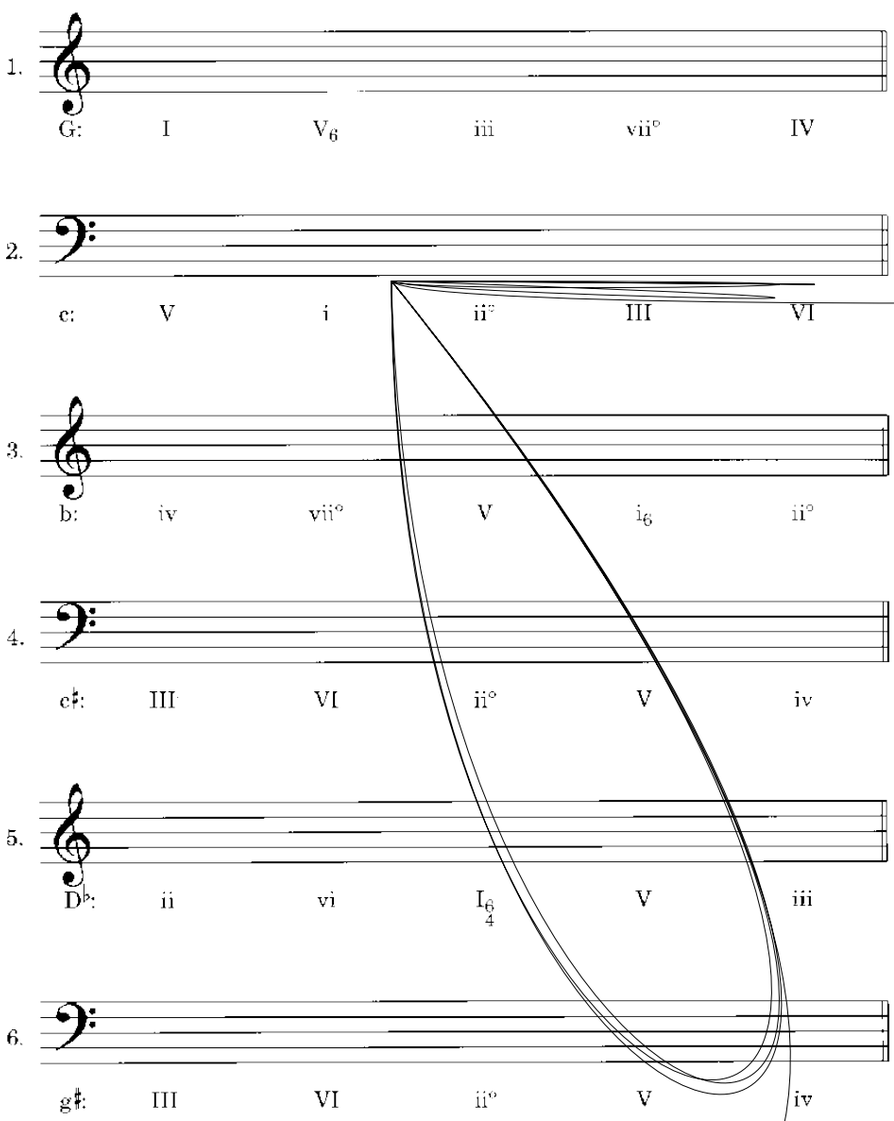
Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 256



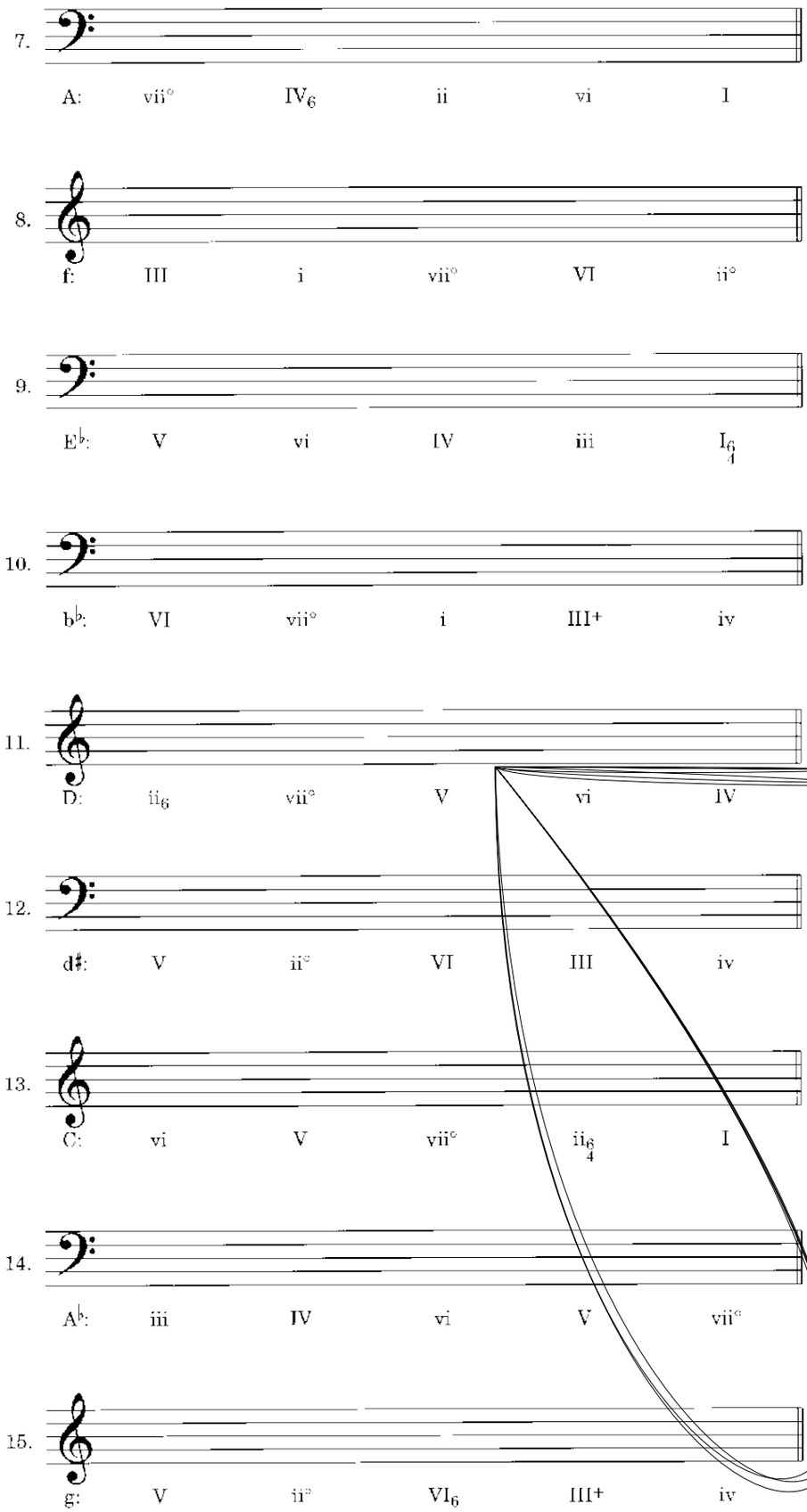
PRACTICE

Practice Materials 12-3

Write the indicated triads for each given key. Begin by writing in the correct key signature.



Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 257

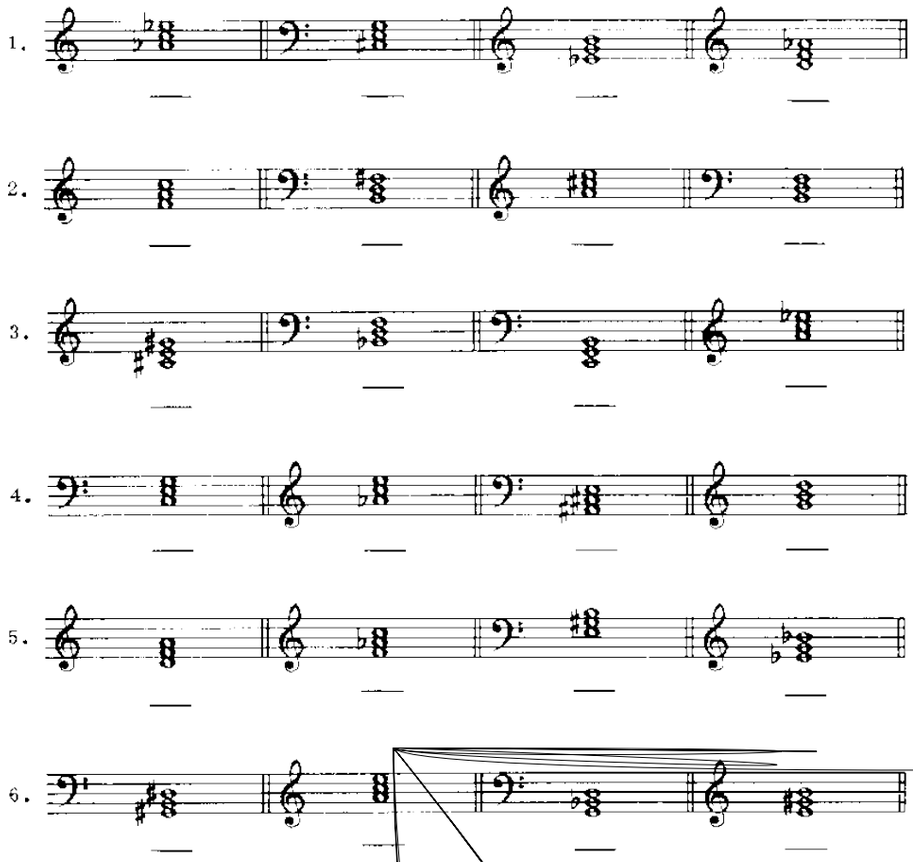


Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 258

PRACTICE

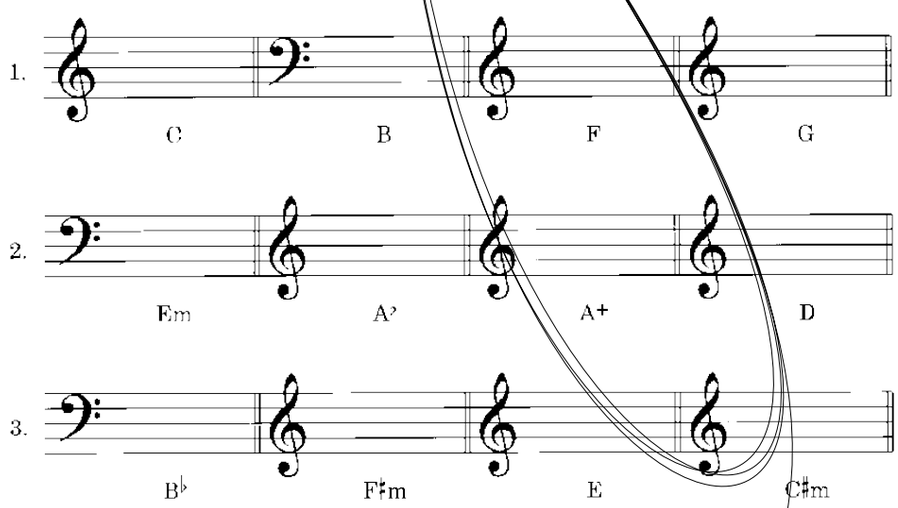
Practice Materials 12-4

Label the following triads using pitch name identification.

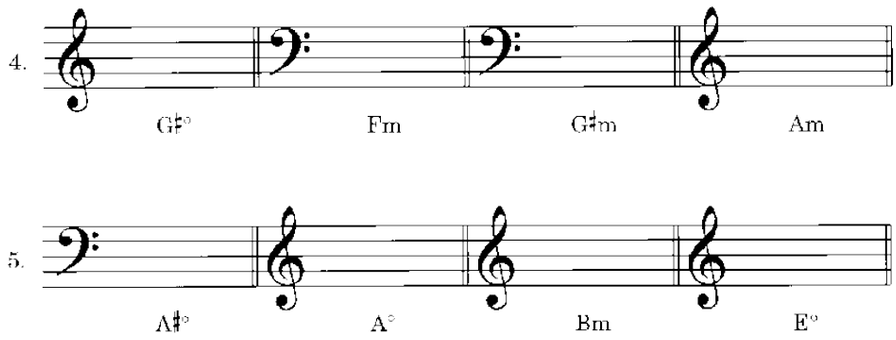


Practice Materials 12-5

Write the triads indicated below. All triads should be in root position.



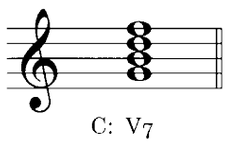
Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 259

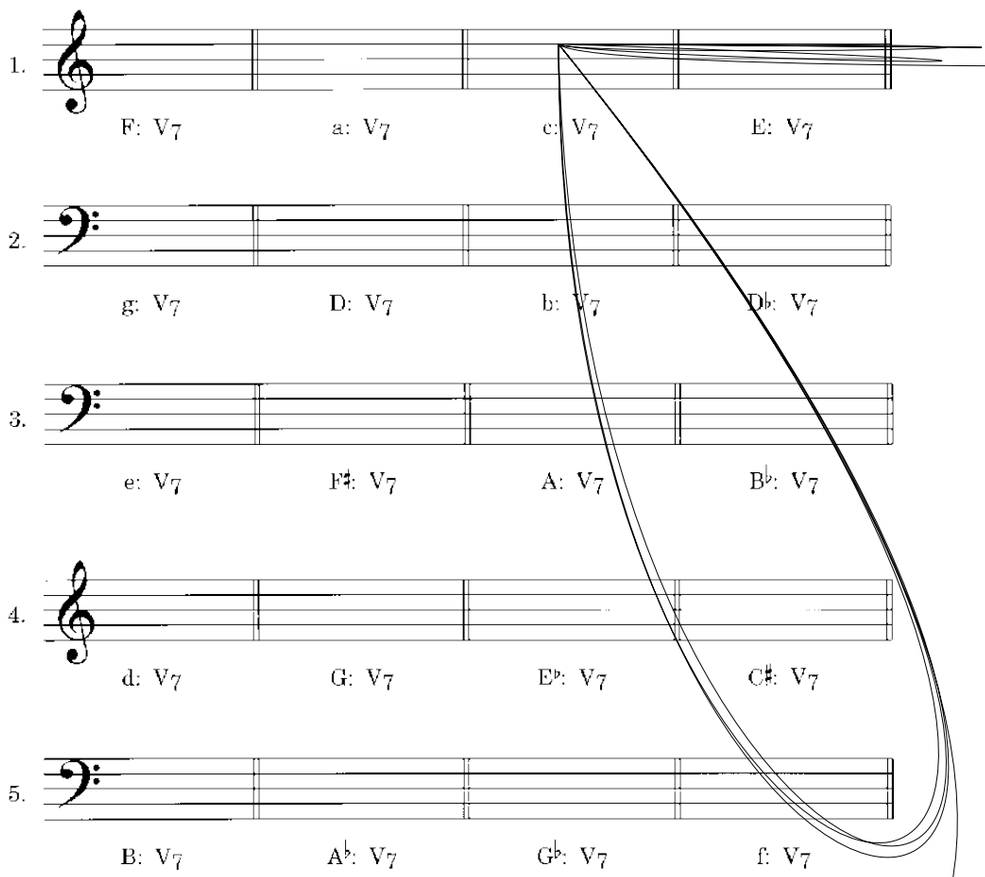


Practice Materials 12-6

Practice writing dominant seventh chords in root position in the keys indicated. When dealing with a minor key, remember to use the harmonic minor version. Remember also that the dominant seventh chord is always a major triad with an added minor seventh.

EXAMPLE:





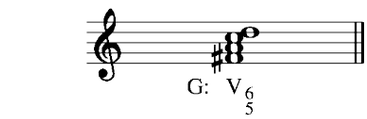
Duckworth_Music9e_12.qxd 11/18/05 10:29 PM Page 260

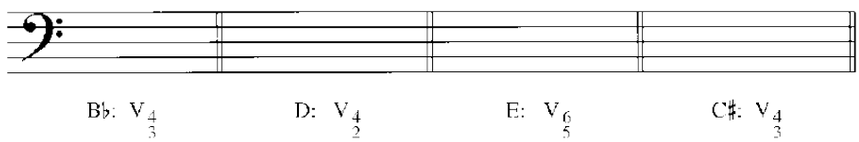
PRACTICE

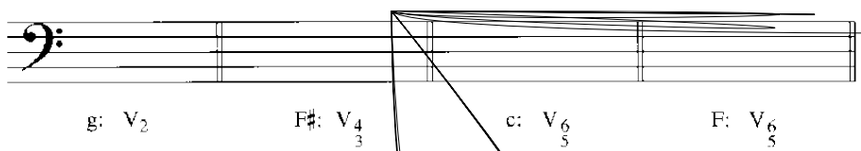
Practice Materials 12-7

Practice writing inversions of the following dominant seventh chords. Remember that the dominant seventh chord is always a major triad with an added minor seventh. When working in minor keys, this means you must use the harmonic minor version of the scale.

EXAMPLE:







Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 261

CHAPTER FOURTEEN Chord Progressions

Each of the first twelve chapters of this book has focused on an individual element of music. Essentially, our work so far has consisted of gaining an understanding of musical facts and then trying to relate these "facts" to actual musical situations. Now, we need to begin the process of unifying this information—these facts about music—into an understanding of how "real" music works theoretically. Although ultimately this level of musical understanding is a life-long goal, or at least several more semesters of work if you plan to continue studying music, now we can begin to acquire this information and simultaneously draw our work with this book to a logical conclusion.

The material covered in this and the next chapter deals with tonality, a some what elusive concept whose definition most Western musicians take for granted. In its simplest sense, tonality is tonal music, that is, music in which both the melody and the harmony come from major and minor scales. But in a more subjective, per sonal sense, tonality is also that unique ability of musical tones, in both the scale and the music itself, to seem to relate to one another. To our ears, these "tonal" pitches establish a hierarchy in which one tone becomes the focal point—the point of rest, the tonic—around which the other scale degrees rotate and interact, each with vary ing degrees of tension and importance. This interrelationship of tonal scale degrees, as you will learn from future courses in music, regulates not only the details of music—consonance and dissonance, phrase structure, and cadences—but the overall form, or musical shape, of each work as well. In this chapter, we will concentrate on four of the most basic aspects of tonality: tendency tones, the dominant/tonic relationship, cadences, and simple chord progressions.

Of course, we can only begin to explore these topics. The material covered in this chapter generally requires quite a bit more time to work through and absorb than that in any of the previous chapters. But if this is your only class in music the ory, these last two chapters will show you some practical applications for the infor mation you have gained. If you plan further study of theory, these chapters will introduce many of the concepts you will encounter in your later studies. Either way, it is important to remember that this is only the beginning.

Tendency Tones

In our earlier study of scales, you probably noticed that not all pitches of the major scale sound equal. That is, some pitches, such as the tonic, appear completely at rest, while others, such as the dominant or the leading tone, sound active and full of tension. You can experience this feeling of tension by singing an ascending major scale and stopping on the seventh scale degree. You'll probably feel a strong desire to complete the scale because the leading tone is an active scale degree requiring, to our ears, resolution to another tone, in this case the more restful tonic.

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 262

You can experience a similar sensation by singing the major scale again, this time descending and stopping on the supertonic. The second scale degree is also active, but to a lesser extent. Although not as powerful, it too seems to want to resolve, in this case also to the tonic.

If you wish, you can repeat this experiment, stopping on other tones of the scale and deciding their degree of activity and the direction of their attraction, or pull, toward other notes. If you do this you will discover that not all tones seem attracted directly to the tonic. Some, such as the subdominant, seem to pull equally toward the dominant. Others seem to pull toward other places, but not nearly as strongly as the dominant-to-tonic attraction.

This apparent attraction of various scale degrees to one another is referred to as tendency tones. That is, certain pitches within a scale or melody have a ten dency to move toward other tones. This idea is important, because it explains in part how melodies appear to move from one point in time to another. The sense of melodic motion we experience comes partially from melodic lines moving through differing levels of activity and tension toward a resolution on the tonic. The same concept holds true for pitches in the harmony. There, the "tendency" of pitches to pull in certain directions helps to give the harmony a feeling of movement between points of tension and places of rest. This feeling of expectation and satisfaction, found first in the notes of the scale, is translated into a similar feeling in the melody and the harmony.

In the previous century, some theorists believed that these tendencies (or ten dency tones) were so strong that a chart could show how each scale degree above the tonic should move and resolve. But actual music is always more complicated and subtle than the charts that try to explain it, and these charts of tendency tones were never really applied with much success to the melodies or harmonies com posers had written. Nevertheless, the concept of tendency tones is still valid. It is important to remember that there is a strong relationship between all the tones of the scale, both among themselves and with the tonic. Furthermore, this relation ship allows the tonic to become the primary tone—the center of gravity—to which all the other tones seem to relate and to want, eventually, to resolve. Imagining an analogy with our solar system, with each planet at varying distances from the sun in the center, may be useful in understanding the unique part each scale degree plays in our perception of musical motion, as well as in the feeling of tension and resolution so important to tonal music.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Hearing Tendency Tones

As a class, sing any of the following melodies several times. Discuss the active pitches and the points of rest within each melody. Try stopping at various places as you sing and discussing what that particular tone con tributes to the forward motion or resolution of the music. Remember that each scale degree contributes its own unique quality. Remember also that although this experience can be difficult to verbalize and discuss at times, our ears make these fine distinctions repeatedly and automatically.

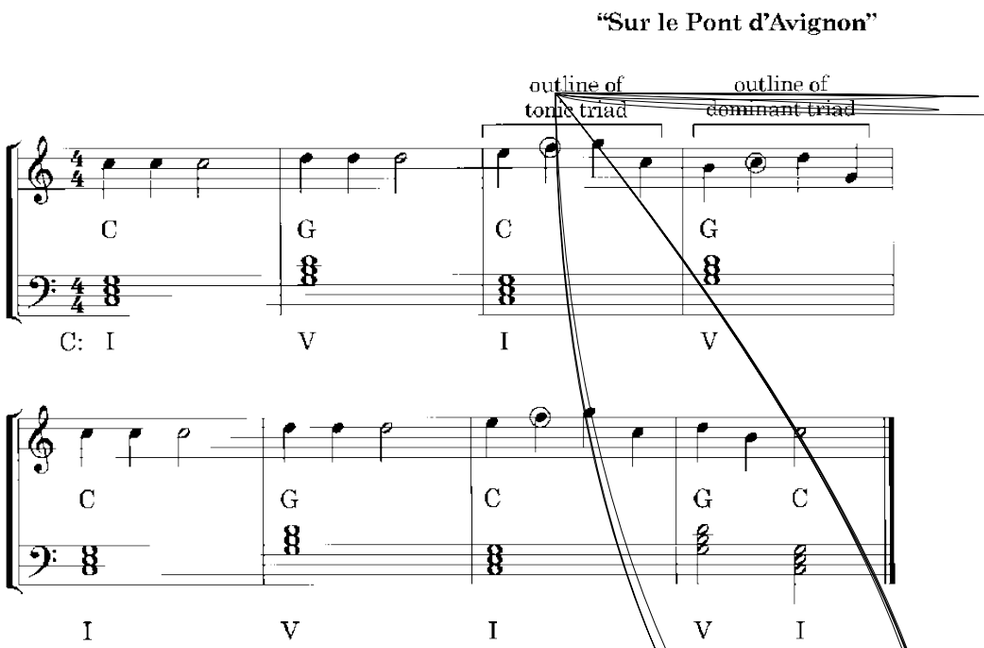
1. "The Simpsons" TV show theme ____
2. "Titanic" theme ____
3. "South Park" TV show theme ____
4. "Star Wars" theme ____
5. "2001" theme ____
6. "Moon River" ____

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 263

Beyond the tension and release inherent in the movement of all tonal melodies, a sense of forward motion and resolution also exists in tonal harmony. Nowhere is this more evident than in the simplest of chord progressions—the dominant to tonic relationship. This relationship (the dominant triad moving to the tonic triad) is without doubt the most frequently used progression in tonal music. This is true because of the strong gravitational attraction established between V and I. This relationship is so strong that these two triads, by themselves, can clearly establish the tonal center, or key, of a work.

To understand this, it is important to consider the dominant triad for a moment. It includes not only the fifth degree of the scale, but also the leading tone and the supertonic. Remember from our discussion of tendency tones that these are all active scale degrees that, to our ears, seem to need resolution. Remember also from our work with triads that a fourth pitch (a minor seventh above the root) is often added to the dominant triad to make it sound even more active. Therefore, both the dominant triad and the dominant seventh chord, then, are active sounds, full of ten sion. However, all of this tension is released, or resolved when the dominant triad (or dominant seventh chord) moves to the tonic triad, the point of rest in tonal music. This movement between tension and resolution gives the harmony and the melody a feeling of forward motion and a sense of centering within the key.

In the following example, a French folk song, notice that the entire melody can be accompanied by only tonic and dominant harmonies.



Notice also that both the melody and the harmony parallel each other. That is, when the triad changes, the melody also moves primarily to pitches that make up the triad (measures 3 and 4, for example). This movement between tonic and dominant in both the melody and the harmony, along with the tension and resolution that are generated, are fundamental to the establishment of tonality and are the basis for all harmonic movement in tonal music, no matter how complicated.

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 264

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Hearing V to I

Ask someone in class to play or sing the melody of the previous example while you sing the root of each tonic or dominant triad. Can you feel the tension of the V chord resolve to the I?

Now try the opposite, with you singing the melody while someone else plays the I and V triads on the piano. Can you feel how the melody and harmony support each other?

Remember that this is a simple example with only one level of ten sion: the dominant triad. More complicated pieces of music will have many more subtle levels of tension, made possible by the availability of other chords (made with other scale degrees).

Cadences

Perhaps the most important thing to remember at this point is that chords do not move around randomly throughout a piece of music. Instead, they are arranged into phrases, following the outline of the melody, in much the same way that a para graph of prose consists of several sentences, each made up of a complete thought. Furthermore, each phrase of the melody and harmony seems to come to its own point of rest, in the same way that sentences end with a period. And like a sentence, which can also end with a question mark or an exclamation point, these points of rest, or cadences, can vary in their strength and feeling of completeness. Understanding this concept of the cadence as a musical stopping point and identi fying the types of cadences that most frequently occur are our next steps toward understanding tonality.

Regardless of the various types of cadences you may encounter in a piece of music (there are more than the four we will look at here), remember that cadences only appear at the ends of phrases. Every phrase of tonal music ends with a cadence. Therefore, in order to recognize cadences, first we must be able to recog nize musical phrases. But even though every song is different, recognizing phrases isn't as difficult as it might seem at first. In fact, if you have sung or played through the examples in this book, you are probably already familiar with the concept of phrases in music. As you continue, just keep in mind that musical phrases are like sentences that make up a paragraph of prose. In the same way that the sentences of a paragraph relate to each other, the phrases of a melody combine to create a larger entity. And once you can see the phrases, the cadences at the end of each one will become clear.

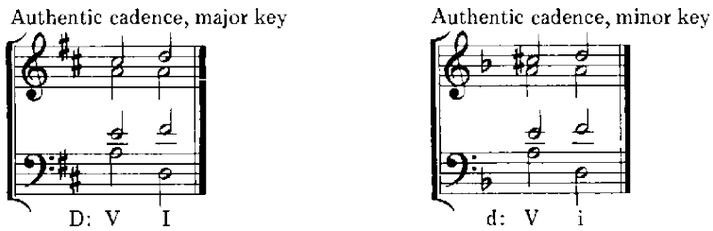
A **cadence** is a momentary or permanent point of rest. Cadences occur both within a composition and at its conclusion; those in the middle of a piece are always at the ends of musical phrases. Often new musicians believe that V to I creates a cadence every time it occurs. This is not true. Cadences occur only at the ends of phrases.

Cadences can occur in both the harmony and the rhythm of a composition (though we will not go into rhythmic cadences here). The **harmonic cadence** con sists of two chords. There are four types of harmonic cadences that occur most fre quently in tonal music: the authentic cadence, the plagal cadence, the half cadence, and the deceptive cadence. Each cadence is a different formula of two chords, so each cadence can be heard as a different level of tension and resolution.

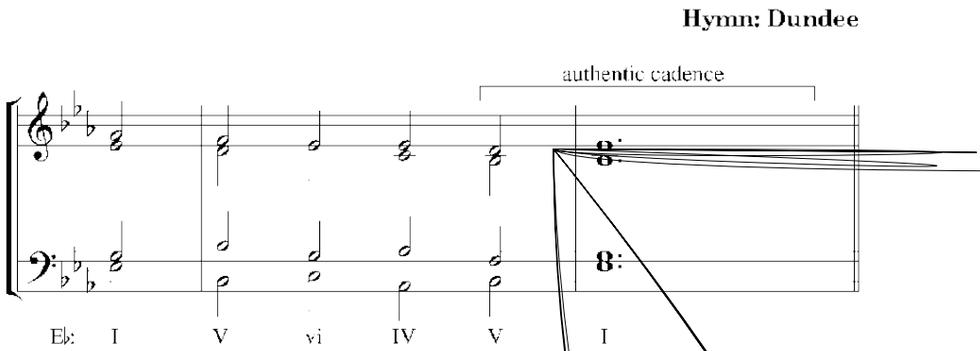
Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 265

The Authentic Cadence

The authentic cadence in a major key is the chord pattern V–I; in a minor key it is the chord pattern V–i.



What makes a cadence work? A cadence gives the impression of stopping musically because of the interaction of the melody, the harmony, and the rhythm. Notice that while the chord pattern V–I can occur many times, as in the previous example, "Sur le Pont d'Avignon," not all occurrences create a cadence. Notice in the following examples how the melody, harmony, and rhythm work together to produce a strong feeling of conclusion. The authentic cadence gives the strongest sense of conclusion of all the cadential patterns.

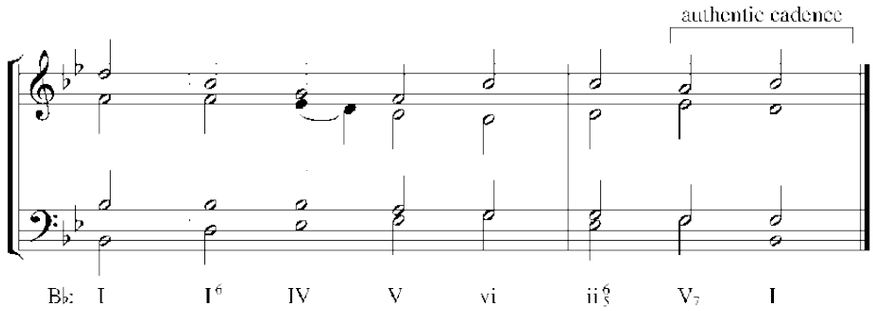


The authentic cadence is considered the strongest cadence because the sense of resolution—from the tension of the dominant triad to the restful nature of the tonic triad—feels most complete. This sense of resolution can seem even stronger if the tension of the dominant triad is increased. As we learned in the previous chapter, this can be accomplished by using the dominant seventh chord. The additional note, located a minor seventh above the root, adds extra tension to the dominant sound which, in turn, is released with a stronger feeling of completeness when it moves to the tonic. Although dominant seventh chords can be used anywhere within a chord progression that seems appropriate, their most frequent use over the past three hundred years has been in the authentic cadence. Play and listen to the following two examples of authentic cadences that use the dominant seventh chords. Compare these examples to the previous one that used the dominant triad. Notice that the tension/release qualities of the cadence seem heightened when the dominant seventh chord appears.

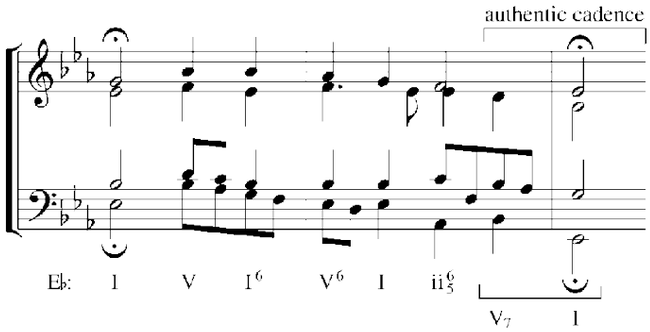
Pay particular attention to the sound of the authentic cadence and try to remember it. If you are successful, you will begin to notice how frequently it occurs in the music you hear around you every day. The authentic cadence is the most frequently used cadence in rock, jazz, country, and classical music. You can hear it everywhere if you remember what to listen for.

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 266

Hymn: Winchester New



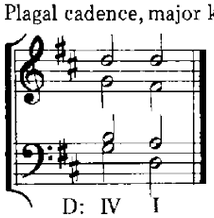
Bach: Chorale, "Herr, ich denk' an jene Zeit"



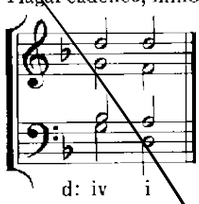
The Plagal Cadence

The plagal cadence is the chord progression IV–I in major or iv–i in minor.

Plagal cadence, major key

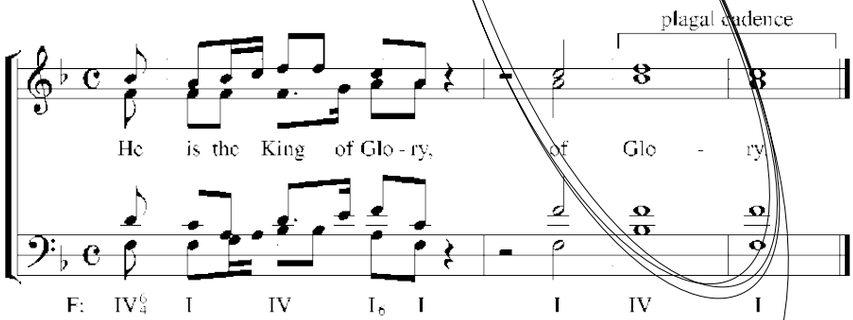


Plagal cadence, minor key



The plagal cadence is most familiar as the "Amen" ending of a hymn. This cadence, while also capable of producing a feeling of permanent rest, is not as strong as the authentic cadence. Consequently, it is used less frequently as the final cadence of a piece, except for in hymns, where it has become commonplace.

Handel: "Lift up Your Heads" from *Messiah*

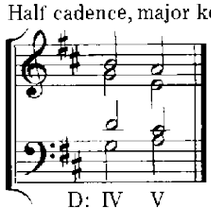


Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 267

The Half Cadence

The half cadence, or semi-cadence as it is sometimes called, conveys a feeling of stopping that is only temporary. The half cadence never functions as a true conclusion to a whole section or to an entire piece because the half cadence formula ends on a dominant chord (V). The V in a half cadence can be preceded by any chord, but in practice it is most often preceded by the I, IV, or ii in major and the i or the iv in minor.

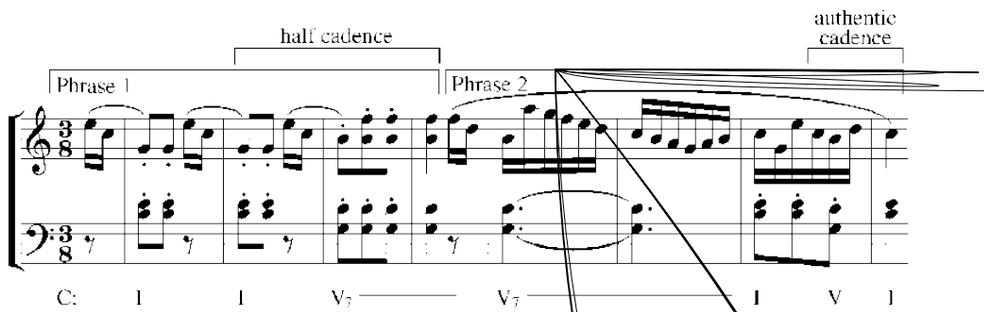
Half cadence, major key



Half cadence, minor key

The half cadence gives the impression of a pause, not a complete relaxation of tension. As such, it sounds best when it appears in the middle of a musical state ment rather than at its conclusion. The following example has two short phrases. Notice that the first phrase ends on a half cadence, while the second phrase ends on an authentic cadence. This is the most common two-phrase sequence of cadences in tonal music. So remember, more often than not, the first phrase ends on a half cadence; the second phrase answers with an authentic cadence. This information will help you when you try to harmonize a melody in the next chapter.

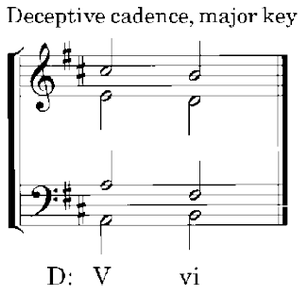
Kuhlau: Sonatina in C Major, Op. 55, No. 1, II



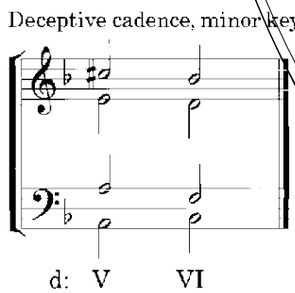
The Deceptive Cadence

The deceptive cadence, in its most common form, sounds at first as if it is going to be an authentic cadence. That is, the first chord of both the authentic and the decep tive cadence is a V or V_7, and our ear expects the final triad will be the tonic. Although this is true for the authentic cadence, it is not what happens in the deceptive cadence. Instead, the V or V_7 goes to an unexpected place, usually the vi, although other triads are possible. The result is that our ear has been deceived momentarily.

Deceptive cadence, major key

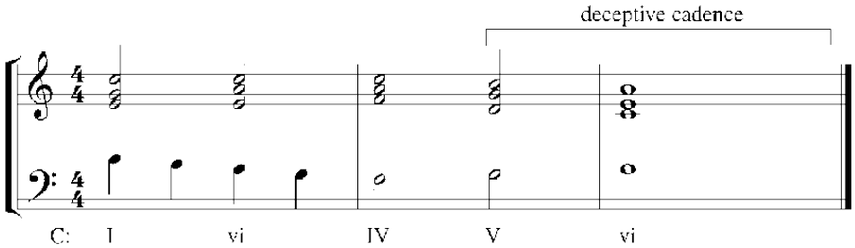


Deceptive cadence, minor key



Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 268

Ask someone to play the following example on the piano, first as written, then a second time substituting the tonic triad for the submediant triad in the cadence.



Notice that the authentic cadence created by the substitution of the I chord for the vi chord works well in this situation. In fact, our ear is led to expect it. This momentary deception of our ear allows the deceptive cadence to function as an unexpected point of repose. It cannot, however, function as the final cadence of a piece of music because the purpose of the final cadence is to bring everything to an obvious conclusion.

MUSIC IN THEORY

Hearing Cadences

The following excerpts contain examples of the cadences we have studied in this chapter. Listen to each excerpt several times and identify by ear where the cadences occur. Then analyze each cadence as to type, first by ear, then with the music.

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 269

MUSIC IN
T và ÉÇ

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 270

MUSIC IN

Anon., L'omnipotent from "Genevan Psalter"

Simple Chord Progressions

Exactly how do chord progressions function? As musical phrases move through various levels of tension and release, the alternation between activity and restfulness gives a feeling of move ment to the music. This musical motion is supported by the melody, harmony, and rhythm; the interrelation of these three elements allows the V–I progression, for instance, to function as a cadence at the end but not in the middle, of a phrase. Harmony contributes to a feeling of motion through the variety of chords (and their level of tension) available. To some extent, every triad is active and tension producing, or passive and restful.

This alternation between harmonic tension and release can be heard in almost any exam ple of tonal music. Pieces that use a large range of harmonic possibilities, however, are usually rather complicated and difficult; they are appropriate for more advanced theoretical study. Our discussion here will be limited to the concept of tension and release as it occurs in simple chord progressions.

Two-Chord Progression

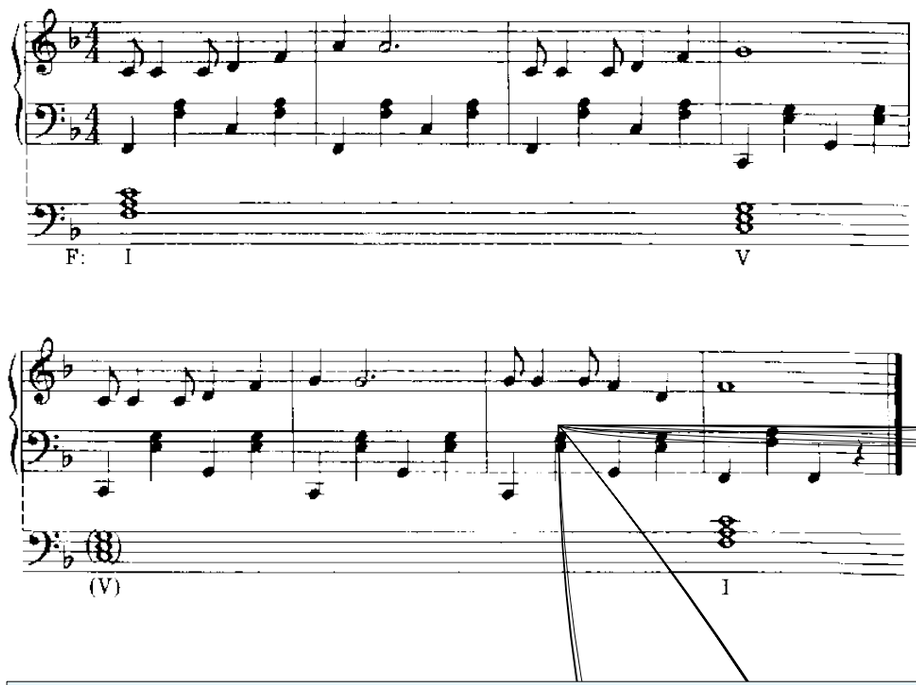
The simplest chord progression consists of only two chords. In the majority of cases, these are the tonic triad and the dominant triad. The tonic triad, which is actually the center of gravity for every tonal chord progression, is the most restful sound. The dominant triad, on the other hand, is the most active sound. Therefore, a chord progression that simply alternates between the

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 271

tonic and the dominant possesses a great deal of potential for musical tension and release.

Most folk songs, because they are intended to be sung and played by people with little or no musical training, use relatively few chords. Take the following example, "Tom Dooley." It has only two chord changes for the entire song: I–V–I. Notice that although the chords change slowly, the broken-chord style of accompaniment in the bass supplies a continual feeling of motion. Listen to someone from your class play this piece and concentrate on the accompaniment rather than the melody. Can you feel the change in tension when the V chord appears in measure 4? Notice how this level of tension is maintained for four measures before it resolves back to the I chord. This difference in tension levels, and the harmonic motion between them, allows such a simple chord progression to work musically.

"Tom Dooley"



MUSIC IN T

Hearing Tonic and Dominant

The following melodies can be harmonized with only tonic and dominant chords. As a class, sing the melodies that you recognize several times and decide, by ear, which parts of the melody require tonic chords and which parts need dominant chords. If you play piano, you may wish to pick the melody out at the keyboard and to add tonic and dominant chords to accompany it.

1. "Down in the Valley"
2. "London Bridge"
3. "He's Got the Whole World in His Hands"
4. "Wayfaring Stranger"
5. "Don't Let the The Stars Get in Your Eyes"
6. "How Much Is That Doggie in the Window?"
7. "Jambalaya"
8. "O Tannenbaum"

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 272

Three-Chord Progression

When a third chord is introduced into a harmonic progression, it is often the subdominant chord. Remember that the plagal cadence (IV–I) is considered not as strong as the authentic cadence (V–I), because the tension created between IV and I is not as great as that between V and I. Similarly, the subdominant chord is also less tension producing than the dominant chord. Thus, in the three-chord progres sion I–IV–V, the IV chord stands intermediate in tension between the active V chord and the restful I chord.

The subdominant chord usually appears in one of two patterns: I–IV–V–I or I–IV–I–V–I. The following folk song has the I–IV–V–I progression.

"The Wabash Cannon Ball"

When used in this way, the subdominant chord contributes a first-level tension, which the dominant chord further increases to a second level. The harmonic tension is then resolved by the return to the tonic chord.

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 273

The next example of a three-chord progression uses the chord pattern I–IV–I–V–I.

Here the subdominant chord establishes a first level of tension, which is resolved by the return of the tonic chord. Then, a second level of tension is introduced by the dominant chord, which is also resolved by the return of the tonic. Sing this example in class, with half the class singing the melody and the other half singing the root of each chord. Do you notice the different kinds of tension produced between I–IV–I at the beginning of the progression and I–V–I in the second half of the progression?

MUSIC IN THE VALLEY

Accompaniments

The chord progressions for "The Wabash Cannon Ball" and "Michael, Row the Boat Ashore" are written in the previous examples as block chords in the bass clef in order to make them easier to see. In performance, how ever, they would never be played exactly this way. Ask someone in the class who plays piano and someone who plays guitar to perform one or both of these pieces, providing their own suitable accompaniment. As a class, discuss each accompaniment. What are the musical contributions of an accompaniment? Why don't the block chords written in the examples make a suitable accompaniment?

12-Bar Blues Progression

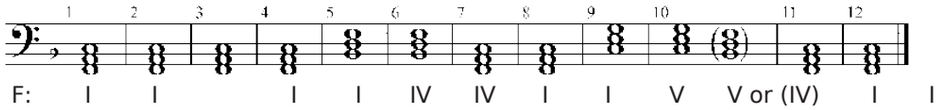
In the same way that the 12-bar blues is based on its own unique scale, it is also built around its own chord progression. In fact, this chord progression, which uses only the I, IV, and V chords, is so universally known that it may well be the most recognized chord progression in history. And although there can be variations on

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 274

the blues progression, as there can be with the blues scale, the basic 12-bar blues harmonic progression has remained constant for almost a century.

Here is the 12-bar blues progression in the key of F major.

12-bar blues progression



Play it or listen to it played, first with just the root of each triad, then with the entire chord. Even though an untold number of different melodies have been played over this progression during the past hundred years, the harmonic progression itself has remained more or less constant. The one significant alteration to the pro gression came from rhythm and blues, which substituted the IV chord for the V chord in measure 10 (as indicated above). Today, you can hear the blues performed both with and without this alteration.

MUSIC IN T àlEÇ

Hearing the Blues Progression

Listen to several recordings of the 12-bar blues by blues singers such as Bessie Smith, John Lee Hooker, Buddy Guy, and Robert Cray. (Not every song with the word “blues” in the title uses a real 12-bar blues progres sion, but many songs by these artists do.) Try to remember the progres sion so that you can recognize it in other songs. Keep in mind that even though the melody will change from song to song, the chord progression will remain the same. Once you have learned it, you know it.

Then, listen to several examples of early rock ’n’ roll by artists such as Chuck Berry, Jerry Lee Lewis, Little Richard, and Bill Haley. Many of their songs are based on 12-bar blues progressions. Can you hear the blues progressions in these pieces? As a class, discuss how various styles of music can sound so different from each other if they all use the same chord progression.

As you listened to the blues progression, did you notice that it seems to group itself into three phrases, each one four measures long?

Phrase 1:	I	I	I	I
Phrase 2:	IV	IV	I	I
Phrase 3:	V	V	I	I

This division into three phrases is supported by the lyrics. We will explore this further in the next chapter.

Notice also that each four-measure unit ends with a tonic triad (a point of rest), while the start of each four-measure unit begins with a dif ferent chord (various degrees of tension).

MUSIC IN T àlEÇ

Playing the Blues

Choose a partner from the class and try to create a 12-bar blues. If you both play instruments, one can play the bass line or the blues progression while the other tries to improvise above it using the blues scale studied in

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 275

MUSIC IN THEORY AND EAR

Chapter 10. If you sing, choose a partner who plays an instrument. If the majority of the class doesn't play an instrument, your teacher may want the class to sing the blues progression while individuals improvise a melody over it. It works best to not think in terms of "right" and "wrong" when improvising, but rather that some improvisations will be more successful than others.

Focus

In this chapter we have begun the study of tonality, that is, how all the individual elements of tonal music work together and in various combinations to create actual music. From tendency tones we moved to the dominant/tonic relationship, and the idea that all melodies and all chord progressions move through varying levels of tension and release. It is from this duality of tension and release that a feeling of motion and a sense of tonal centering in music develops. Building further on the concept of dominant/tonic (tension/release), we explored the idea of harmonic cadences, that is, temporary and permanent points of rest. From there we looked at simple two-chord and three-chord progressions, ending with the 12-bar blues. Essentially, we have explored the essence of all harmonic progressions—the idea that music moves through varying degrees of tension (the progression) looking for resolution (the cadence). This quality of harmonic motion takes place not only in the song as a whole, but also within the individual phrases that make up the song. As you continue your work with chord progressions and tonal harmony you will encounter many new chords and longer, more complex progressions that create subtle harmonic shadings far beyond the diatonic chords and their progressions studied here. But no matter how complex the chord progressions may become, keep in mind that all tonal progressions have the same purpose and work the same way. The tension and release inherent in chord progressions and cadences becomes the expectation and fulfillment experienced in the actual music.

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 276

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 277

The following are short musical excerpts that use simple chord progressions. For the PracticePractice
most part these center around the tonic, subdominant, and dominant triads, although MaterialsMaterials
other diatonic triads may appear from time to time. When you have completed this chapter, analyze these excerpts. Begin by indicating the correct key in the space under the bass clef sign. Then label the chord progression with a roman numeral analysis beneath the example. Finally, bracket and label all cadences above the treble-clef line.

1. Teschner: Chorale

2. Anon: Chorale

3. Crüger: Chorale

4. Beethoven: Sonatina

Duckworth_Music9e_13.qxd 11/18/05 12:12 AM Page 278

5.

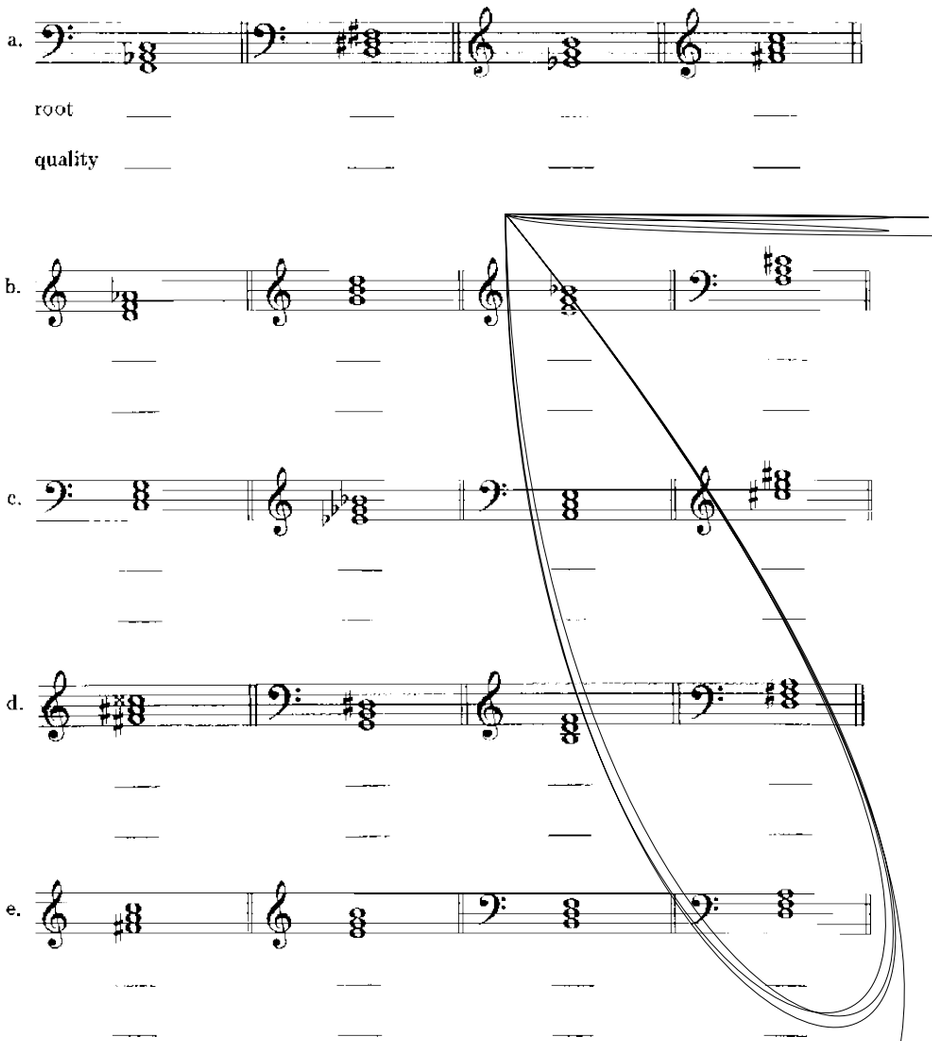
PRACTISE

Duckworth_Music9e_FV.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 279

FOCUS ON SKILLS H

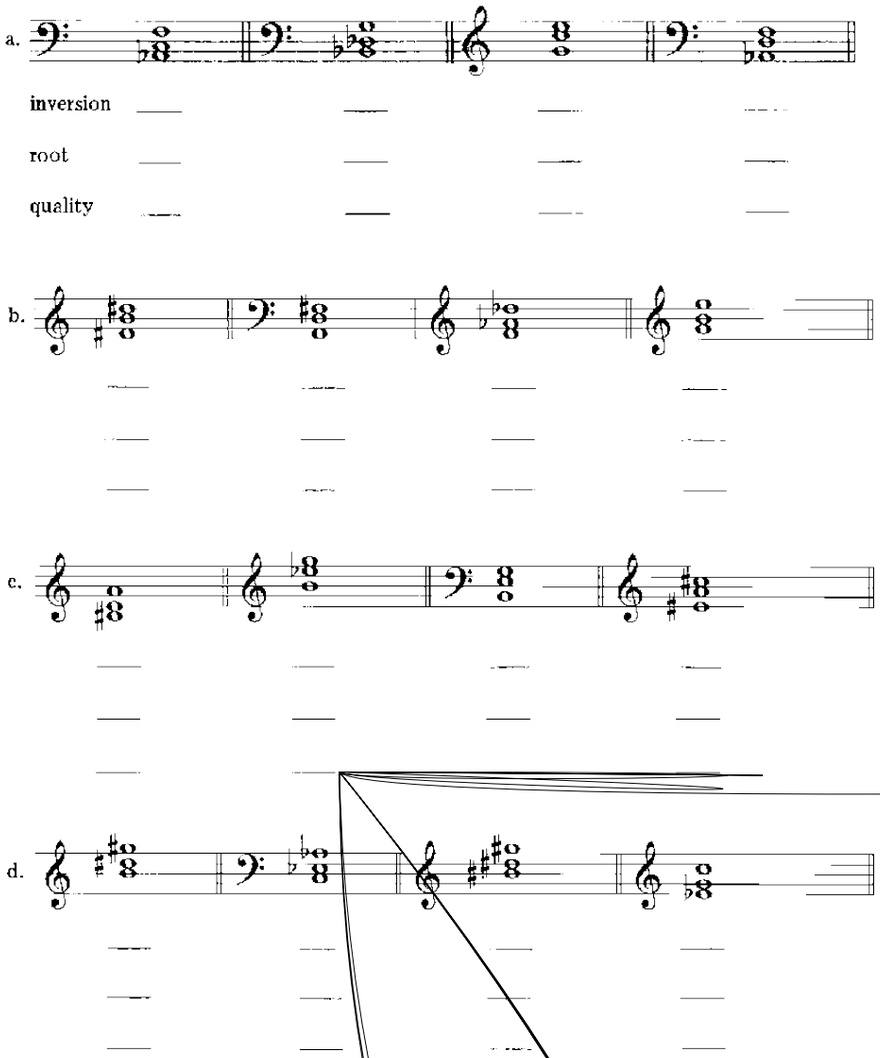
The following questions cover material presented in Chapters 11, 12, and 13. If you have difficulty with any of these questions, review the relevant sections.

1. Identify the root of each of the following triads, and label each as major (M), minor (m), augmented (A), or diminished (d) in quality.

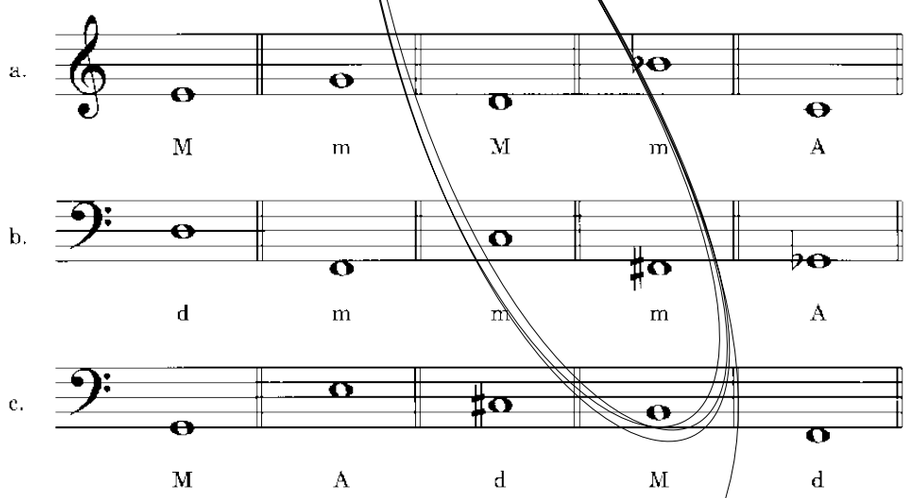


Duckworth_Music9e_FV.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 280

2. The following triads are in either first or second inversion. Identify the inversion, the root of the triad, and the quality.

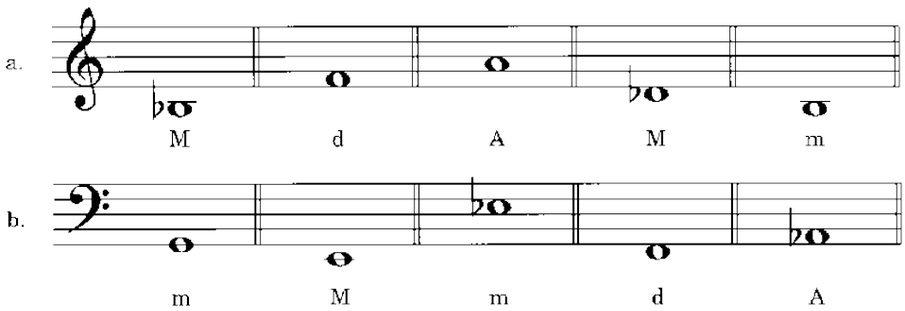


3. Write the following triads in close position.

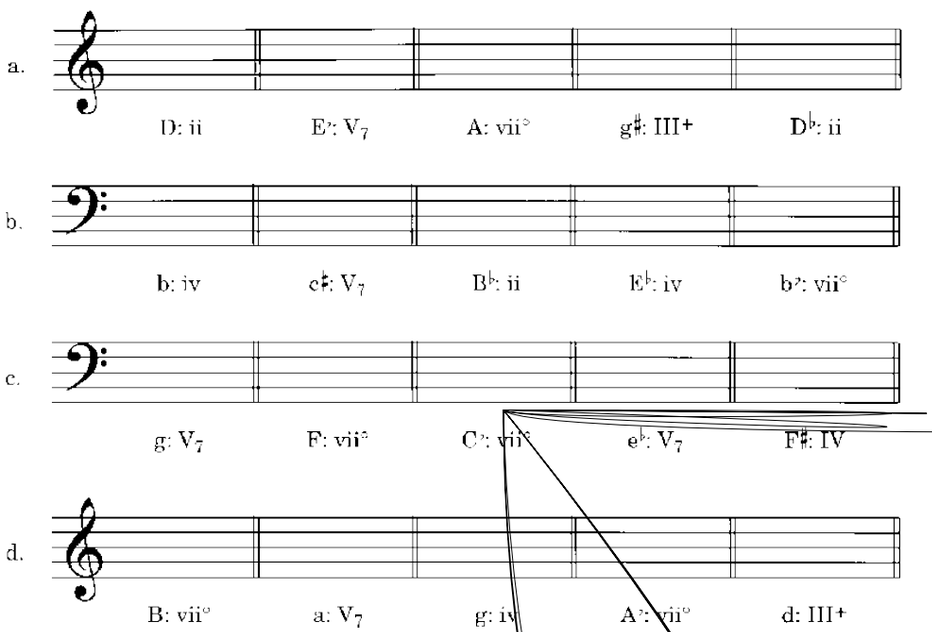


Duckworth_Music9e_FV.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 281

4. Write the following triads in open position.



5. Complete the following triads and dominant seventh chords in close position.



6. Analyze the chord progression of the following example by indicating the correct key, the roman numeral analysis, and the cadences.

Beethoven: Variations

Duckworth_Music9e_FV.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 282

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 283

CHAPTER FOURTEEN Writing a Song

If you think about it, a song is a complex work of art. For a song to be successful, its numerous parts must work together seamlessly. The melody, harmony, and rhythm all must complement each other. In addition, the song must unfold over time in both a logical and musically pleasing way. So learning to write a song involves learning to combine these components in complementary ways that are pleasing to the ear.

In this chapter we will continue our study of tonality by considering the broader musical concepts that are most useful in writing songs: primary and secondary chords, harmonizing a melody, and musical form. In the process, we will look at four musical forms, or blueprints for composing. Two of these, binary form and ternary form, are among the simplest forms used to create music; they have existed for hundreds of years. The other two, 12-bar blues and 32-bar song form, are musical forms used extensively today, particularly in popular music.

By the end of this chapter you should be able to write your own song—something many people would like to do, but are afraid to start. But if you have studied this book carefully (in particular this chapter), and have performed or listened to as many of its examples as possible, you have all the "facts" about music that you need. These facts, plus your own good musical judgment and intuition, are the starting point for all good song writers.

Primary and Secondary Chords

You may have noticed in the previous chapter how many different melodies were harmonized with only the I, IV, and V chords. This is possible because these three triads considered together contain all of the pitches of the scale. Consider, for example, these three triads in C major:

I	C	E	G
IV	F	A	C
V	G	B	D

If the pitches in these triads are arranged in ascending order—C–D–E–F–G–A–B—they spell out all the notes of the major scale (C Major) on which the triads are based. Because these three triads (I, IV, V) contain all the notes of the scale, they can be used to harmonize most tonal melodies, and they are known as the primary triads.

The other triads (ii, iii, vi, and vii°) are known as the secondary triads. Their function is adding color when harmonizing a melody. Whereas almost any diatonic melody can be harmonized with only the primary triads (a good place to begin with

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 284

any new melody), the secondary triads add much of the uniqueness and most of the color to the harmonization.

Harmonizing a Melody

The first step in harmonizing a melody is obvious—become familiar with it. Play it. Sing it. Listen to it. Try to locate the areas of tension and points of rest, to identify the musical phrases, and to decide where the cadences should go. Do as much of this by ear as possible; it's usually easier than looking at the written melody.

Let's begin with a melody that you may know, although you have probably never tried to harmonize it. It is by Stephen Foster, who lived between 1826 and 1864. Foster's contemporaries considered him the best songwriter America had ever pro duced. Today, some of his works have become America's folksongs. The melody we are going to harmonize, "Old Folks at Home," was written in 1851 and was Foster's most popular song during his lifetime.

Whether you know this melody or not, the first step in harmonization is always the same. Become familiar with the melody before going on.

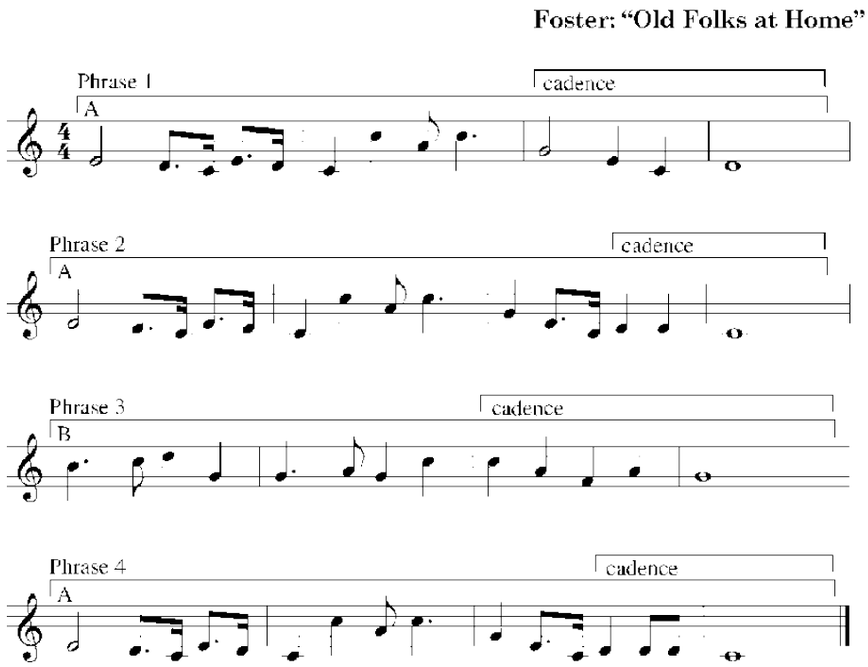
Foster: "Old Folks at Home"

Once you feel you know the melody well, the next step (after you're sure you know what key it is in) is deciding where the cadences should occur. Remember, cadences happen only at the ends of phrases. Remember, too, that if you don't plan your cadences first, chances are good that your harmony will wander aimlessly and contribute little to the buildup of tension and the subsequent cadential release. Plan your cadences well, however, and the chord progression will not seem haphaz ard. Keep in mind that different kinds of cadences produce different levels of final ity. And although the authentic cadence is the most final sounding of all the cadences, it should not be overused.

Our example, like many simple, diatonic melodies, is made up of four phrases, each of which is four measures long. Notice that the cadence points (measures four, eight, twelve, and sixteen) all contain whole notes, the longest note value of the melody. Another point to consider is that phrases one, two, and four of our example are similar in sound, whereas the third phrase is different. This creates an AABA

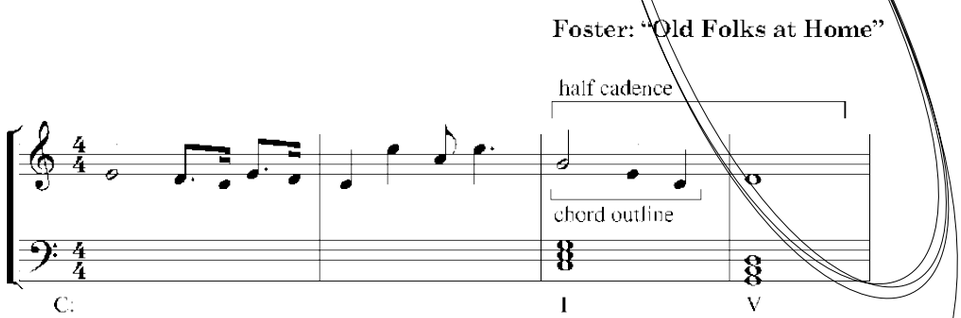
Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 285

format for the four phrases; we will need to take this into consideration when we harmonize it.



Choosing cadences may seem difficult at first, but after you have harmonized several melodies you will begin to see the same cadence patterns emerging in piece to piece. A good place to begin is to remember that when two phrases sound related, you can try ending the first phrase on a half cadence and the second phrase on an authentic or plagal cadence. This pattern is not always the best choice, but it appears frequently, and if it fits it will make the first phrase sound somewhat incomplete and allow the second phrase to finish the musical idea.

In our example, the first phrase could end on a half cadence (the D can be a part of the G major triad), and the second phrase on an authentic cadence. The same is true of phrases three and four, although this type of symmetry is not always the best choice musically. Because we know we most likely want the piece to end with an authentic cadence, the only one we are unsure of is the cadence at the end of the third phrase. This could be a half cadence or an authentic cadence, since the G in measure twelve can be a part of both the G major and C major triads. In this par ticular case, however, the F major triad in measure eleven will allow us to use a pla gal cadence, which will give us some variety and may be the best choice. Even though you should plan your cadences first, don't be concerned if you aren't certain which one to use at this stage. We know our possibilities for the third phrase of our example, and we can make a final decision after we fill in the other chords.



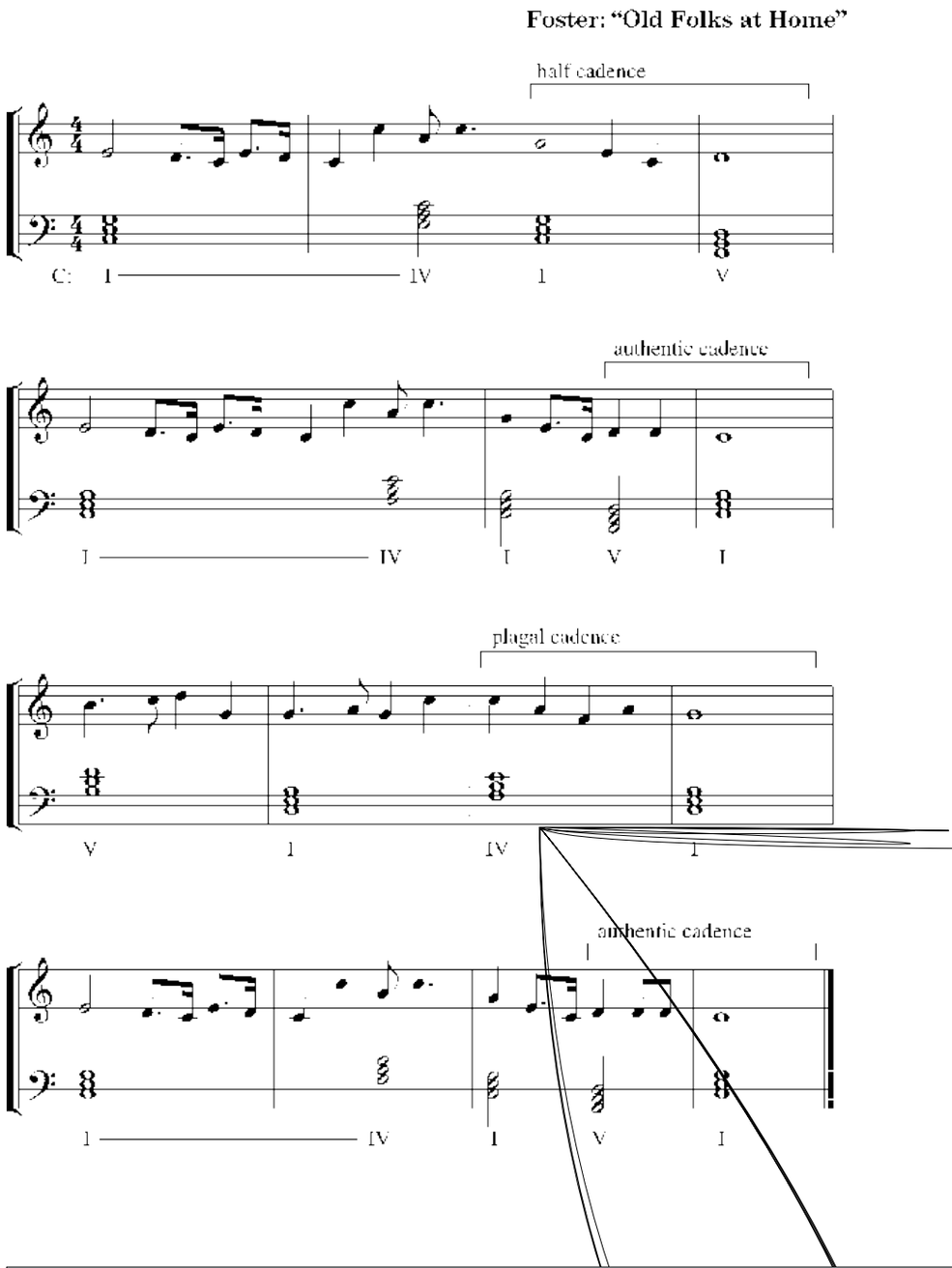
Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 286

The next step in harmonizing a melody is to be certain that you correctly understand the harmonic rhythm of the melody—that is, how fast the chords change. Some pieces have a rapid, steady harmonic rhythm with chord changes occurring almost every beat. Others change every two beats, or every measure, and sometimes less frequently. In the case of a piece with a slow, irregular harmonic rhythm, it is easy to make the chords change too rapidly, which is frustrating because it feels as if no chord is appropriate. In such a situation don't try to force a chord change where none is needed.

Once you have planned the cadences and understand the harmonic rhythm, you are ready to fill in the rest of the chords. Although a great number of melodies can be harmonized with only the I, IV, and V chords (and an even larger number if the vi chord is also included), many melodies seem to require additional chords. If you find yourself working with this type of melody, keep in mind that any pitch can be a part of and harmonized in three different chords; for example, in the key of C, G can be the root of the V chord, the third of the iii chord, or the fifth of the I chord. If you have difficulty harmonizing a particular pitch in a new melody, begin by exploring these three diatonic possibilities.

Notice in the melody we are harmonizing that the harmonic rhythm changes about every measure. You can tell this by scanning the melody for chord outlines. Notice, for instance, that the melody spells a C major triad in measure 3, an F major triad in measure 11, and a G major triad in measure 9. Notice also in measures 7 and 15 that a C major triad is outlined in two beats, and the triad must change for beats three and four because D does not fit with the C major triad. Keep in mind also that chord changes will almost never occur in a perfectly symmetrical way. While this can seem a bit arbitrary and confusing at first, practice and your ear will help you choose correctly.

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 287



MUSIC IN THEORY

Harmonizing a Melody

Choose one or more of the following melodies to harmonize. Use only block chords in root position (as in the previous example), and don't worry at this point about creating a suitable accompaniment. Begin by listening to the melody, planning the cadences, and establishing the harmonic rhythm. As you work, keep in mind that there is no one absolutely correct harmonization for most melodies. Some chord progressions do, however, sound more interesting than others.

(continued)

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 288

MUSIC IN

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 289

MUSIC IN
T và ÉÇ

Musical Form

Musical form is concerned with how music unfolds in time. It represents the blue print of the composition, the road map that starts at the beginning of the piece and runs to its conclusion. Over the centuries, many different musical forms have been developed—some relatively simple, such as songs; others, more complex, such as symphonic movements, opera choruses, and string quartets. But regardless of the level of complexity, all musical form is an attempt to balance unity and variety as the music unfolds in time. For example, if all the phrases of a piece of music sound exactly the same, the piece will quickly lose our interest and grow dull to our ears, particularly with repeated hearings. If, on the other hand, each phrase is wildly dif ferent from the next, the piece will grow tiresome for the opposite reason, with too much variety and not enough repetition to allow the piece to hold together as a coherent musical statement in our minds.

Throughout the ages, certain musical shapes (or forms) have been developed and used so extensively that they have been given their own name. The sonata alle gro form of Classical music, the fugue of the Baroque period, and the theme and variations (in use from the Renaissance until today) are three such examples. Here, we will look at four such forms. Strophic, binary, and ternary forms are simple musical shapes that have been used by composers for hundreds of years, while the 32-bar song form, which can be traced back to the early 1800s (although it wasn't called that then) is perhaps the most-used musical shape for popular songs in all of the 20th century and up to today. As you study the forms, make sure that you play them or listen to them played so you will have the sound of the form in your mind. It is not enough to simply look at the pieces on paper.

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 290

Strophic Form (12-Bar Blues)

The simplest form in music is probably strophic form. Many, if not most folk songs exist in this form, that is, the song has a number of verses and each verse is sung to the exact same music. The surface of the song may, of course, change somewhat as the accompanying patterns or instruments change, but the melody, the harmony, and the rhythm stay the same, verse after verse. "Barbara Allen," "Erie Canal," and "Michael, Row the Boat Ashore" are examples of strophic songs that we have looked at. At this point, you may want to sing or play through several verses of a folk song that you know in order to get a sense of the form.

At first glance, the strophic form may appear to contain too much unity and not enough variety, since an outline of the form would be AAAA (assuming you sang four verses). In a way that's true; there is a lot of unity. This repetitive simplicity is a defining characteristic of strophic songs, particularly folk songs. But there is also another level of variety in strophic songs that occurs deeper inside the music within the phrases.

Consider for a moment the 12-bar blues, which is, after all, a strophic form in which both the melody and the harmonic progression repeat throughout the many verses. Inside this overall form, however, are three four-measure phrases that can be seen more clearly when we consider the lyrics. Here is the second verse from Bessie Smith's famous "Lost Your Head Blues" recorded in 1926:

Once ain't for always, and two ain't for twice.
Once ain't for always, and two ain't for twice.
When you get a good gal, you better treat her nice.

These lyrics, each line of which is sung to a four-measure section of the 12-bar blues progression, clearly show an AAB pattern that is also reflected in the harmonic pattern itself.

Lyrics:	A				A				B			
Progression:	I	I	I	I	IV	IV	I	I	V	V	I	I

Additionally, this three-part division of the 12-bar strophic form is, as you will remember from the previous chapter, supported by the tension-and-release harmony of the chord progression.

Binary Form (AB)

Binary form is a two-part form that explores the principle of contrast. Consider the following, which is a short "Dance" by Beethoven.

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 291

Notice that this piece is divided into two separate parts, each of which is repeated. This pattern creates a binary, or two-part, form consisting of an A section of eight measures (sixteen when repeated) followed by a contrasting B section, also of eight (sixteen) measures. An interesting point worth noting is that the harmonic rhythm of the B section moves faster than that of A. In the A section the harmonic rhythm generally moves at the rate of one chord every two measures. In the B section, there is a new chord every measure, sometimes two chords per measure.

Beethoven sustains the harmonic interest and achieves contrast by varying both the chord progression and the harmonic rhythm of the two sections. Section A is oriented around a tonic-dominant progression, while section B is tonic subdominant oriented. Also, the faster harmonic rhythm in section B further dif ferentiates the two sections, as does the introduction of chromatic pitches in the sec ond part. Finally, notice that Beethoven supports the contrast between the A section and the B section with the accompaniment. In section A for instance, where the harmonic rhythm moves slowly, Beethoven arpeggiates each chord to create momentum and provide constant forward motion. In the B section, where the har monic rhythm moves faster, he ends the arpeggiation and uses quarter-note chords to punctuate the continually moving melody.

Although this “Dance” is written entirely in the key of D major, many binary pieces change keys at the beginning of the B section. When this happens, the orig inal key will return by the end of the section so the piece can conclude in the same key in which it began.

Ternary Form (ABA)

Ternary form is a three-part form that explores the principle of contrast and rep etition. It can be described as statement, departure, and return. The following, a

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 292

"Waltz" by Schumann, is typical of many short instrumental and vocal works. Notice that this piece subdivides into three distinct sections:

A—measures 1–16
B—measures 17–28
repeat of A—measures 29–44.

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 293

The most important element of contrast in this example is the key change in the B section. Not all ternary pieces have so obvious a key change in the B section as this one, but almost all of them move to a temporary new pitch. In this example, both of the A sections are in the key of A minor, whereas the B section is in the key of F major.

Other elements create a contrast between the A and B sections. In the B section the dynamics change from forte to piano and a new rhythmic pattern is introduced in the melody. In addition, the melody itself changes from phrases of irregular length to regular four-bar phrases.

Notice that when the A section returns in measure 29, it is an exact repetition of measures 1–16. Sometimes, however, composers will ornament and elaborate the A melody when it returns. Also notice that throughout the piece, the left-hand accompaniment remains the typical oom-pah-pah pattern associated with waltzes. This has a unifying effect on the entire composition.

32-Bar Song Form (AABA)

The 32-bar song form is a four-part form that also explores the concept of contrast and repetition. It can be described as statement, restatement, departure, and return, and is diagrammed as AABA. Because each of the four sections is of equal length, each section is eight measures long.

"Meet the Flintstones" is an example of 32-bar song form. Begin your study of this piece by singing through it several times and familiarizing yourself with the AABA structure.

Notice in this example that the first A section (measures 1–8) is immediately repeated (measures 9–16). It is then followed by a contrasting B section (measures 17–24), which, in popular music, is sometimes referred to as the bridge. This is then followed by a return to the A section (measures 25–32).

Many popular songs follow the 32-bar song form, or AABA format. "Body and Soul," "Ain't Misbehaving," "Satin Doll," and "Frosty the Snowman" are four such

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 294

"Meet The Flintstones"

Meet the Flintstones, by Joseph Barbera, William Hanna, and Hoy Curtain. © 1960, 1962 Barbera-Hanna Music. Copyright Renewed. All Rights Reserved. Used by Permission Warner Brothers Publications U.S. INC., Miami, FL 33014.

examples from the mid 20th century. And even though the melody, the rhythm, and the chord progression are different for each of these songs, they all exhibit a similar characteristic—the A sections provide the unity and the bridge (or B section) pro vides the contrast. In addition to a change in the melody, this contrast in the bridge can include changes in the rhythm, the accompaniment, and often the key. And even though each piece sounds different, once you know what to listen for you will begin to recognize the AABA pattern in many of the songs you hear every day.

MUSIC IN TECHNOLOGY

Writing a Song

Write a song in 32-bar song form. You may wish to write a song with lyrics that the class can sing, or an instrumental piece that members of the class can play. Either way, keep in mind that each of the four sections (AABA) should be eight measures long, and end with a cadence (with, perhaps, another cadence in the fourth measure of each eight-measure section if you are using shorter phrases). Also, remember that the bridge of your song should be a contrasting section in which the melody, the harmony, and perhaps the rhythm and the key are altered to provide a contrast to the A sections that surround it. When you have finished, arrange for a perform ance of your song, perhaps at a concert on the last day of class.

Duckworth_Music9e_14.qxd 11/18/05 12:13 AM Page 295

Focus

Here we are at the end of this book. I hope you have discovered that the study of tonal music and how it works is a fascinating topic full of many surprises and intriguing concepts. And although we have spent most of our time exploring the var ious fundamental components that make up music, it is important always to keep in mind that these individual components go together in some mysterious way to create an art form that is rewarding, imaginative, and never-ending. In music, there is always something more to learn and experience. So as you go forward, keep in mind that this book has given you a good beginning but it is only that, a founda tion. If you are to continue to grow as a musician you must build on what you have learned here. The fundamentals of music don't change, but the ways composers have used them through the centuries have changed, and an understanding of musical style will be essential to your continued development.

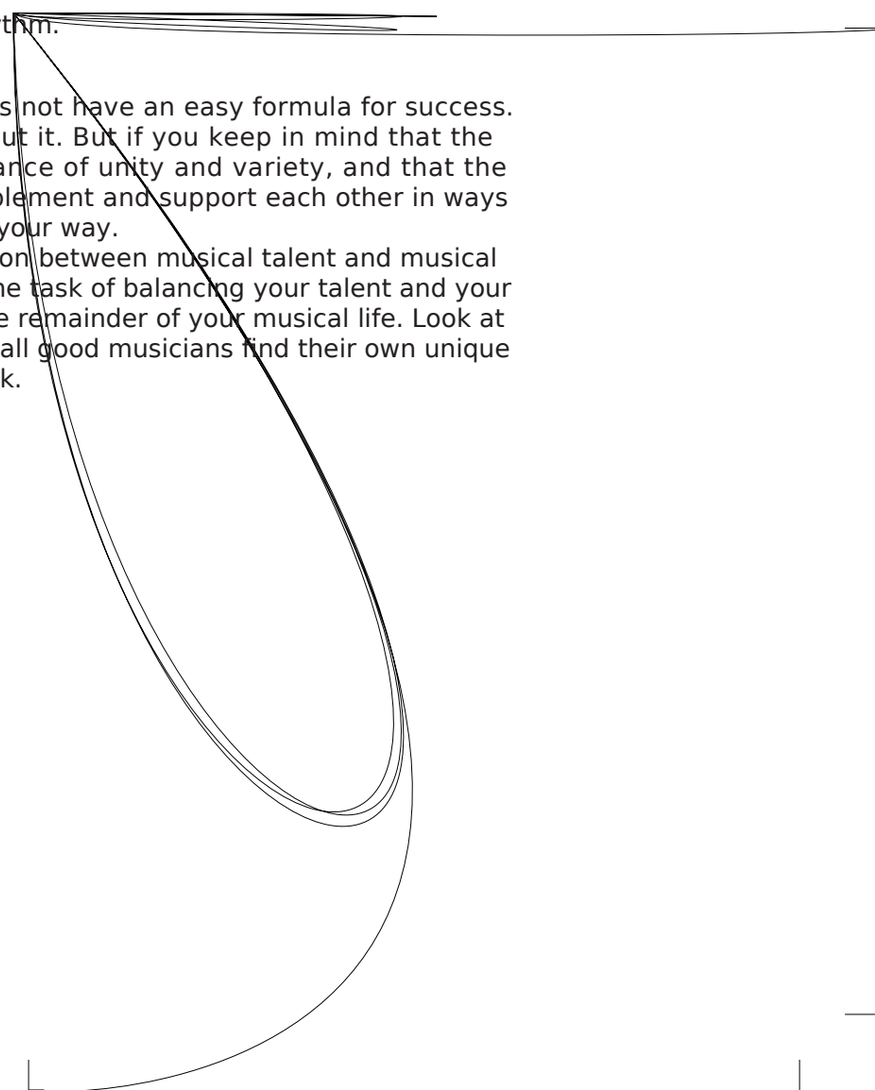
For some of you, the next step is a formal theory class; for others, it is inde pendent work and study. To be successful, however, all musicians must understand the material contained in these final chapters. Chord progressions are the essence of tonal music. Their significance cannot be overstated. If you understand the concept of the simple chord progression, it will be easier to handle the more complicated progressions you will encounter later on. And if you understand that all chord pro gressions (and their cadences) create varying levels of tension and release, then the chromatic patterns you encounter later will not seem so confusing or ambiguous.

All musicians should also be able to harmonize melodies. If you follow the steps we took earlier in this chapter, and practice, you should become successful at this. As you will recall, the steps are:

1. Become familiar with the melody.
2. Plan the cadences.
3. Become familiar with the harmonic rhythm.
4. Fill in the remaining chords.

Writing songs, on the other hand, does not have an easy formula for success. There are many different ways to go about it. But if you keep in mind that the phrases of your song must exhibit a balance of unity and variety, and that the melody, rhythm, and harmony must complement and support each other in ways illustrated in this chapter, you are well on your way.

This book began by drawing a distinction between musical talent and musical knowledge. Let me now remind you that the task of balancing your talent and your knowledge of music will be with you for the remainder of your musical life. Look at it as both a challenge and an opportunity; all good musicians find their own unique ways of maintaining the balance. Good luck.

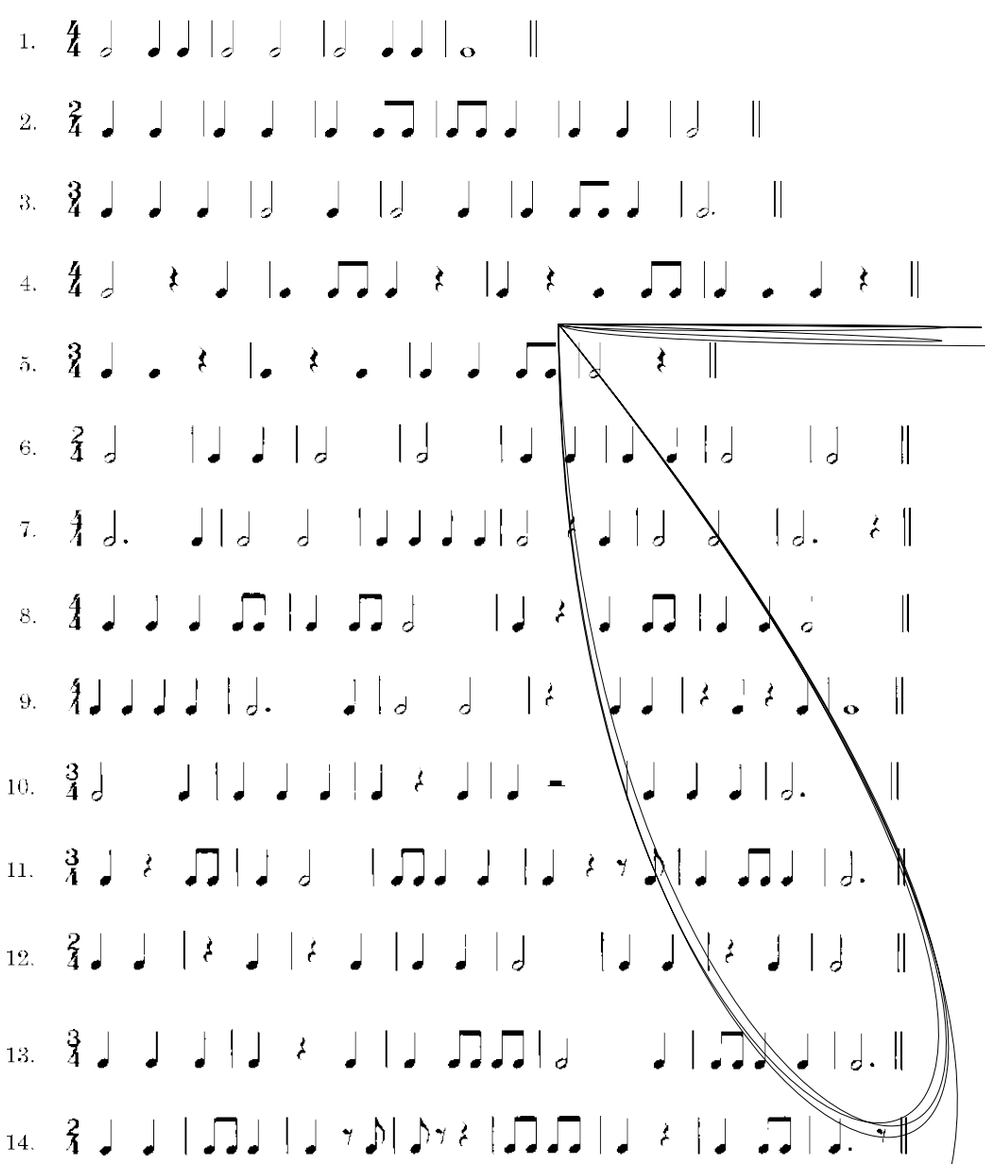


Duckworth_Music9e_App_A.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 297

APPENDIX A

Graded Rhythms for Counting and Performing

Simple Meters



Duckworth_Music9e_App_A.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 298

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

Compound Meters

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

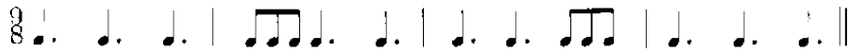
27.

28.

29.

30.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_A.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 299

31. 

32.

33.

34.

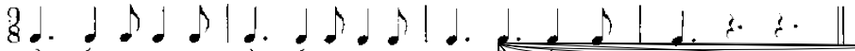
35.

36.

37.

38.

39.

40. 

41.

42.

43.

Less-Familiar Meters (Simple and Compound)

44.

45.

46.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_A.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 300

Duckworth_Music9e_App_A.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 301

64.

65.

66.

67.

68.

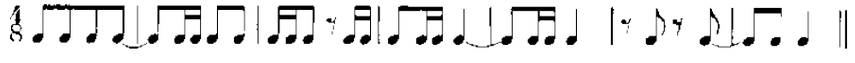
69.

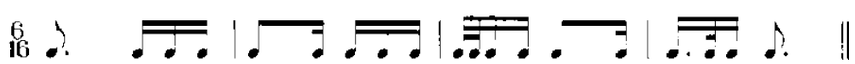
70.

71.

72.

73.

74. 

75. 

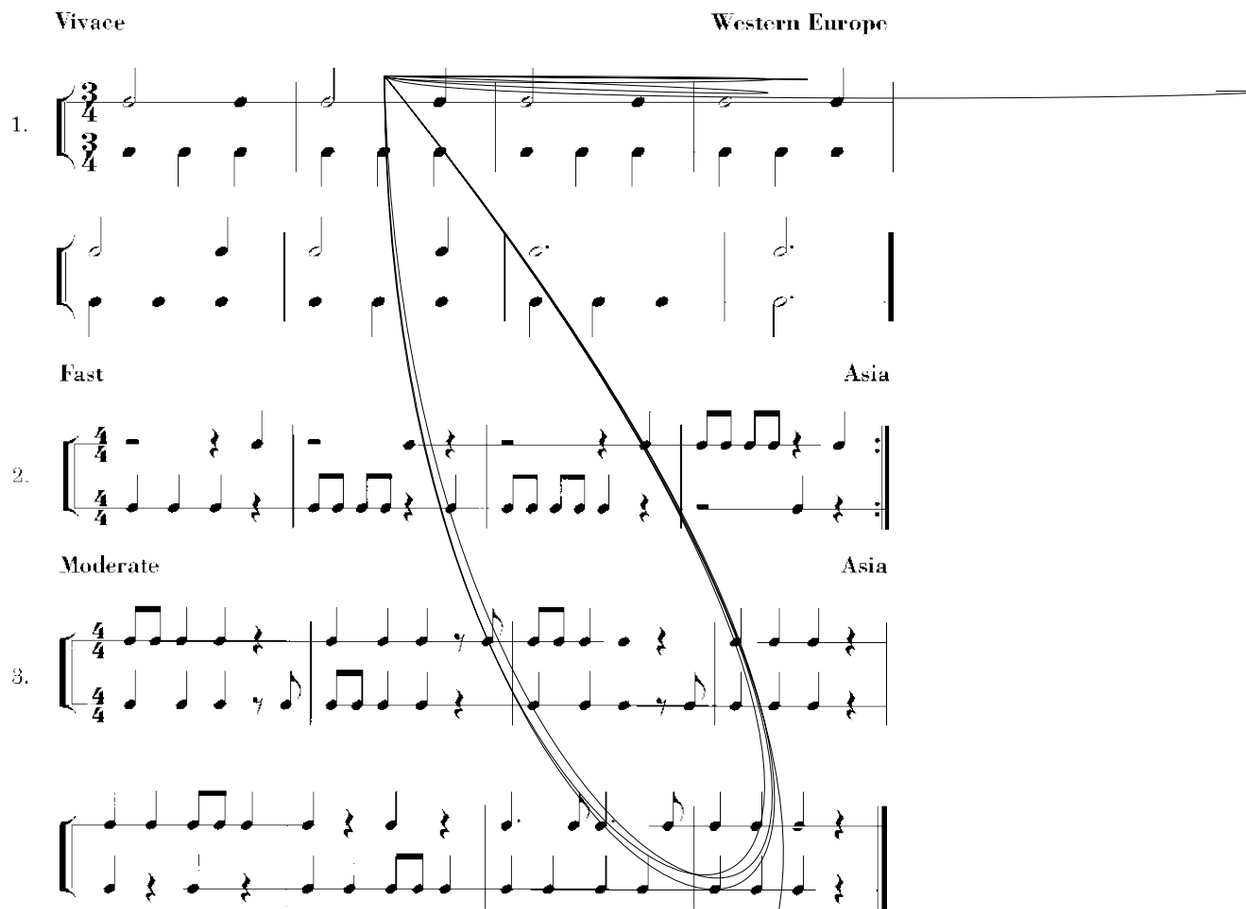
Duckworth_Music9e_App_B.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 302

APPENDIX B

Graded World Rhythms in Two and Three Parts

The following two- and three-part rhythmic excerpts are adapted from a variety of musical styles and traditions throughout the world. They can be practiced with hand clapping or performed with "found" percussion instruments that students bring to class. Notice that many of the three-part patterns can be repeated a number of times. In these cases, adding or subtracting a voice on each repetition will increase the musical interest.

Two-Part Rhythms



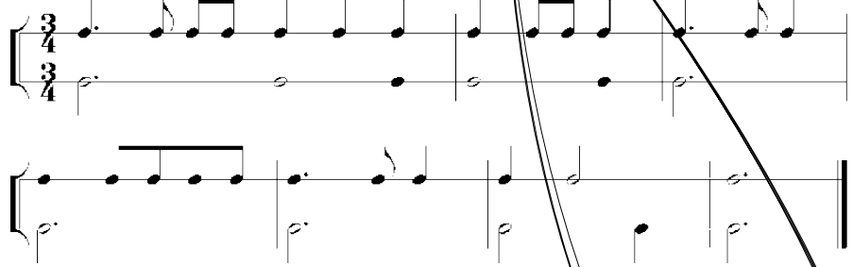
Duckworth_Music9e_App_B.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 303

4. Moderate — Western Europe

5. Slowly — Asia

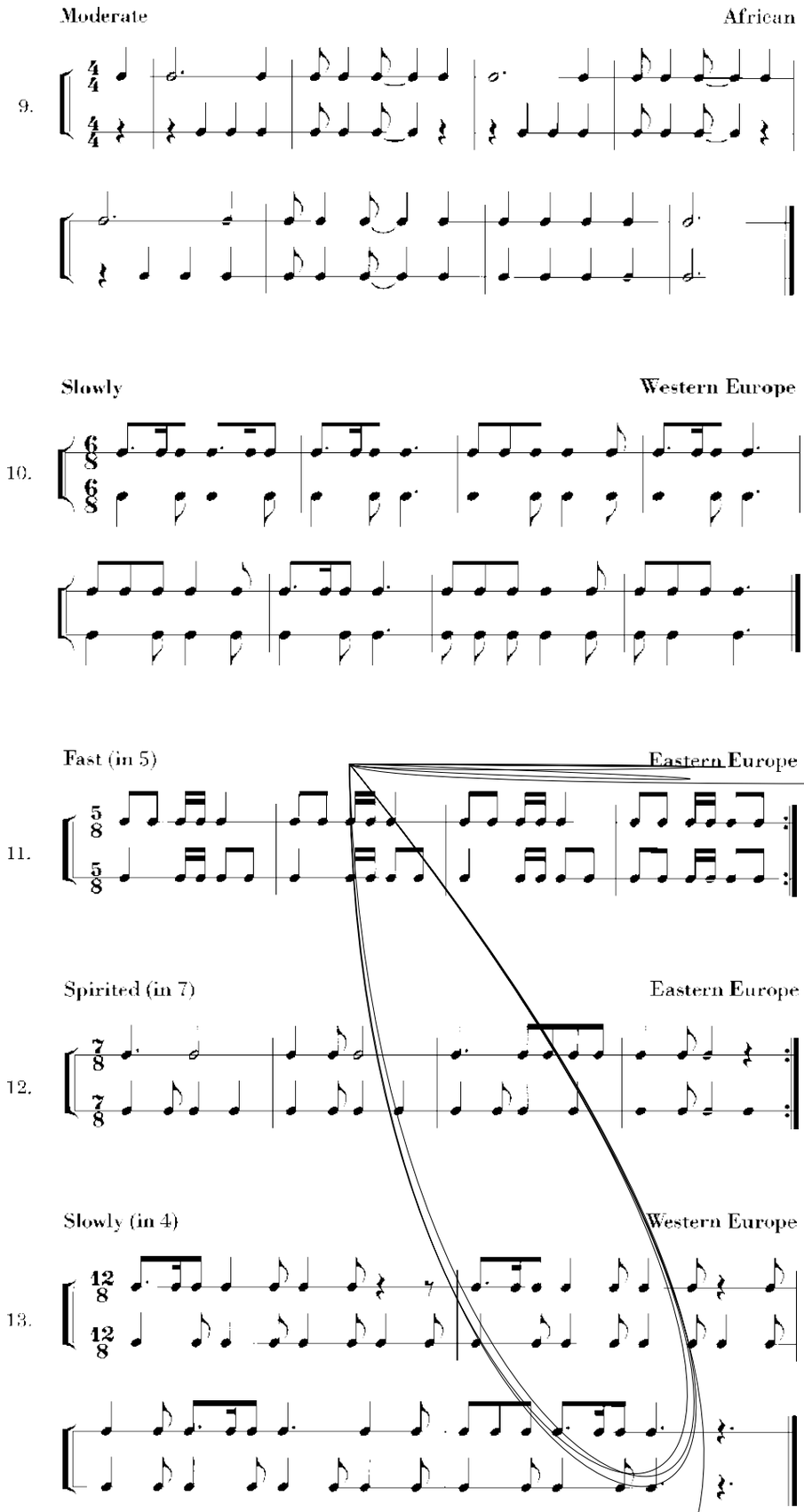
6. Fast — Western Europe

7. Moderate — Western Europe



8. Moderate — Western Europe

Duckworth_Music9e_App_B.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 304



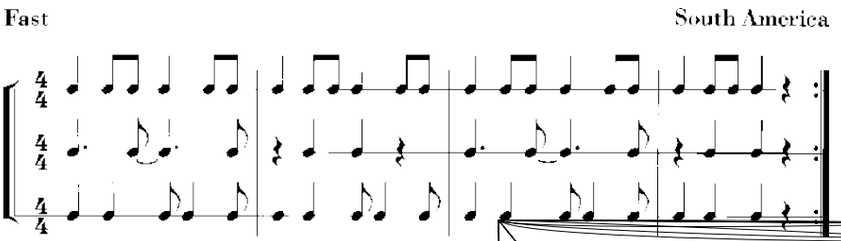
Duckworth_Music9e_App_B.qxd 11/18/05 12:56 AM Page 305

14.

Three-Part Rhythms

15.

16.



17.

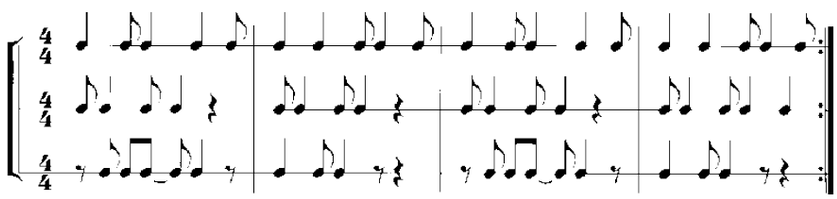
Duckworth_Music9e_App_B.qxd 11/18/05 12:57 AM Page 306

Slowly — Western Europe

18.

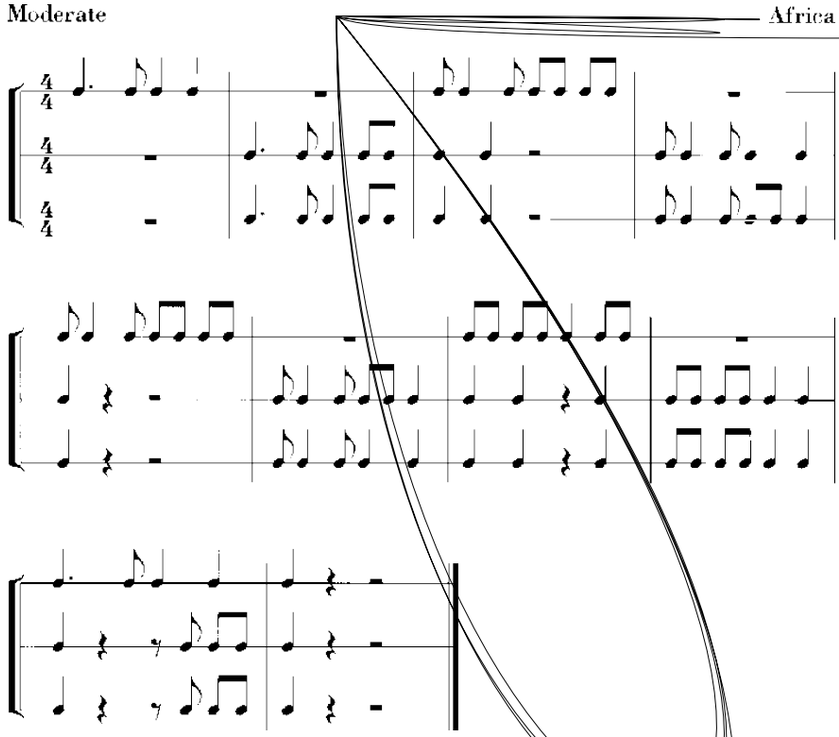
Moderate — South America

19.



Moderate — Africa

20.



Duckworth_Music9e_App_C.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 307

APPENDIX C

Syllables for Sight-Singing Scales and Modes

Chromatic scale—ascending

1. do di re ri mi fa fi sol si la li ti do

Chromatic scale—descending

2. do ti te la le sol se fa mi me re ra do

Major scale

3. do re mi fa sol la ti do

Natural minor scale

4. do re me fa sol le te do

Harmonic minor scale

5. do re me fa sol le ti do

Duckworth_Music9e_App_C.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 308

Melodic minor scale—ascending

6. do re me fa sol la ti do

Melodic minor scale—descending

7. do te le sol fa me re do

Dorian mode

8. do re me fa sol la te do

Phrygian mode

9. do ra me fa sol le te do

Lydian mode

10. do re mi fi sol la ti do

Mixolydian mode

11. do re mi fa sol la te do

Pentatonic scale (major)

12. do re mi sol la do

Pentatonic scale (minor)

13. do re me sol la do

Whole-tone scale

14. do re me fi si li do

Duckworth_Music9e_App_D.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 309

APPENDIX D

Graded Melodies for Sight-Singing and Playing

Major Keys

Duckworth_Music9e_App_D.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 310

Duckworth_Music9e_App_D.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 311

Duckworth_Music9e_App_D.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 312

Minor Keys

Duckworth_Music9e_App_D.qxd 11/18/05 12:58 AM Page 313

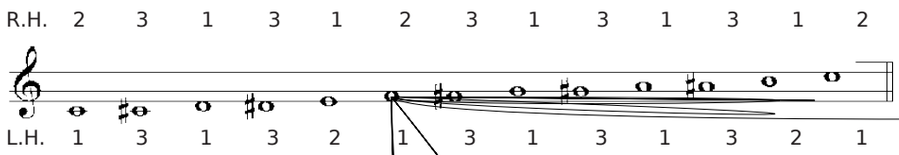
Duckworth_Music9e_App_E.qxd 11/18/05 12:59 AM Page 314

APPENDIX E

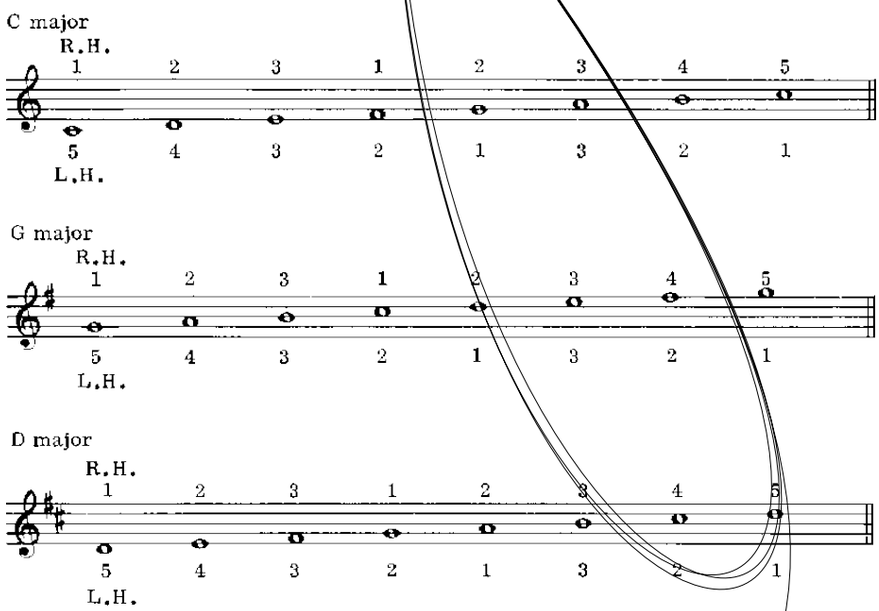
Chromatic Scale and Major Scale Fingerings for Keyboard Instruments

In the following staves, the top line of numbers gives the fingering for the right hand, the bottom line for the left hand. The numeral one, in either hand, always indicates the thumb.

Chromatic Scale

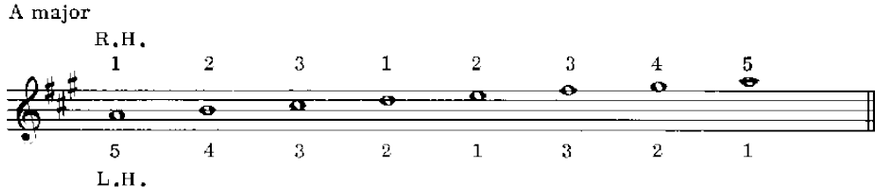


Major Scales

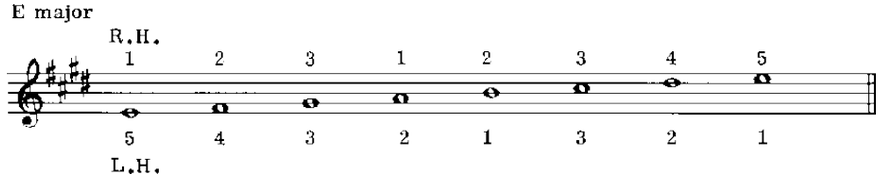


Duckworth_Music9e_App_E.qxd 11/18/05 12:59 AM Page 315

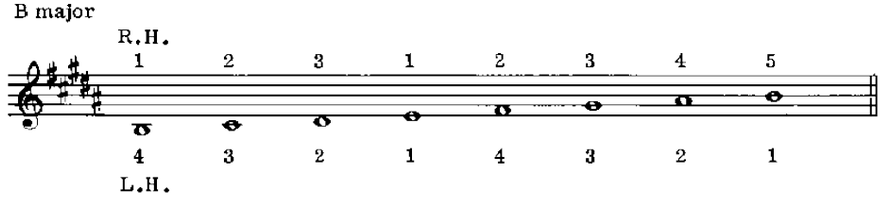
A major



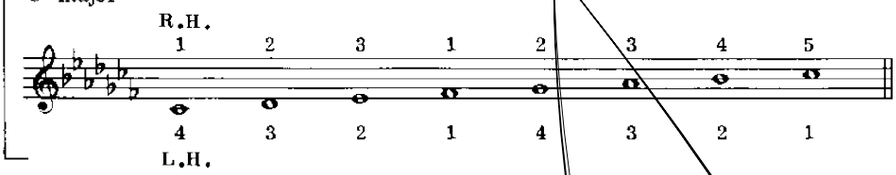
E major



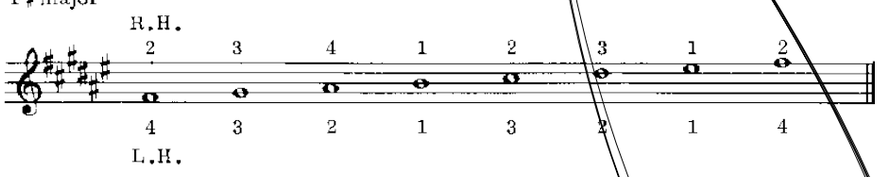
B major



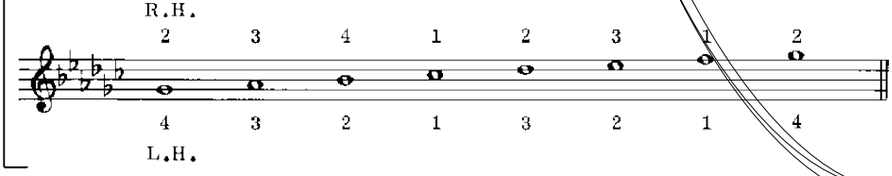
C♭ major



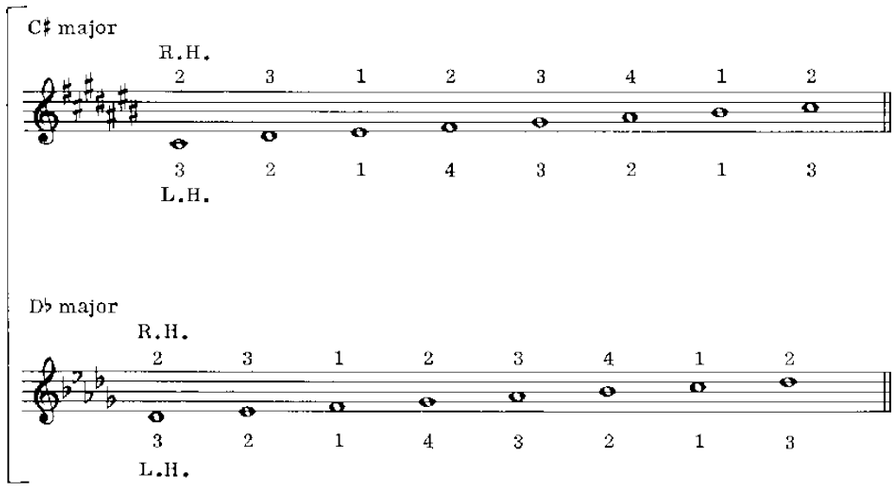
F♯ major

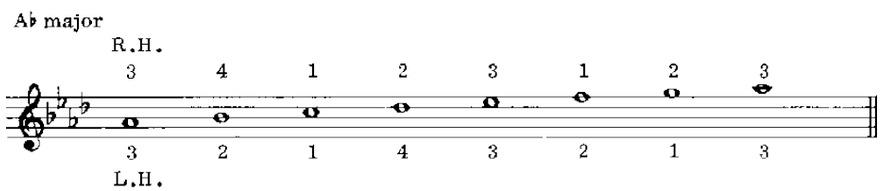


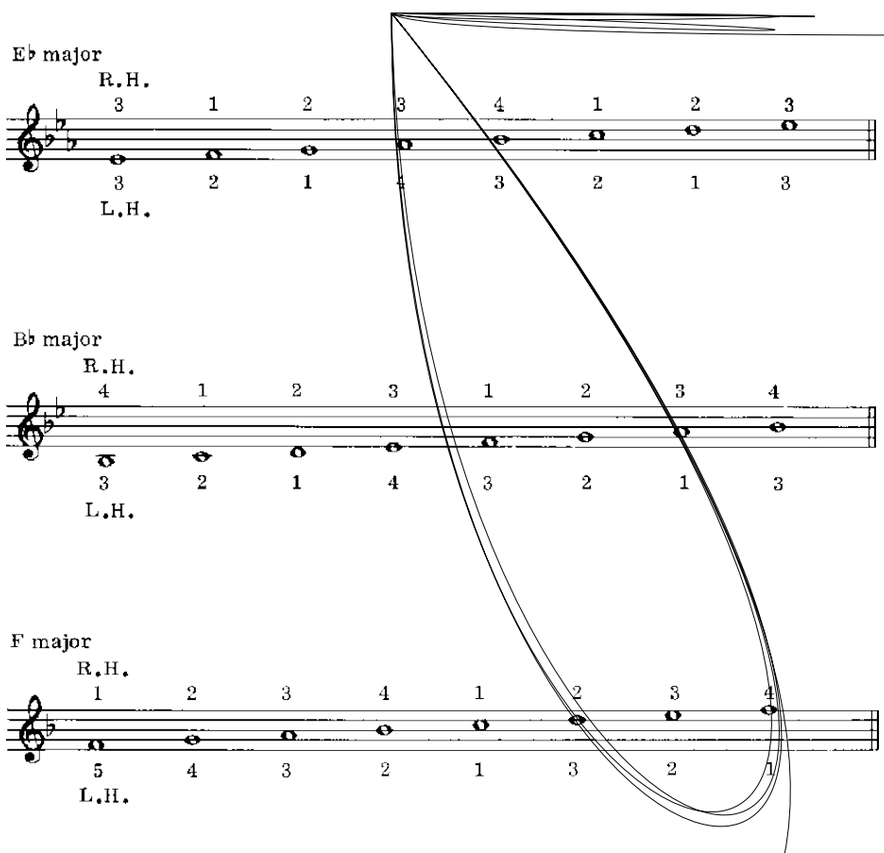
G♭ major



Duckworth_Music9e_App_E.qxd 11/18/05 12:59 AM Page 316







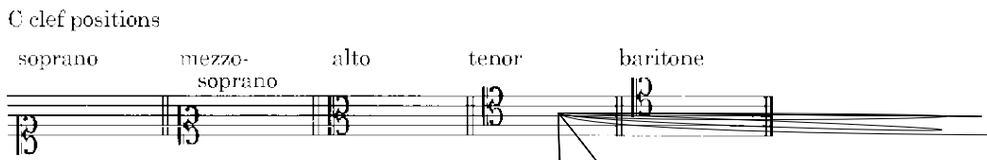
Duckworth_Music9e_App_F.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 317

APPENDIX F

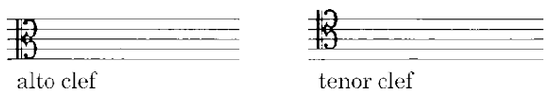
The C Clef

Although the treble clef and the bass clef are widely used, they are not the only clefs that appear in music. Several hundred years ago most music, both vocal and instru mental, was written in the C clef. Today, instruments of the modern orchestra such as the viola, cello, bassoon, and trombone use the C clef exclusively or frequently. It is also vital for the study of counterpoint. If you expect to study and perform early music, work with orchestral instruments, or continue your study of music theory, you will need to be able to read the C clef.

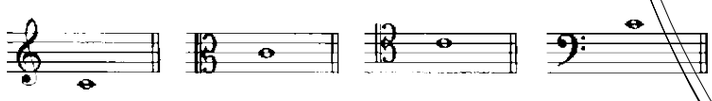
Unlike the treble or bass clef, the C clef does not always appear in the same location on the staff. It is movable and may be used on any line of the staff.



Today, however, it is most commonly found in one of two positions. When located on the third line of the staff, it is referred to as the alto clef; when located on the fourth line, it is known as the tenor clef.

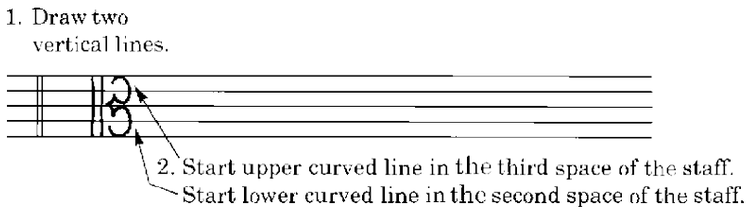


In all cases, whether in the alto, tenor, or some other position, the C clef identifies the location of the note C. Furthermore, this C is always middle C—the C in the middle of the great staff. In the following example, this same C is indicated in four different clefs:

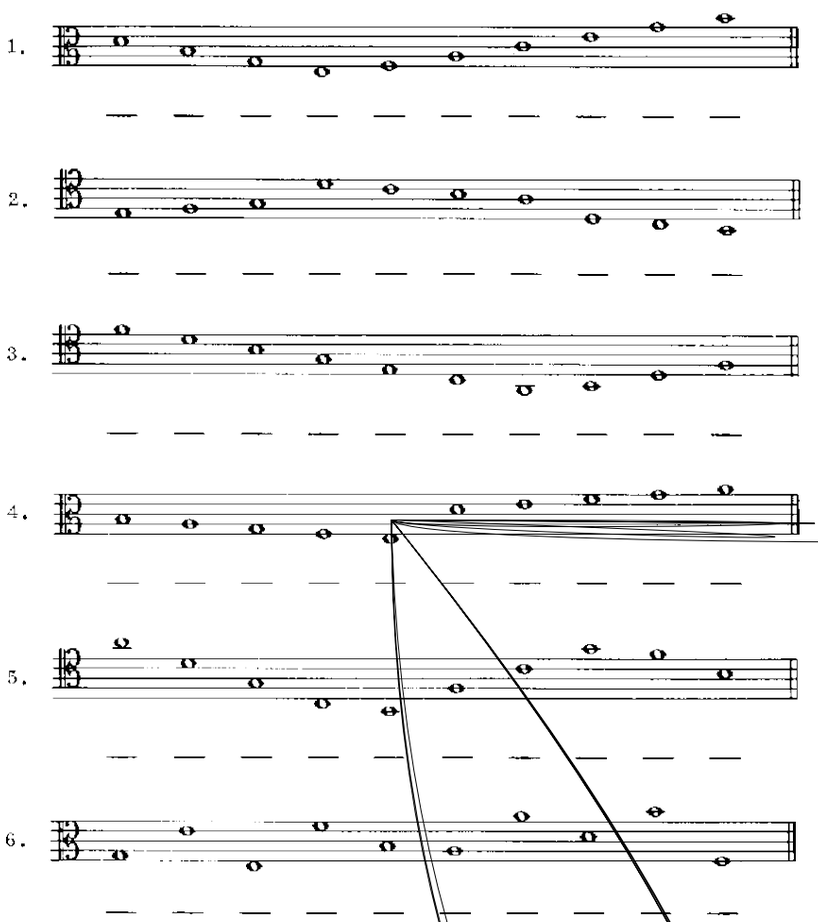


Practice drawing the C clef in the alto and tenor clef positions. Make the C clef by (1) drawing two parallel vertical lines as long as the depth of the staff and (2) draw ing two curved lines to the right of the vertical lines that meet the right-hand ver tical lines above and below the third or fourth line of the staff, depending on which position is being drawn.

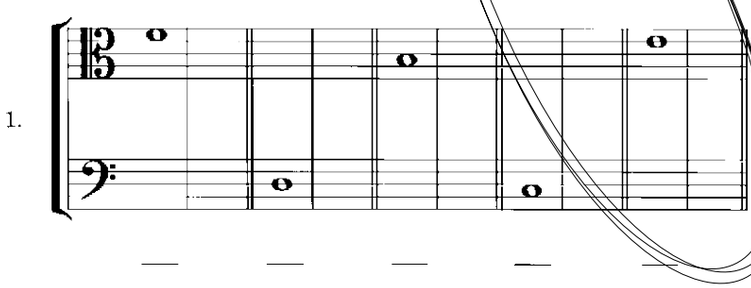
Duckworth_Music9e_App_F.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 318



Now identify by letter name the following pitches in the alto and tenor clefs. Remember that both alto and tenor clefs identify middle C.

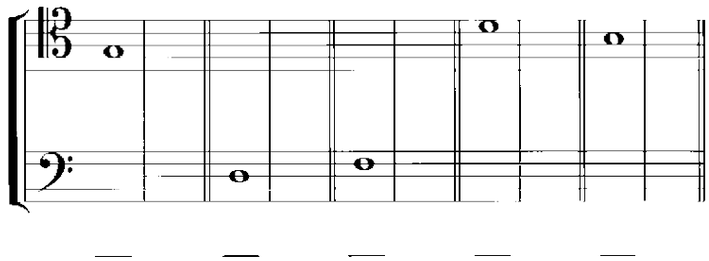


Now try the following: First identify the given pitch. Then rewrite the same pitch in the other clef.

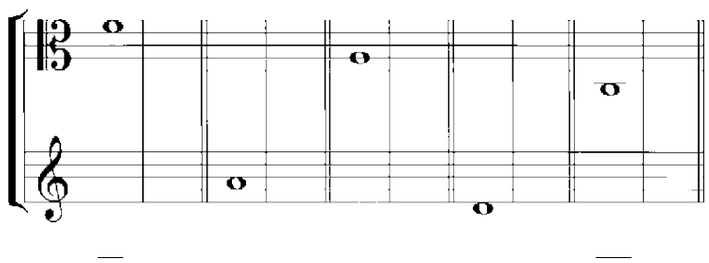


Duckworth_Music9e_App_F.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 319

2.



3.



The following musical example is the opening of the chorale “Ein’ Feste Burg” from Cantata No. 80 by Bach. Notice that in this excerpt the soprano, alto, and tenor voices all employ various positions of the C clef. The soprano voice uses a posi tion of the C clef known as the soprano clef, while the alto and tenor voices use the two positions you have been working with. Here the variety of positions in which the C clef appears is the result of the composer keeping all the voice parts on or near the staff.

Bach: “Ein’ Feste Burg” from Cantata No. 80

Following is a phrase from another Bach chorale, written in treble, alto, tenor, and bass clefs. In the space provided, rewrite the phrase in a single great staff, transferring the pitches from the alto and tenor clefs to the treble and bass clefs, as indicated. Be careful in your use of ledger lines. Your instructor or a member of the class can check your work by playing it on the piano.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_F.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 320

Bach: "Heut' Triumphieret Gottes Sohn"

Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 321

APPENDIX G

Other Scales and Modes

Modes

The modal system of the Middle Ages developed slowly over a period of several hun dred years. Although each mode is a seven-note scale contained within one octave, just as major and minor scales are, they all sound different from each other because the combination of whole steps and half steps is different for each mode.

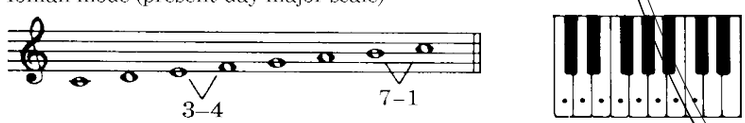
These modes, two of which are the present-day major and natural minor scales, were the basis of Western music from the Gregorian chant of the 900s until the tonal system began in the 1600s. They were revived in the twentieth century by composers around the world writing in a wide variety of styles. You are probably far more familiar with these scales than you think you are.

The modes are all seven-note scales based on patterns of five whole steps and two half steps. Each of the patterns has its own characteristic sound because the placement of the two half steps is different in each mode. Here is a chart showing where the half steps occur in each mode.

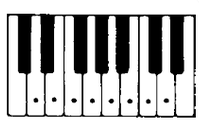
Ionian	3–4	7–8
Dorian	2–3	6–7
Phrygian	1–2	5–6
Lydian	4–5	7–8
Mixolydian	3–4	6–7
Aeolian	2–3	5–6
Locrian	1–2	4–5

Notice in the following that the half steps are always from E to F and B to C, but their position in the scale depends on which note is the beginning pitch:

Ionian mode (present-day major scale)

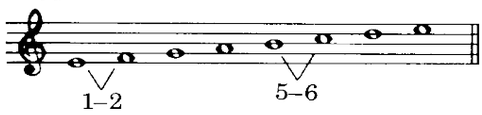


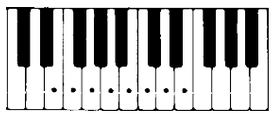
Dorian mode



Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 322

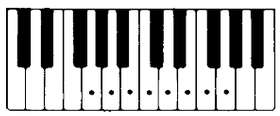
Phrygian mode



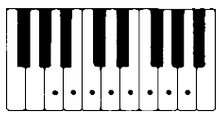


Lydian mode

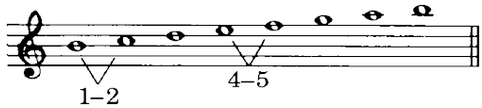
Mixolydian mode

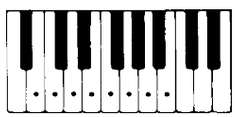


Aeolian mode (present-day natural minor scale)



Locrian mode





Medieval theorists divided the modes into authentic and plagal modes. Although a discussion of this concept is beyond the scope of this book, the distinction had to do with whether the finalis, or tonic as we would call it, was positioned at the beginning of the scale, that is, the first note, or in the middle. The modes we are studying are all authentic modes because the finalis is always the first note of the mode.

Transposing the Modes

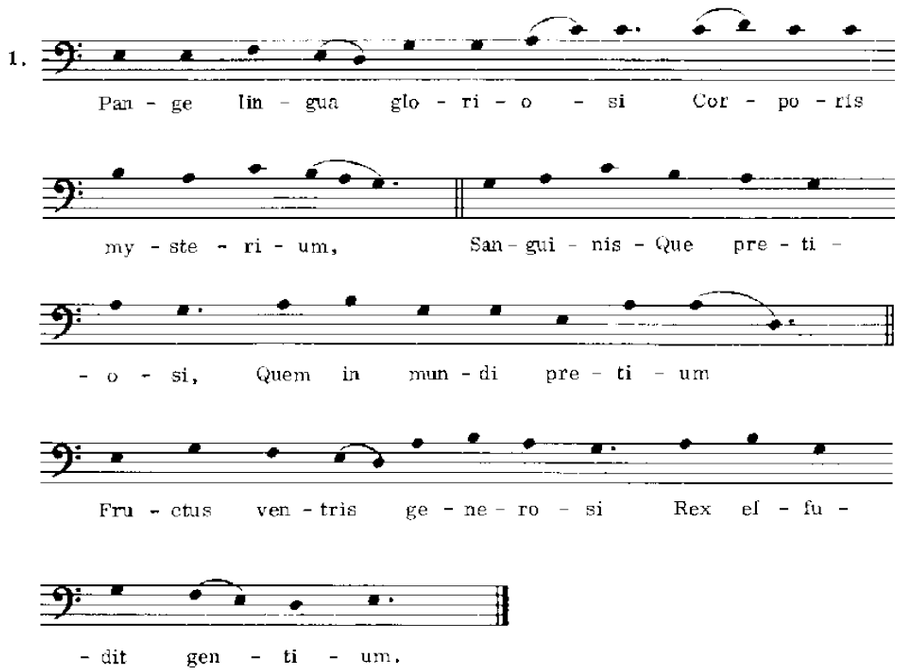
For a while, the modes were not transposed when they were used musically. That is, composers always used D as the finalis when they wrote in Dorian mode, E as the finalis for Phrygian mode, and so on. Gregorian chant, for example, only allowed the use of one accidental, the flat sign, and it was only used to alter one pitch: B. But slowly, composers began moving the modes to other beginning pitches, mostly to adjust singing ranges to more practical levels. The result has been that, in the music of today, each of the modes can appear with almost any note as the finalis.

If your teacher wants you to learn how to transpose the modes, you will find some material for practice in Appendix H. It may be sufficient at this point, however, to know that the modes exist in transposed form, and that their characteristic sound stays intact as long as their interval pattern stays the same, no matter what the beginning pitch.

Whether you are planning to learn to transpose the modes or not, look at the following selection of modal melodies that span ten centuries (the tenth to the twentieth). Those that use a key signature are transposed, but you should still be able to identify the finalis of each.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:00 AM Page 323

Gregorian Chant



"Henry Martin"

Chopin: Mazurka in F Major, Op. 68, No. 3

Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 324

"The Drunken Sailor"

4.

Chant: "Dies irae" as quoted in Berlioz: *Symphonie fantastique*

5.

"Old Joe Clark"

6.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 325

The Whole-Tone Scale

The whole-tone scale is a scale of six pitches per octave, each of them a whole step apart. Because this scale contains only one kind of interval—the whole step—it is extremely ambiguous and, like the chromatic scale, lacks the feeling of a center of gravity. Centers of gravity can be established in whole-tone and chromatic melodies, however, by such devices as repeating certain pitches more frequently than others, or repeating accent patterns or harmonic backgrounds. Another peculiarity of the whole-tone scale is that it does not contain the intervals of a perfect fourth or a per fect fifth. Because these intervals are considered essential to tonal music, their absence makes whole-tone music feel unsettled.

Only two versions of the whole-tone scale exist:

Any other whole-tone scale is simply a reordering of the pitches in one of these two versions. The lack of the half-step interval allows any note within these two scale forms to function equally well as a tonic.

Although there are a few isolated examples of the whole-tone scale in the clas sical literature, it is found most extensively in music of the early twentieth century. Because of the whole-tone scale's ambiguity and harmonic vagueness, composers such as Debussy employed it to weaken the hold of nineteenth-century tonal prac tices, which they felt dominated music. Today, music based solely on the whole-tone scale is seldom written except as background music for movies and television.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 326

The following examples show whole-tone music from the early twentieth century.

Debussy: *Prelude to "The Afternoon of a Faun"*

1.

Debussy: "Voiles," Preludes, Book I

2.

Debussy: *La Mer*

3.

The Octatonic Scale

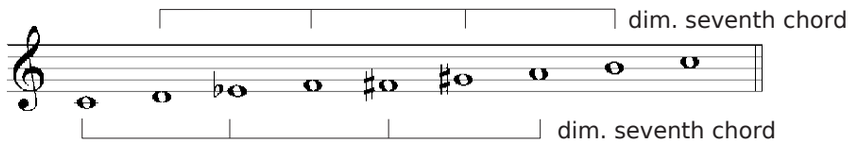
The octatonic scale is an eight-note scale (Greek octa means eight) that alternates between whole steps and half steps.

Octatonic scale

Duckworth_Music9e_App_G.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 327

The octatonic scale is an invention of the early twentieth century and is known as a “synthetic” scale (as is the whole-tone scale), because it was intentionally created rather than allowed to develop naturally over time (as did the major and minor scales, the pentatonic scales, and the modes).

Jazz musicians sometimes refer to the octatonic scale as a diminished scale because it is constructed from two diminished seventh chords and a diminished seventh chord can be built on every pitch of the scale.



In addition to the continued use of the octatonic scale by jazz musicians, they were used by a number of twentieth century composers such as Oliver Messiaen and Béla Bartók.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_H.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 328

APPENDIX H

Transposing the Modes

In transposing the modes, we will concentrate only on the authentic ones: Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, and Mixolydian. In these the finalis, or tonic, coincides with the first note of the scale. These four modes are easy to recognize when they occur on the white keys. But if transposed to another beginning pitch, as they often are today, recognition becomes more difficult. Let's begin our study with the following example.

"Scarborough Fair"

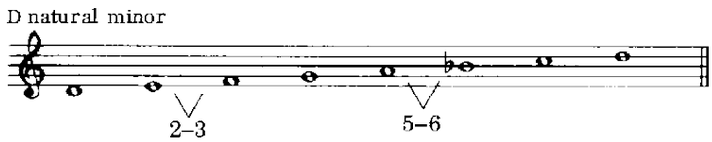
A hasty glance at this piece might lead you to believe that it is in A natural minor (the key signature and last note are clues). Notice, however, that the eighth measure contains an $F_{\sharp}$. If we begin on A (the beginning and ending pitch of the song) and construct a scale based on the pitches of the melody, we find that "Scarborough Fair" is, in fact, in Dorian mode:

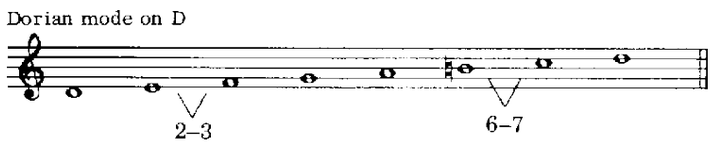
Duckworth_Music9e_App_H.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 329

One way of learning and recognizing the modes in their transpositions is to remember where the half steps are:

Mode	Half steps
Dorian	2–3, 6–7
Phrygian	1–2, 5–6
Lydian	4–5, 7–1
Mixolydian	3–4, 6–7

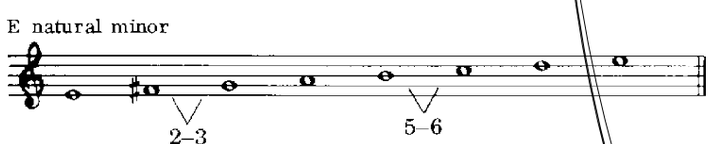
If it is still difficult to distinguish the modes, it may help to relate the modes to the major and minor scales, with which you are already familiar. Thus, Dorian mode is similar to the natural minor scale but with a raised sixth degree:

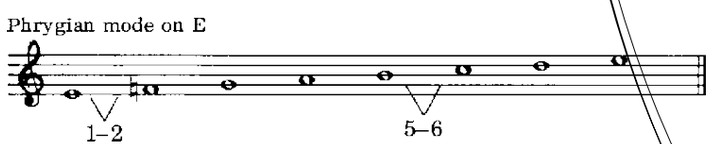




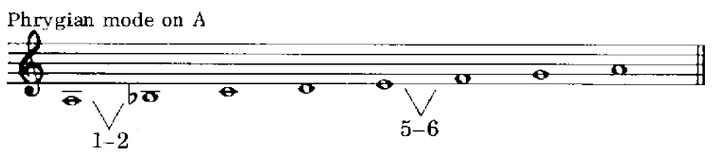
To write Dorian mode on A, we write the A natural minor scale but with a raised sixth degree:

Phrygian mode is similar to the natural minor scale but with a lowered second degree:



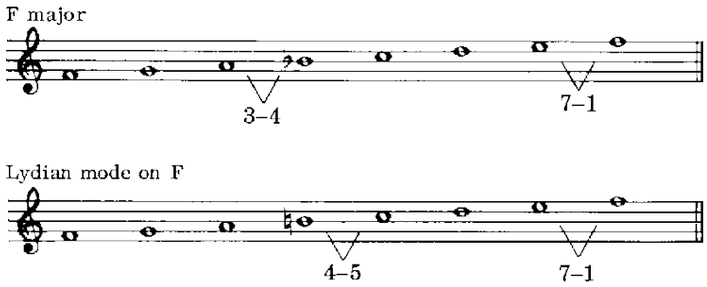


To write Phrygian mode on A, we think of the A natural minor scale, but we lower the second degree:

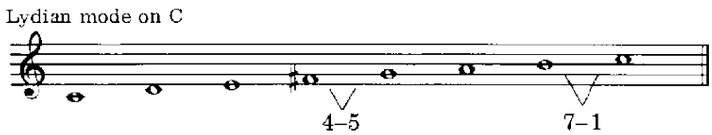


Duckworth_Music9e_App_H.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 330

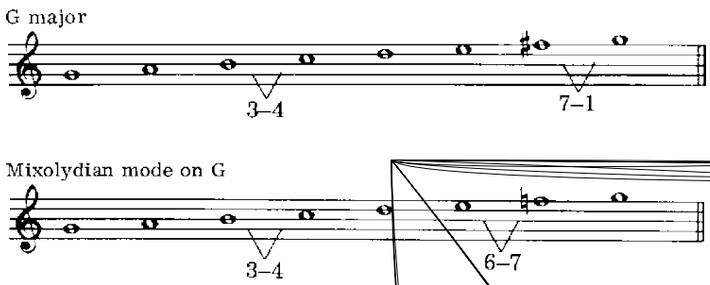
Lydian mode is similar to the major scale but with a raised fourth degree:



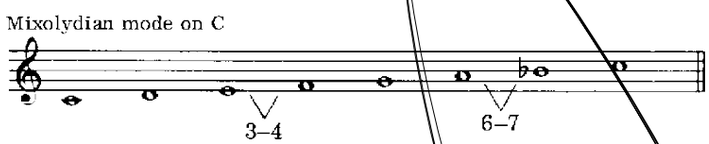
To write Lydian mode on C, we think of the C major scale but with a raised fourth degree:



Mixolydian mode is similar to the major scale but with a lowered seventh degree:



To write Mixolydian mode on C, we think of the C major scale, but we lower the seventh degree:



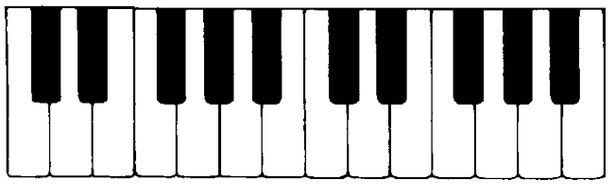
An alternative way to remember the modes is to relate each of them to the major scale. In this system, Dorian mode uses the pitch content of the major scale, but uses the second scale degree as the beginning pitch. Phrygian mode, likewise, can be thought of as a major scale beginning on the third scale degree; Lydian mode as a major scale beginning on the fourth degree; and Mixolydian mode as a major scale beginning on the fifth scale degree.

Using this system, it is relatively easy to transpose a mode to a different beginning pitch. If for example, we wish to write Dorian mode beginning on B♭, we need only to think of B♭ as the second scale degree of a major scale, in this case the A♭ major scale, and then use the accidentals of that scale. Since the accidentals for A♭ major are A♭, B♭, D♭, and E♭, Dorian mode beginning on B♭ would be B♭–C–D♭–E♭–F–G–A♭–B♭. A similar process works for the other modes.

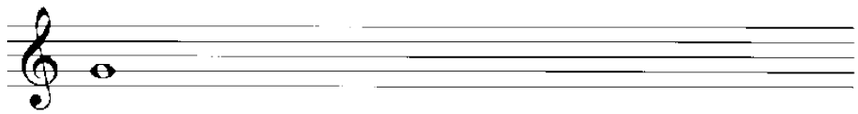
Write the indicated modes starting from the given pitch. Before beginning, mentally note the relationship of each mode to the major or natural minor scale.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_H.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 331

Mark the half steps in each mode you write. A keyboard is provided to help you visualize each scale.



1. Dorian mode



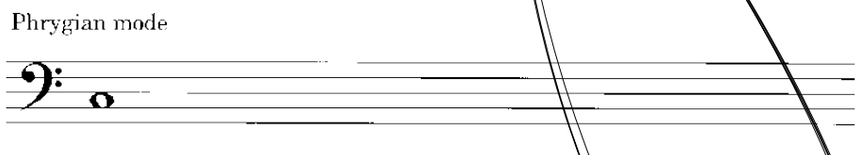
2. Dorian mode

3. Dorian mode

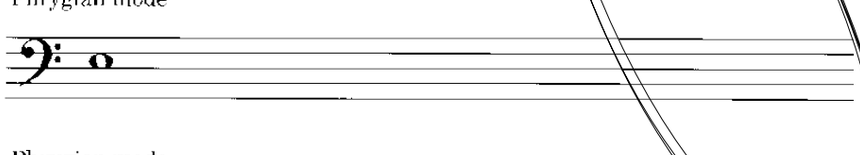
4. Dorian mode

5. Phrygian mode

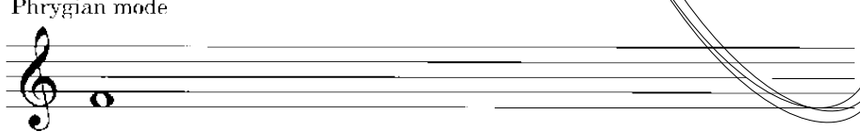
6. Phrygian mode



7. Phrygian mode



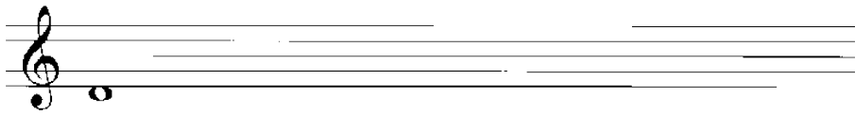
8. Phrygian mode



Duckworth_Music9e_App_H.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 332

9. Lydian mode

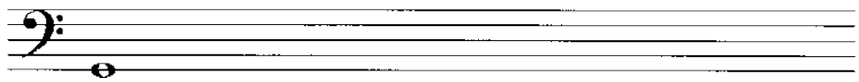
10. Lydian mode



11. Lydian mode

12. Lydian mode

13. Mixolydian mode



14. Mixolydian mode

15. Mixolydian mode

16. Mixolydian mode

Duckworth_Music9e_App_I.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 333

APPENDIX I

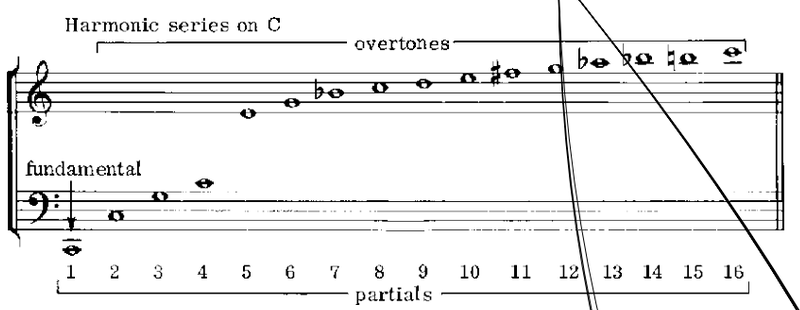
A Brief Introduction to Timbre

Timbre refers to the unique sound quality of an instrument or voice that allows us to distinguish it from other instruments playing the same pitch.

Timbre is determined, in part, by the way in which the sound is produced, the size of the instrument, and the design of the instrument.

When an instrument or a voice produces a tone, we hear it as a single pitch. In actuality, the tone is a composite of a fundamental frequency and a series of over tones. We hear a single pitch because the overtones are not as loud as the funda mental. This phenomenon is known as the harmonic series, and it consists of a fundamental pitch plus its first fifteen overtones.

The term partials refers to all the pitches within a harmonic series, including the fundamental. When the reference is to overtones, however, the fundamental is considered a separate element. Thus, the following example, showing the harmonic series for the pitch C, is said to have either a fundamental and fifteen overtones or sixteen partials.



For instance, when a violin string is played, it begins to vibrate. Not only does the entire string vibrate, but shorter vibrations occur simultaneously over various lengths of the string. The vibration of the entire string produces the fundamental pitch we hear, while the shorter vibrations (the overtones) color the sound.

One instrument differs from another in timbre because each instrument is designed to amplify certain overtones and suppress others. Therefore, the design of an instrument accounts, in large part, for its characteristic timbre.

Two other factors influence instrumental timbre: the size of the instrument and the way in which the sound is produced. In general, the larger the instrument the lower the pitch range. Mentally compare the pitch ranges of a violin and a string bass, or a trumpet and a tuba. Both sets of instruments produce pitches in the same way. In each case, it is the size of the instrument that gives one a soprano range and the other a bass range.

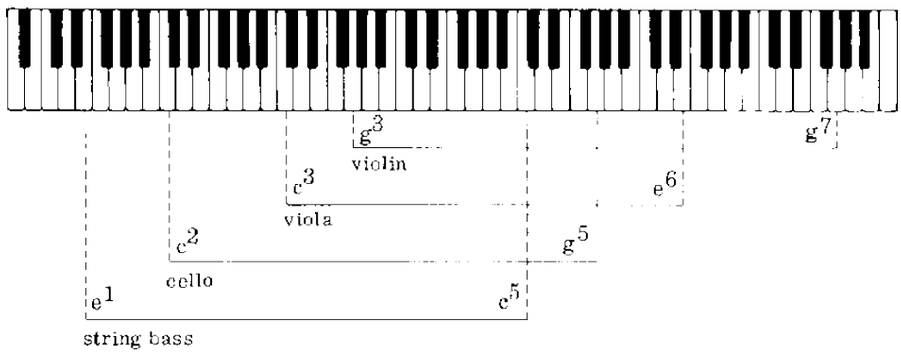
Orchestral instruments are grouped into families according to how the sound is produced (strings, woodwinds, brass, and percussion). Members of each family of

Duckworth_Music9e_App_I.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 334

instruments sound related because their similar way of producing sound helps create a similarity in timbre.

Strings: Violin, Viola, Cello, String Bass

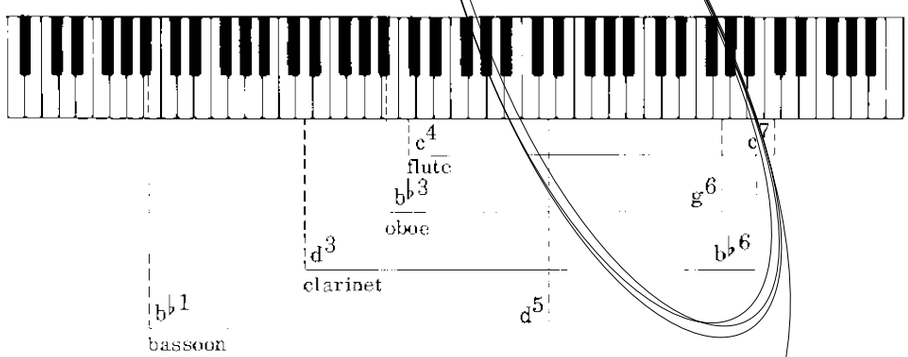
A string instrument produces sound when a string is set in motion by a bow or is plucked by a finger. The vibration of the string is amplified by the body of the instru ment. Pitch is determined, in part, by the length of the string—the longer the string, the lower the pitch. The diameter and the tension of the string also affect pitch.



This illustration and those that follow show the approximate pitch range for each family of instruments.

Woodwinds: Piccolo, Flute, Oboe, English Horn, Clarinet, Bass Clarinet, Bassoon, Contra Bassoon

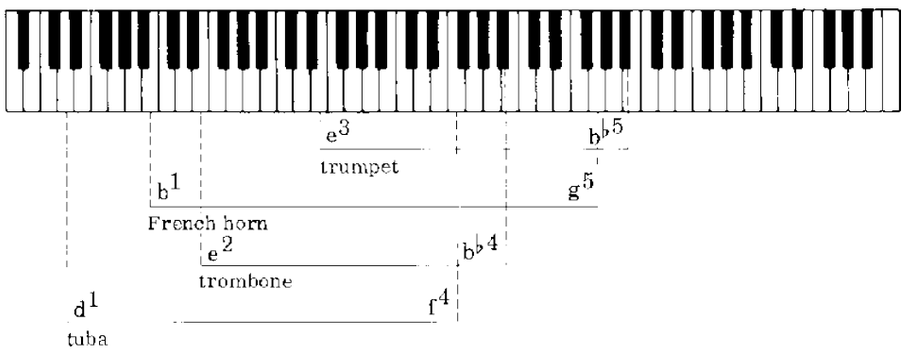
A woodwind instrument produces sound when the column of air inside the instru ment is set in motion. Because this is done in a variety of ways, the sound of the woodwind family is less homogeneous than that of other families of instruments. The air column in a flute or a piccolo is set in motion by blowing across an air hole; in a clarinet or a bass clarinet by blowing against a single cane reed; and in an oboe, an English horn, a bassoon, or a contra bassoon by blowing against a double cane reed. The pitch on all woodwind instruments is controlled by finger holes on the instrument, which allow the performer to control the length of the air column—the longer the air column, the lower the pitch.



Duckworth_Music9e_App_I.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 335

Brass: Trumpet, French Horn, Trombone, Tuba

The air column inside a brass instrument is set in motion when the performer buzzes his or her lips into a cup-shaped mouthpiece. Pitch on the trumpet, French horn, and tuba is controlled by three valves that open and close various lengths of tubing, thereby making the air column longer or shorter. Pitch on the trombone is controlled by the slide, which varies the length of the air column.

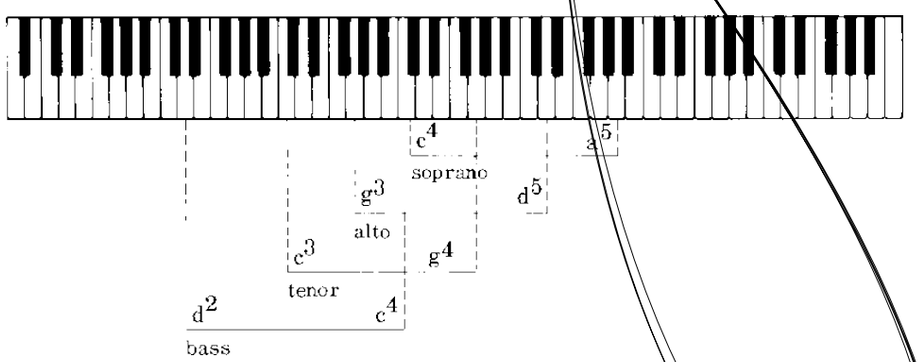


Percussion

Sound is produced on percussion instructments by striking them, usually with a wooden stick or a felt- or yarn-covered mallet. Some percussion instruments pro duce definite pitches, among them timpani (kettledrums), marimba, vibraphone, xylophone, chimes, and orchestra bells. The percussion instruments that produce an indefinite pitch include snare drum, bass drum, cymbals, and gong.

Voices

Human voices are classified into four main categories, by range: soprano, alto, tenor, and bass. The average range for each classification is as follows:



A further subdivision of voice types, shown here, is often made, particularly in opera, in order to indicate which vocal technique and which portion of the range are stressed.

I. Soprano
   A. coloratura—emphasizes agility and range
   B. lyric—emphasizes a more gentle voice quality
   C. dramatic—emphasizes dynamic range

Duckworth_Music9e_App_I.qxd 11/18/05 1:01 AM Page 336

II. Mezzo-Soprano—a high alto/low soprano
III. Alto—the term contralto refers to a very low female voice
IV. Tenor
    A. lyric
    B. dramatic (Heldentenor in German)
V. Baritone
VI. Bass-Baritone—has some of the baritone's high tonal qualities and some of the bass' low tonal qualities
VII. Bass

Duckworth_Music9e_App_J.qxd 11/18/05 1:02 AM Page 337

APPENDIX J

A Brief Discussion of Acoustics

Acoustics may at first appear an unlikely topic for a book concerned with music fundamentals. But acoustics is becoming more relevant every year. The dramatic increase in the number of synthesizers and in the use of home computers to make music has brought the study of acoustics to the forefront.

Every musical sound has four characteristics: pitch, volume, duration, and tim bre. On a mechanical level, these components are manipulated when we play an instrument or sing. The same is true on an electronic level for synthesizers and the music programs of computers. Sounds are created on these instruments by altering and adjusting the four basic characteristics of sound. If you plan to become involved with programming synthesizers, or in composing with computers, you will need a solid understanding of acoustics.

Frequency

Musical sounds, in fact all sounds, are made up of physical vibrations of air mole cules. The air molecules themselves do not move forward. Instead, they vibrate back and forth in repeated patterns called oscillations. These patterns in the air are similar to the ripples in a pond created by throwing in a stone.

Air molecules are set into motion in a number of ways. Saxophone players do it by causing their reed to vibrate; string bass players pluck a string; trombone play ers buzz their lips inside the mouthpiece. Once the sound is begun, air molecules near the vibrating source are set into motion, and they in turn transfer this pattern of motion to adjacent molecules. This is how sound travels through the air.

It may be difficult at first to think of a musical pitch as a vibrational pattern of air molecules, but that is what it is. Furthermore, the faster the vibrating pattern, the higher the pitch; the slower the pattern, the lower the pitch. When thought of this way, the more accurate term for pitch is frequency.

Frequency is the number of times a vibrational pattern repeats itself. This rep etition is generally measured in vibrations per second, and the term for this is Hertz (normally abbreviated Hz). When musicians talk about the pitch the orches tra tunes to as A-440 (the A above middle C), they are actually referring to a fre quency of 440 Hz, that is, an air displacement of 440 vibrations per second.

Another interesting characteristic of pitch is that when the frequency is reduced by one-half, the pitch we hear descends by one octave. While the A above middle C vibrates at 440 Hz, the A directly below middle C vibrates at only 220 Hz, and the A below that at 110 Hz. The vibrating frequencies for all the As on the piano follow.

3,520 Hz

1,760 Hz

Duckworth_Music9e_App_J.qxd 11/18/05 1:02 AM Page 338

880 Hz
440 Hz
(middle C)
220 Hz
110 Hz
55 Hz
27.5 Hz

Amplitude

The pitch or frequency of a sound is determined by the speed of the vibrational pat terns. But the speed of the vibration does not determine how loud a sound is. In other words, the dynamics can change without affecting the pitch. Loudness, known as amplitude, is controlled by how far each air molecule is displaced. That is, the more air movement in the initial displacement, the farther the displacement will carry through the air, and the louder the sound will appear. Scientists measure amplitude in decibels; musicians use less precise terms like mezzo piano and forte.

An important point to remember is that excessive volume, particularly when lis tening on headphones, can cause permanent hearing loss. This has been thoroughly documented. Although many people enjoy loud music, it is important to use caution when listening at high volume, because a loss of hearing can never be corrected.

Duration

Musical sounds have three distinct parts—attack, sustain, and decay. The initial attack describes how the sound begins. It can be quite sudden and forceful, as when a trumpet player moves his or her tongue and releases air into the instrument. Or it can be more gentle, as when a pianist lightly touches the keys. Most instruments are capable of a variety of attacks.

Once a sound is begun, the second stage is the sustain stage. Some instruments, such as the organ, can sustain a sound indefinitely. Others, such as a clarinet, can sustain only as long as the breath of the performer holds out. And other instruments, such as the xylophone, have a sharp attack but almost no sustain time at all.

Once a sound begins to fade it is considered to be in the decay stage. Musical sounds normally come to an end in one of two ways: There is a gradual loss of ampli tude until the sound is no longer audible, or the sound is cut off abruptly by stop ping the air or muting the string.

Synthesizers and the music programs of computers work by controlling the attack–sustain–decay characteristics of a sound. By manipulating one or all of these elements, well-known sounds, such as the sound of a flute, can be created electroni cally, or new sounds can even be invented.

Timbre

You will remember from Appendix I that every instrumental sound is really a com posite consisting of the fundamental pitch plus the overtones of the harmonic series. Each instrument, including the human voice, emphasizes certain overtones and suppresses others. This creates a unique vibrational pattern for each instru ment, but it does not alter the frequency. Therefore, two instruments, such as the flute and the oboe, can play the same pitch (frequency) but still maintain their own characteristic and distinct tone color (timbre).

Duckworth_Music9e_App_K.qxd 11/18/05 1:05 AM Page 339

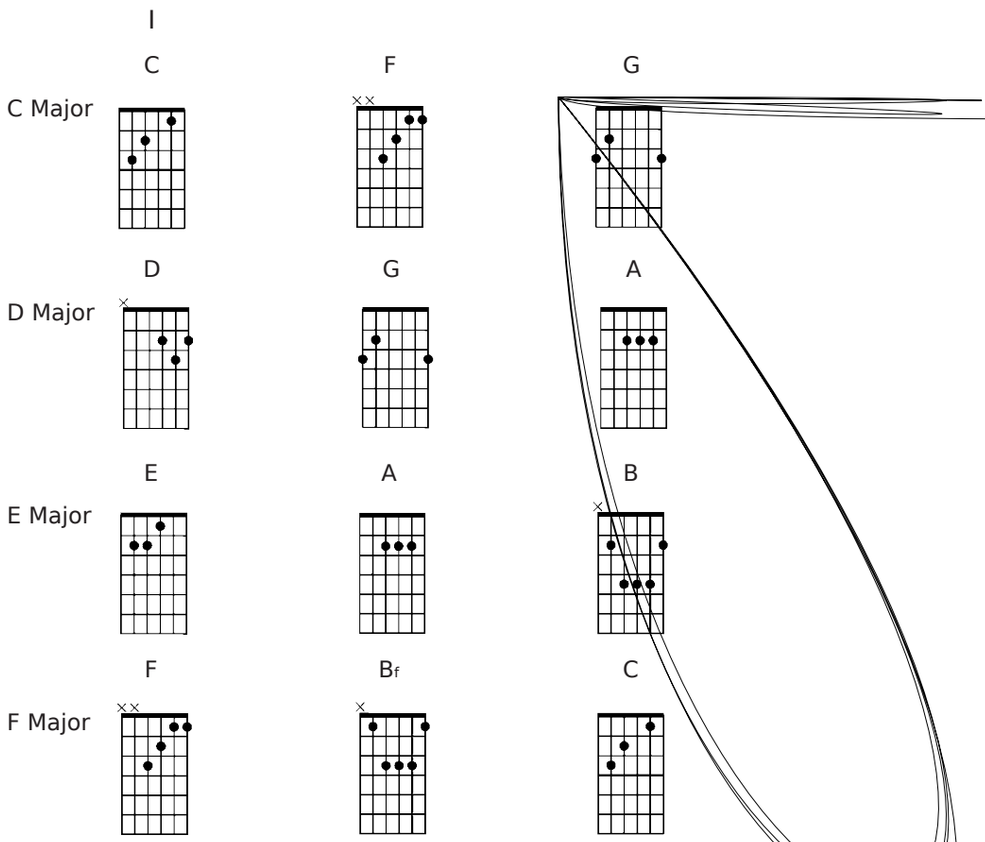
APPENDIX K

Basic Guitar Chords

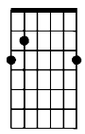
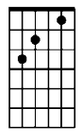
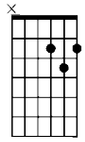
Because of the way it is tuned, the guitar is easier to play in sharp keys than in flat keys. Consequently, a complete chart of all possible guitar chords is of little use to someone just learning to play the guitar. Rather, it is better to learn the easy chords first and, after developing fluency with those, add the more difficult chords as needed.

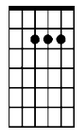
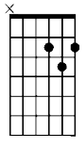
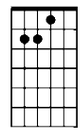
Below are the tonic, subdominant, and dominant chords for the easier keys. You will be able to play many of the songs in this book using these three chords.

Major Keys

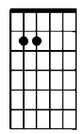
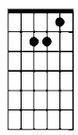


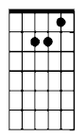
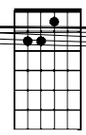
Duckworth_Music9e_App_K.qxd 11/18/05 1:05 AM Page 340

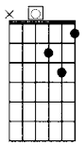
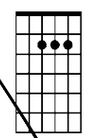
	G	C	D
G Major			

	A	D	E
A Major			

Minor Keys

	i	iv	v
	E minor	A minor	B
E Minor			

	A minor	D minor	E
A Minor			

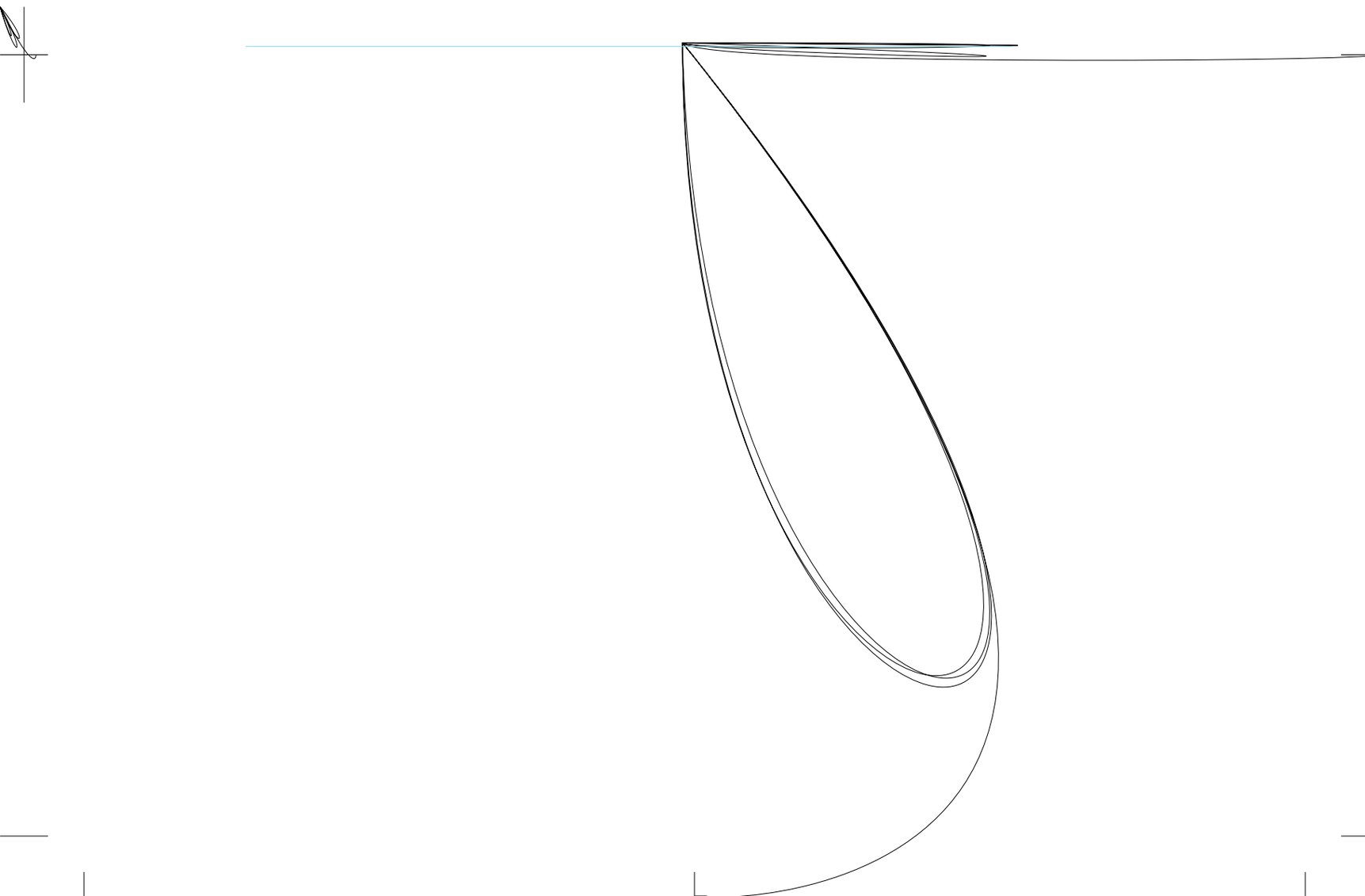
	D minor	G minor	A
D Minor			

x do not play this string.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_L.qxd 11/18/05 1:06 AM Page 341

APPENDIX L

Focus on Fundamentals: Installing and Using the



The CD-ROM that accompanies this book offers another way for you to practice and improve. Called Focus on Fundamentals, it contains hundreds of supplementary practice exercises and musical examples. These musical examples and interactive exercises, grouped by subject, are keyed to individual chapters of the book and focus on the basic skills that you will need in order to master music fundamentals. A set of Pre-Tests allows you to assess your skills and gives you a customized study plan to follow as you move through the exercises. There is also instant feedback of your progress, and a way to test yourself and email the results to your instructor.

The Musical Examples

Your CD-ROM contains musical examples in addition to practice exercises. The musical examples are located within individual chapter headings, as follows:

Chapter 2

Bach: Minuet in G Minor
Russian Folk Song

Chapter 3

Carulli: Allegro
Farnaby: The Old Spagnoletta

Chapter 4

Clementi: Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 1
Schumann: Siciliana from Album for the Young

Chapter 7

Anon: Estampie (13th-Century Dance)
Anon: Nowel syng we (Medieval English Carol)
Landini: Ecco la Primavera

Duckworth_Music9e_App_L.qxd 11/18/05 1:06 AM Page 342

Chapter 9

Molly Malone
Joshua Fit the Battle of Jericho

Bach: Praeludium (natural minor)
Bach: Praeludium (harmonic minor)
Scarlatti: Sonata in C Minor
Schumann: The Wild Rider from Album for the Young
Bach: Menuet from The Little Piano Book for Wilhelm Friedemann Bach
Bach: Courante from French Suite No. 2
Schumann: The Poor Orphan Child from Album for the Young

Chapter 11

Lavender's Blue
Schumann: Choral from Album for the Young

Chapter 12

Blow Ye Winds in the Morning
Wayfaring Stranger
St. James Infirmary
Schubert: Valses nobles
Clementi: Rondo from Sonatina in G Major, Op. 36, No. 5
Beethoven: Menuetto from Sonatina in D Major
Clementi: Rondo from Sonatina in F Major, Op. 36, No. 4

Chapter 13

Clementi: Sonatina, Op. 36, No. 3, II
Schumann: Soldiers' March from Album for the Young
Bach: Chorale, "Ermuntre dich, mein schwacher Geist"
Schumann: The Poor Orphan Child from Album for the Young
Kuhlau: Sonatina in C Major, Op. 55, No. 1, I
Anon: L'Omnipotent from the Genevan Psalter
Schumann: The Wild Rider from Album for the Young

Chapter 14

Mockingbird Hill
New River Train
Red River Valley
Beethoven: Dance
Schumann: Waltz from Albumbläter

Installing Focus on Fundamentals on Your Computer

The practice exercises are designed to help you learn the fundamentals of music. To use them successfully, they must be installed on your computer. If you try to run them directly from the CD-ROM, they will probably move too slowly to be useful, and some of the features may not be available.

Duckworth_Music9e_App_L.qxd 11/18/05 1:06 AM Page 343

As you start each new topic you should first begin with the textbook and the Classwork and Music in Action exercises contained there. Once you are familiar enough with them to understand the basic concepts of the new material, you can then begin to use the CD-ROM for additional practice. Generally, it is not a good idea to start a new topic with the CD-ROM since it does not contain the factual information found in the book.

Minimum System Requirements

PC	Mac
Windows 98, NT, ME, 2000, XP	MAC OS 9 through OSX
Pentium II 233 Mhz	PowerPC Processor or higher
64 MB RAM	64 MB RAM
16 Bit Sound Card	16 Bit Sound Card
800 X 600, 16 bit High Color display	800 X 600, 16 bit High Color display
Speakers or Headphones	Speakers or Headphones
4x CD-ROM	4x CD-ROM
Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher, Netscape 7.0	Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher, Netscape 7.0, Safari 1.0
Flash 7.0 plugin	Flash 7.0 plugin

Note: This application may run with older browsers that are compatible with Flash Player 7. See www.macromedia.com for more information. But regardless of the browser you use, the application on this CD-ROM must be installed on your hard drive before it will run properly.

PC Installation

From My Computer on the Windows screen, open the CD-ROM drive.

Select Focus.exe and follow the on-screen instructions.

On Windows XP

From My Computer on the Windows screen, select the CD-ROM drive.

Choose Open from the file menu.

Select Focus.exe and follow the on-screen instructions.

When installation is complete, launch the Focus on Fundamentals application from your Start Menu Programs folder.

Mac Installation

Open the Focus on Fundamentals CD icon.

Double click on Focus Installer and follow the on-screen instructions.

When installation is complete, launch the Focus on Fundamentals application from your hard drive.

General Outline of Focus on Fundamentals

Once you have opened the program you will notice that it is organized around seven basic musical concepts. Each section begins with a Pre-Test that will assess your skills and give you a personalized study guide. Within these seven sections, the exercises are arranged in chapters identical with those of the book. Each of the

Duckworth_Music9e_App_L.qxd 11/18/05 1:06 AM Page 344

chapters contain one or more groups of practice exercises that stress the most important and necessary skills found in that chapter. The Focus on Fundamentals practice material you will find on the CD-ROM is as follows:

I. Basics of Music

Pre-Test

Chapter 1: The Basics of Music

1. Rhythm: Clap & Count
2. Pitch: Identify Pitches
3. Keyboard: Name the Notes

II. Rhythm

Pre-Test

Chapter 2: Simple Meters

1. Recognizing Simple Meters
2. Hearing Rhythms in Simple Meters
3. Clap and Count 1
4. Clap and Count 2 (2-voice exercises)

Chapter 3: Compound Meter

1. Clap and Count 1
2. Clap and Count 2 (2-voice exercises)
3. Recognizing Compound Meters
4. Hearing Rhythms in Compound Meter

III. Pitch

Pre-Test

Chapter 4: Pitch

1. Name & Rewrite Pitches
2. Locate Notes

IV. Scales I

Pre-Test

Chapter 5: Major Scales

1. Writing Ascending Scales
2. Writing Descending Scales

Duckworth_Music9e_App_L.qxd 11/18/05 1:06 AM Page 345

Chapter 6: Major Key Signatures

1. Identify Key Signatures
2. Write Key Signatures

V. Intervals

Pre-Test

Chapter 7: Intervals

1. Identify Intervals
2. Write Intervals
3. Hearing Intervals

VI. Scales II

Pre-Test

Chapter 8: Minor Key Signatures

1. Identify Key Signatures
2. Write Key Signatures

Chapter 9: Minor Scales

1. Write Natural Minor Scales
2. Write Harmonic Minor Scales
3. Write Melodic Minor Scales

Chapter 10: Pentatonic and Blues Scales

1. Write Pentatonic Scales
2. Write Blues Scales

VII. Triads & Progressions

Pre-Test

Chapter 11: Triads

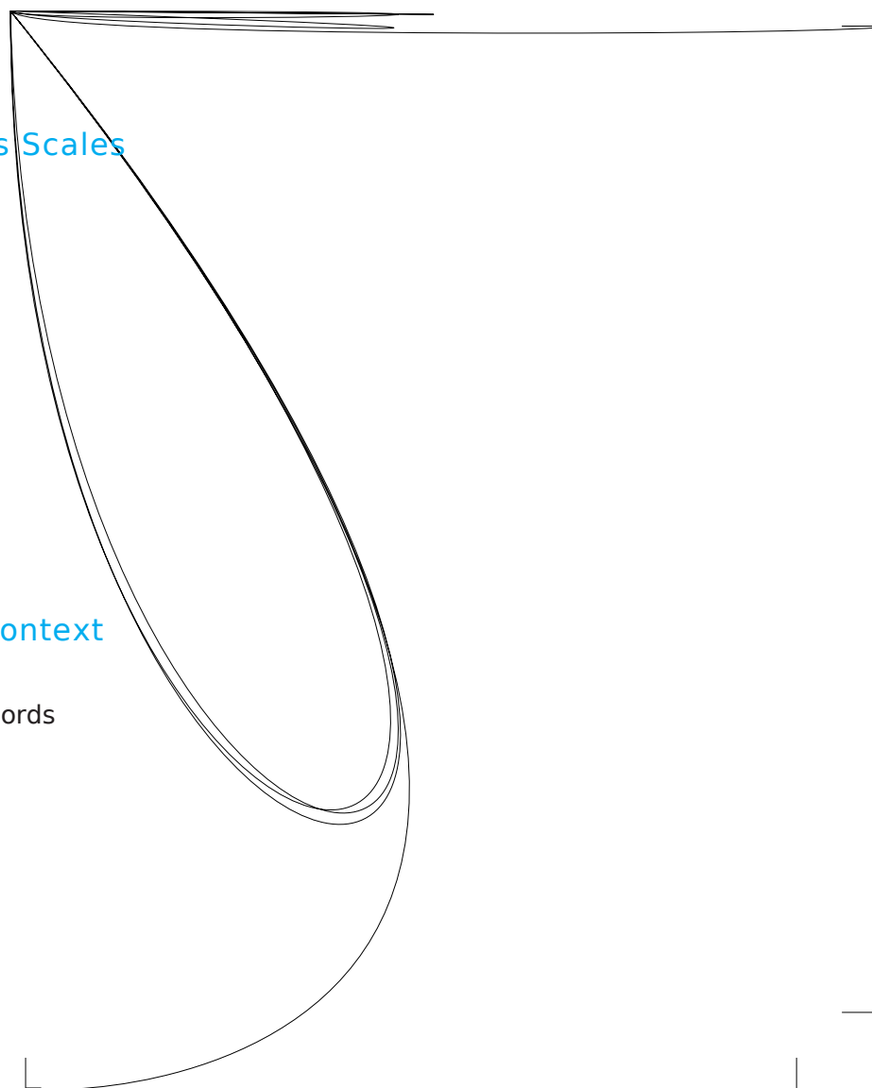
1. Complete the Triad
2. Identify Inverted Triads
3. Write Triads

Chapter 12: Triads in a Musical Context

1. Write Dominant Seventh Chords
2. Identify Inverted Dominant Seventh Chords

Chapter 13: Chord Progressions

1. Recognize Progressions



Duckworth_Music9e_App_L.qxd 11/18/05 1:06 AM Page 346

Testing Yourself and Emailing Your Results to Your Instructor

It is possible at any time to check your progress and to send your quiz results to your instructor. By choosing Quiz from the Mode menu, you can quiz yourself on the material and the answers will not be shown. When you have answered the desired number of questions, press Submit. Your score will be calculated and presented to you in the form of an email that you can send on to your instructor. This requires an active Internet connection, plus that you have personalized your copy with the email addresses of both you and your instructor. If you did not do this when you ran the program for the first time, you can add this information at any time by clicking on the Set Up button.

It is also possible to save your quiz results and send them at a later time. To do this, choose Reports from the menu to access your quiz history.

Duckworth_Music9e_Glos.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 347

ZÄÉáátÜç

Terms are boldfaced in text.

Accelerando A tempo marking indicating a gradual change to a faster tempo.

Accent mark ( ) A sign that indicates that the note above or below it receives more stress than the surrounding notes.

Accidentals A set of signs that, when placed in front of a notehead, alter the pitch of that note chromatically. See also Sharp sign; Flat sign; Double sharp sign; Double flat sign; Natural sign.

Adagio A tempo marking indicating a slow tempo.

Alla breve (C) A simple-duple meter with a half note pulse, that is, y meter.

Allegro A tempo marking indicating a fast tempo.

Alto clef See C clef.

Andante A tempo marking indicating a moderate tempo, about walking speed.

Augmented interval The increasing of a perfect interval or a major interval by one half step.

Authentic cadence A momentary or permanent point of rest in a harmonic progression created by the two-chord progression V–I in major or iv–i in minor.

Bar lines Vertical lines, placed immediately before the accented pulse, that divide written music into measures. The meter is more easily read when music is divided into measures. Compare with Double bar lines.

Bass clef (F clef) (b) A sign that locates the note F on the fourth line of the staff. This F is then used as a reference point for locating other pitches.

Beat The primary pulse of a piece of music.

Binary form (AB) A two-part form that explores the principle of contrast.

Blue notes The lowered 3rd, 5th, and 7th scale degrees. These notes are used extensively in the 12-bar blues and jazz.

Blues scale A six-note scale in which the 2nd and 6th scale degrees are missing, the 3rd and 7th degrees are lowered, and a lowered 5th degree is added to the existing 5th scale degree.

Broken chord patterns Block chords played one note at a time in some repeating pattern, usually occurring as an accompanying figure.

Cadence A temporary or permanent point of rest at the end of a musical phrase.

C clef (a) A sign that locates the note middle C on the staff. This sign is movable and may appear on any of the staff's five lines. Today it is commonly found on the third line (alto clef) or the fourth line (tenor clef). In either position the C becomes a reference point for locating other pitches.

Chord The major component of tonal harmony; three or more pitches sounding simultaneously. See Triad.

Chromatic half step A half step that involves two pitches of the same letter name and staff location, such as G to Gs, A to Af, or E to Es. See also Diatonic half step.

Chromatic scale A scale formed by the division of the octave into twelve equal half steps.

Clef A sign that locates a particular pitch on the staff. This pitch is then used as a reference point for other pitches on the staff. The commonly used clefs are treble clef, bass clef, and C clef.

Common time (c) A simple-quadruple meter with a quarter note pulse.

Duckworth_Music9e_Glos.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 348

Compound interval Any interval greater than an octave in arithmetic distance.

Compound meter Any meter in which the basic pulse is normally subdivided into three equal parts.

Crescendo (cresc. or <) A dynamics marking indicating that the musical passage is to grow louder.

Cut time See Alla breve.

Deceptive cadence A temporary point of rest in a chord progression, in which an unexpected chord, usually vi, follows a V or V_7 instead of the tonic triad that is expected.

Decrescendo (decresc. or >) A dynamics marking indicating that the musical passage is to grow softer.

Diatonic half step A half step that involves two pitches with adjacent letter names and staff locations, such as A to B♭, G♯ to F, or B to C. See also Chromatic half step.

Diminished interval The decreasing of a perfect interval or a minor interval by one half step.

Diminuendo (dim. or >) A dynamics marking indicating that the musical passage is to grow softer.

Dominant The fifth tone or triad of a major or minor scale.

Dominant seventh chord (V_7) The chord formed by adding a fourth note, a minor seventh above the root, to the dominant triad.

Dotted note A dot placed beside a note increases the value of the original note by one half. Thus, a dotted half note is equal to three quarter notes. Any note can be increased by half its value by adding a dot.

Double bar lines Two vertical lines used in written music, most commonly to indicate the beginning of a new section in a large work or to mark the end of a work.

Double flat sign (𝄫) An accidental that, when placed in front of a note, lowers the pitch of that note by two half steps (one whole step).

Double sharp sign (𝄪) An accidental that, when placed in front of a note, raises the pitch of that note by two half steps (one whole step).

Downbeat The strongest beat of any meter, always written as the first beat of the measure.

Duple meter A division of the musical pulse into a recurring pattern of one strong and one weak pulse.

Duplet A borrowed division in compound meter, in which a note normally subdivided into three equal parts is subdivided into two equal parts.

Dynamics A characteristic of musical sound involving degrees of loudness and softness. In written music, volume is indicated by specific words and abbreviations.

Enharmonic pitches The use of two different letter names for the same pitch. C♯ and D♭, F♯ and G♭, E♯ and F are examples of enharmonic pitches.

F clef See Bass clef.

Fixed "do" A system of sight-singing in which the note C is always "do," regardless of the key.

Flat sign (♭) An accidental that, when placed in front of a note, lowers the pitch of that note by a half step.

Form The organizing principle, or structure, of a piece of music. Form in music can be compared to the blueprint of a building. It controls how music unfolds in time. Most musical forms that are used to any extent have been given their own names. These include binary, ternary, strophic, and sonata forms, as well as fugue, theme-and variation, and rondo forms.

Forte (*f*) A dynamics marking indicating loud.

Fortissimo (*ff*) A dynamics marking indicating very loud.

G clef See Treble clef.

Great staff A treble clef staff and a bass clef staff joined together by a vertical line and a brace. It is employed in music that requires a range of pitches too wide for a single staff, such as piano music.

Guitar tablature See Tablature

Half cadence A temporary point of rest in the harmony of a piece of music created by a momentary pause on the dominant chord. The half cadence itself is a two-chord progression, the most common being IV–V or I–V in major, and iv–V or i–V in minor.

Half step The smallest interval in tonal music. On the piano, it is the distance between any key and the key immediately above or below it.

Harmonic cadence A momentary or permanent point of rest in the harmony of a piece. There are several types, each a different formula of two chords. See also Authentic cadence; Plagal cadence; Half cadence.

Harmonic interval The musical distance between two pitches sounded simultaneously. See also Interval.

Duckworth_Music9e_Glos.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 349

Harmonic minor scale An altered version of the natural minor scale. The seventh degree is raised a half step to create a leading tone. This, in turn, creates the interval of an augmented second between the sixth and seventh degrees of the scale.

Harmonic rhythm The rate of change—fast or slow, steady or irregular—of the chords in a piece of music.

Harmonic series A fundamental frequency plus a series of overtones, heard as a single pitch. All musical pitches contain the harmonic series, or parts of the series.

Harmony Harmony generally refers to the horizontal progression of chords that takes place throughout a piece of music. The harmony is generated directly from the scale, or scales, on which a piece is based.

Interval The musical distance between two pitches. Intervals may be harmonic (sounding simultaneously) or melodic (sounding successively). Interval quality may be perfect, major, minor, augmented, or diminished.

Interval size The letter-name distance between two pitches. The interval size identifies the basic interval (third, fourth, and so on), but not the interval quality (major, minor, and so on).

Key signature A grouping, at the beginning of a composition, of all the accidentals found in the major or natural minor

Melodic minor scale A scale developed to avoid the augmented second of the harmonic minor scale. In the ascending form, the sixth and seventh degrees of the natural minor scale are raised; in the descending form, they are lowered to their position in natural minor.

Melody A consecutive horizontal line of pitches that contains a contour (or shape), rhythmic motion, and cadences (or arrival points of rest). The interaction of these elements can produce an infinite number of melodic possibilities.

Meter The division of the musical pulse into a recurring pattern of strong and weak pulses. The most common patterns or meters are duple meter, triple meter, and quadruple meter.

Meter signature Two numbers, one above the other, that appear at the beginning of a piece of music. The top number indicates the meter of the music; the bottom number tells which note value represents one beat.

Metronome An instrument invented in the early 1800s that produces a certain number of clicks per minute. Since each click can represent one beat, it is a more precise way of indicating tempo than the Italian terms also commonly used to mark tempo. The metronome marking in written music is given by the symbol M.M., which stands for Maelzel's metronome.

Mezzo forte ( ) A dynamics marking

Largo A tempo marking indicating a

Mezzo piano ( ) A dynamics marking

Leading tone The seventh tone or triad of a major, melodic minor, or harmonic minor scale; a half step below the tonic.

Ledger lines Short lines above or below the staff that function to extend the pitch range of the staff.

Lento A tempo marking indicating a slow tempo.

Major scale A seven-note scale based on an interval pattern of five whole steps and two half steps, the half steps occurring between the third and fourth, and the seventh and first tones.

Measure A division in written music that allows the meter to be seen more clearly. Measures are created by bar lines placed immediately before the accented pulse.

Mediant The third tone or triad of a major or minor scale.

Melodic interval The musical distance between two pitches sounded in succession. See also Interval.

Minor scale A seven-note scale, of which there are three versions. See also Harmonic minor scale; Melodic minor scale; Natural minor scale.

Moderato A tempo marking indicating a moderate tempo.

Modes A group of seven-note scales consisting of five whole steps and two half steps. By changing the placement of the two half steps, seven modes were created (Ionian, Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, Mixolydian, Aeolian, and Locrian). These scales, from which the present-day major and natural minor scales were drawn, were the basis of Western music until the early 1600s.

Modulation The act of moving from one key center to another within a composition. Sometimes this is done by using a double bar and a change of key signature. Other times, the key signature remains the same, but accidentals are

Duckworth_Music9e_Glos.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 350

introduced into the music that actually

Pianissimo ( ) A dynamics marking

change the key.

Motive A motive is a part of a melody, and is a short arrangement of pitches that is identifiable as a melodic unit. The motive usually lends itself well to further transformation or development. Some melodies consist of several short motives.

Movable do A system of sight-singing in which the tonic of any scale is always do, and the subsequent syllables are assigned to each succeeding pitch of the scale.

Natural minor scale A seven-note scale consisting of five whole steps and two half steps. The half steps occur between the second and third tones and the fifth and sixth tones.

Natural sign (n) An accidental that, when placed in front of a note, cancels (for that note) any existing sharp, flat, double sharp, or double flat.

Noteheads The small oval shapes drawn on the staff to represent particular pitches.

Octatonic scale An eight-note scale consisting of alternating whole steps and half steps.

Octave sign ( ) A sign indicating that the notes below it are to be performed one octave higher than written (––––|), or that the notes above it are to be performed one octave lower than written (––––|).

Overtones The pitches above the fundamental pitch in the harmonic series.

Parallel keys A major key and a minor key with the same tonic but different key signatures.

Partials All the pitches of the harmonic series, including the fundamental.

Pentatonic scale A scale with five pitches per octave. A variety of pentatonic scales exists; the most well-known version contains no half steps.

Perfect pitch The ability to always recognize by ear any pitch when it is sounded. See also Relative pitch.

Period A combination of two or more melodic phrases. If a period consists of two phrases, the first generally ends with a feeling of incompleteness that the second phrase acts to complete.

Phrase The phrase is the basic building block of a melody. It gives a feeling of completeness. Historically, phrases have tended to be symmetrical in length, that is, two, four, or eight measures in length. Melodies are often built of two or more phrases.

indicating very soft.

Piano ( ) A dynamics marking indicating soft.

Pitch The frequency at which a given sound vibrates.

Plagal cadence A momentary or permanent point of rest in the harmony of a piece of music created by the two-chord progression IV–I in major or iv–i in minor.

Poco a poco A dynamics marking meaning little by little, as in dim. poco a poco (gradually softer).

Presto A tempo marking indicating a very fast tempo.

Pulse The constant, regular beat in music. It can be represented visually by a line of quarter notes, half notes, eighth notes, and so on; it is felt as the beat to which you tap your foot.

Quadruple meter A division of the musical pulse into a recurring pattern of one strong and three weak pulses.

Related keys A major key and a minor key with the same key signature but different tonics.

Relative pitch The ability to identify a second pitch or pitches once a reference-point pitch is known. See also Perfect pitch.

Repeat sign (” ’) A sign consisting of double bar lines plus two large dots either before or after the bar. This sign occurs in written music at the beginning and the end of measures that are to be repeated immediately.

Rest A musical sign used to indicate duration of silence. Every note value has a corresponding rest sign.

Rhythm Rhythm organizes musical sounds into patterns of time duration. Strictly speaking, meter refers to a recurring pattern of strong and weak beats, while rhythm means the various arrangements of irregular durations within the metrical pattern.

Ritardando A tempo marking indicating a gradual change to a slower tempo.

Scale A group of pitches, generally in patterns of whole steps and half steps, that form the basic pitch material for a composition. See Major scale, Minor scale, Modes, Pentatonic scale, and Whole-tone scale.

Semi-cadence See Half cadence.

Sharp sign (s) An accidental that, when placed in front of a note, raises the pitch of that note by a half step.

Duckworth_Music9e_Glos.qxd 11/18/05 1:17 AM Page 351

Simple interval Any interval that is one octave or smaller.

Simple meter Any meter in which the basic pulse can be normally subdivided into two equal parts.

Slur A curved line, extended over two or more notes of different pitch, used to indicate a smooth, connected style of playing or singing.

Staff (pl. staves) A set of five parallel lines on which music is notated. The five lines, the four spaces between the lines, and the spaces above and below the staff are used to indicate pitch. Normally, the higher on the staff a symbol is located, the higher the pitch.

Strophic form A musical form with repeating verses, each verse of which is sung to the exact same music.

Subdominant The fourth tone or triad of a major or minor scale.

Subito A dynamics marking meaning suddenly, as in subito (suddenly soft).

texture is one predominant melody with accompaniment. Polyphonic texture is two or more equally important melodic lines occurring simultaneously (also called contrapuntal texture).

Theme The melodic material used for classical works such as sonatas, symphonies, theme-and-variations, and other generally homophonic compositions.

Tie A curved line connecting two notes of the same pitch, and used for creating notes of long duration.

Timbre The unique sound or tone color of an instrument or voice. The timbre is determined, in part, by the size and design of an instrument, and by the way in which its sound is produced.

Time signature See Meter signature.

Tonal music Music in which both the melody and the harmony are derived from major or minor scales.

Tonic The first note or triad of a major

puntal compositions such as inventions and fugues.

Submediant The sixth tone or triad of a major or minor scale.

Subtonic The seventh tone or triad of a natural minor or descending melodic minor scale; a whole step below the tonic.

Supertonic The second tone or triad of a major or minor scale.

Syncopation Occurs when an accent is placed on what would otherwise be a weak beat.

Tablature A form of musical notation that indicates what action to make rather than what sound to expect.

Tempo The speed at which a piece of music moves; the speed of the pulse. In written music, Italian terms or a metronome marking are used to indicate the tempo.

Tendency tones The apparent attraction of various scale degrees to one another. In general, the need for active tones, that is, the fifth, seventh, and second, to resolve to less active tones, that is, the tonic.

Tenor clef See C clef.

Ternary form (ABA) A three-part form that explores the principle of contrast and repetition.

Texture Indicates the density (thickness or thinness) of a musical line. There are three primary musical textures: Monophonic texture is one melodic line without accompaniment. Homophonic other tones of the scale seem to be related.

Transposition The act of moving a piece, or a section of a piece, from one key level to another. Often, singers will transpose a piece to another key in order for it to be in a range better suited to their voice.

Treble clef (G clef) ( ) A sign that locates the note g_1 on the second line of the staff. This g_1 is then used as a reference point for locating other pitches on the staff.

Triad The basic chord of tonal music. A three-note chord constructed of two superimposed thirds. Four qualities of triads are possible—major, minor, augmented, and diminished.

Triple meter A division of the musical pulse into a recurring pattern of one strong and two weak pulses.

Triplet A borrowed division in simple meter, in which a note normally subdivided into two equal parts is subdivided into three equal parts.

Upbeat The beat before the downbeat, that is, the final beat of a measure.

Vivace A tempo marking indicating a quick and lively tempo.

Whole step An interval consisting of two half steps.

Whole-tone scale A scale consisting of six pitches per octave, each a whole step apart.